



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Rowbotham  
R-1









DONATED BY THE  
MERCANTILE LIBRARY ASSOCIATION  
A PRACTICAL  
NEW YORK CITY

# GERMAN GRAMMAR;

WITH

*EXERCISES UNDER EACH RULE;*

BEING

A NEW AND EASY METHOD OF ACQUIRING A THOROUGH  
KNOWLEDGE OF THE

**German Language.**

FOR THE USE OF

SCHOOLS AND PRIVATE STUDENTS.

SECOND EDITION,

REVISED AND IMPROVED THROUGHOUT.

By JOHN ROWBOTHAM, F.R.A.S.

AUTHOR OF GERMAN LESSONS, FRENCH GRAMMAR, FRENCH  
LESSONS, &c.

---

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR BALDWIN AND CRADOCK;

AND T. & T. BOOSEY.

1832.

7937-846

THE NEW YORK  
PUBLIC LIBRARY  
**278084A**

ASTOR, LENOX AND  
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

R 1926 L

F. O. HARRIS, Printer, Paternoster-row, London.

## PREFACE.

---

ANCILLON, in his "*Mélanges de Littérature et de Philosophie*," says of the German language, that "it is rich, varied, and flexible—a language which owes to itself all its beauties—which possesses in itself undeveloped treasures—and which is susceptible of an indefinite perfection." Indeed all competent judges readily admit that it possesses advantages not to be found in any of the mixed dialects of Europe, and that, in strength, copiousness, beauty, sublimity, and comprehensiveness of expression, it is surpassed by no language, ancient or modern.

The Germans hold so high a rank in literature, science, and the arts, and their authors of eminence are so numerous in every department of human knowledge, that the study of their language has now become, not merely desirable as a matter of taste, but, in some degree, necessary to every person who has the slightest pretensions to an acquaintance with European literature.

This Language not only opens a rich source of gratification to the man of taste and science; but, as it is the origin of the greater part of our colloquial words and phrases, it cannot fail to throw much light on the works of GOWER, CHAUCER, SPENCER, SHAKSPEARE, and other early writers, and must therefore be of essential service to every Englishman who wishes to acquire an accurate and extensive

knowledge of his native tongue. Its utility, in a mercantile point of view, cannot be doubted, as it is probably more in use among European merchants than any other language, except the English. While, however, the importance of the German Language, in literature and science—in arts and commerce—gives it a just claim to the very general attention which is now paid to it in the middle and higher ranks of society, it is a subject of serious complaint that there has hitherto existed in English no good practical German Grammar. The great disadvantage is, that, in most or all of those which have been published, the first exercises begin with long sentences, which require the application of all the rules of syntax, and that, in some instances, more rules are requisite than the writers themselves have given. Instead, however, of undertaking a task which, though easy, might be thought invidious, namely, to detail their various defects, the author thinks it sufficient to say, that it has been his anxious endeavour to obviate them; and, as he is an Englishman, he presumes to hope that his Grammar will be more useful to his own countrymen than any similar productions from the hands of German writers;—for who, it may be asked, is so likely to know the peculiar difficulties which retard the progress of the English student, as he who has had to contend with them?

Although the following pages differ considerably from those of preceding writers, the materials of which they are composed have been carefully selected from the works of German grammarians of established authority. In this edition the author has not only made considerable alterations, but he trusts, also, important improvements, particularly in the Table of Irregular Verbs, and Explanation of the Tenses.

In this Grammar every rule or important note is followed by easy exercises, or by suitable examples; the exercises increase in difficulty by regular and almost imperceptible gradations, commencing with the articles and nouns, which are sufficiently difficult for beginners, then proceeding with the articles, nouns, and adjectives, and so on in regular order through the other parts of speech. In syntax the rules have been compressed as much as possible, in order to afford greater scope for illustrations and exercises; and, though this Grammar is comprised within a smaller compass than most others on the same subject, it will nevertheless be found to contain more matter than any German grammar hitherto published in this country. Throughout the work the author has been studious to unite conciseness with perspicuity, so as neither to perplex the student with unnecessary explanations, nor to omit any elucidation which he conceived would be useful. How far he has succeeded in these particulars is left to the decision of candid and impartial judges.

Marlborough Place Academy,  
Walworth, 1832.

# CONTENTS.

	PAGE		PAGE
Alphabet .. ..	1	Indefinite Pronouns .. ..	79
Pronunciation .. ..	3	Division of Verbs .. ..	86
Capitals .. ..	4	Auxiliary Verbs .. ..	88
Orthography .. ..	5	Regular Active Verb .. ..	119
Parts of Speech .. ..	7	Terminations of Regular	
Articles .. ..	7	Verbs .. ..	123
Nouns and Declensions ..	8	Conjugation of Irregular	
Declension of Proper Names	21	Verbs .. ..	126
<i>Obs.</i> on the Plural of Nouns	23	List of Irregular Verbs ..	135
On the Declension of Nouns	28	Passive Verbs .. ..	156
On the Gender of Nouns ..	31	Irregular Passive Verbs ..	160
Endings of Nouns .. ..	35	Neuter Verbs .. ..	163
Examination on the Nouns	40	Observations on Neuter Verbs	169
Adjectives .. ..	41	Compound Verbs .. ..	178
Terminations of Adjectives,		Observations on Compound	
&c. .. ..	46	Verbs .. ..	186
Comparison of Adjectives ..	52	Reflective Verbs .. ..	193
Nominal Adjectives .. ..	59	Impersonal Verbs .. ..	198
Pronouns .. ..	68	Adverbs .. ..	206
Possessive Pronouns .. ..	70	Prepositions .. ..	211
Demonstrative Pronouns ..	74	Conjunctions .. ..	220
Relative Pronouns .. ..	77	Interjections .. ..	226
Interrogative Pronouns ..	78		

# SYNTAX.

	PAGE		PAGE
Of Articles .. ..	229	Passive Verbs .. ..	293
Of Nouns .. ..	237	Neuter Verbs .. ..	295
Of Adjectives .. ..	245	Compound Verbs .. ..	296
Of Pronouns .. ..	254	Reflective Verbs .. ..	299
Possessive Pronouns .. ..	254	Impersonal Verbs .. ..	299
Demonstrative Pronouns ..	259	Participles .. ..	302
Relative Pronouns .. ..	262	Adverbs .. ..	306
Interrogative Pronouns ..	267	Prepositions .. ..	307
Indefinite Pronouns .. ..	270	Conjunctions .. ..	317
Of Verbs .. ..	273	Endings of Nouns .. ..	323
Agreement of Verbs .. ..	273	Familiar Dialogues .. ..	343
Government of Verbs .. ..	278	Proverbs, &c. .. ..	384
Moods and Tenses .. ..	284		

# GERMAN ABBREVIATIONS.

A. C. ....	Anno Christi. ....	in the year of our Lord.
A. M., or a. m. ....	am Main, ....	on the Maine; as,
Frankfurt a. m. ....	.....	Fr. on the Maine.
Anno ....	im Jahr, ....	in the year.
Antw. ....	Antwort, ....	answer.
A. St. ....	Alten Stils, ....	old style.
A. T. ....	Altes Testament, ....	Old Testament.
Ausg. ....	Ausgabe, ....	edition.
Ausg. ....	ausgenommen, ....	except.
B. ....	Buch, Band, ....	book, volume.
C. Cap., or Kap. ....	Capitel, or Kapitel, ..	chapter.
D. ....	Doctor, ....	Doctor.
d. h. ....	das heißt, ....	that means.
d. i. ....	das ist, ....	i. e. viz.
dergl. ....	dergleichen, ....	of this kind.
Ev. ....	Evangelium, ....	Gospel.
Ew. ....	Euer, ....	your.
f. or folg. ....	folgend, ( <i>sing.</i> ) } ....	the following.
ff. ....	folgende, ( <i>plu.</i> ) }	
Fr. ....	Frau, ....	lady, wife.
geb. ....	geboren, ....	born.
gest. ....	gestorben, ....	died.
Gr. ....	Groschen, ....	a coin in Germany.
h. S. ....	heilige Schrift, ....	Holy Scriptures.
Fr. Frn. ....	Herr, Herrn, ....	Mr. Sir, Sirs, Messrs.
H. ....	Herrn, ....	Messrs.
J. C. ....	Jesus Christus, ....	Jesus Christ.
L. ....	lies, ....	read.
M. or Maj. ....	Majestät, ....	Majesty.
Msct. ....	Manuscript, ....	Manuscript.
N. S. ....	Nachschrift, ....	Postscript.
N. T. ....	Neues Testament, ....	New Testameht.
Rec. ....	Recensent, ....	Reviewer, critic.
Rthlr. ....	Reichs Thaler, ....	Rixdollar.
S. f. ....	Seite, ....	Page (of a book).
S. or f. ....	siehe ....	see, or vide.
Se. R. H. ....	Seine Königlich Hoheit, ....	his royal highness.
Se. Maj. ....	Seine Majestat, ....	his Majesty.
St. ....	Sanct, ....	Saint.
Thlr. ....	Thaler, ....	dollar.
u. a. m. ....	und andere mehr, ....	and so forth, or farther.
u. d. g. ....	und der gleichen, ....	and the like.
u. f. f. ....	und so fort, or ferner, }	&c.
u. f. m. ....	und so mehr, }	
u. f. w. ....	und so weiter, }	
V. or v. ....	Vers, or von, ....	Verse, of, or from.
Z. z. ....	Zeile, ....	line.



## EXPLANATION

OF THE SIGNS AND ENGLISH ABBREVIATIONS WHICH  
ARE USED IN THIS GRAMMAR.

---

THE Asterisk (\*) is sometimes used to direct the reader to some note, or observation; but it is generally placed before single words to show that the vowels *a, o, u*, are changed into the diphthongs *æ, œ, ue*, or *ä, ö, ü*. Example: das \**Buch*, the book; die *Bücher*, or *Bücher*, the books.

The letters *M.F.N.*, *m. f. n.*, or *Mas. Fem. Neut.*, denote the genders, *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter*.

The letters *N.G.D.A.* or *Nom. Gen. Dat. Acc.*, denote the cases *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, and Accusative*.

The figures 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, when used after a noun, point out to what declension the noun belongs.

The letters *a, b, c, d, &c.* denote *first, second, third, &c.* *Ex.* is used for *Example*; *Ob.* for *Observe*, or *Observation*; *Sing.* *Singular*; *Pl.* *Plural*.

*Pres.* *Present Tense*.—*Imp.* *Imperfect*.—*Perf.* *Perfect*.  
—*Phyp.* *Pluperfect*.—*1st Fut.* *First Future*.—*2nd Fut.*  
*Second Future*.—*Cond.* *Conditional*.—*Act.* *Active*.—*Pass.*  
*Passive*.—*Neut.* *Neuter*.—*Vide*, or *v. See*.—*P.* or *p.* *Page*.  
—*Gram.* *Grammar*.

# GERMAN GRAMMAR.

## The Alphabet,

### Die Buchstabenfolge.

Letters.	Names.	English.	Pronounced.
A a	ah	A	a...as <i>a</i> in <i>father</i> , <i>Vater</i> ; <i>man</i> , <i>Mann</i> .
B b	bay	B	b...generally sounded as in English, except where it is sounded like <i>p</i> at the end of words; as, <i>ob</i> , <i>whether</i> , is pronounced <i>op</i> .
C c	tsay	C	c...before <i>a</i> , <i>o</i> , <i>u</i> , as <i>t</i> ; ex. <i>Cocoa</i> ? and before <i>e</i> , <i>i</i> , <i>y</i> , as <i>t</i> s; <i>Cicero</i> is sounded as if it were written <i>t</i> s <i>i</i> t <i>e</i> ro.
D d	day	D	d...as in English, but in some provinces much harder at the end of words approaching to <i>t</i> , or rather <i>dt</i> .
E e	a	E	e...as <i>a</i> in <i>name</i> .
F f	f	F	f
G g	ghay	G	g... <i>G</i> , at the beginning of words is hard; at the end, it has sometimes the soft guttural sound of <i>ch</i> : as, <i>der Tag</i> , <i>the day</i> ; <i>wenig</i> , <i>little</i> . But the sounds of <i>ch</i> , and of the guttural <i>g</i> , have no corresponding sound in English.
H h	hah	H	h...as aspirated at the beginning of a word, otherwise it merely protracts the sound of the preceding vowel.
I i	e	I	i
J j	yod	J	j...as <i>y</i> in <i>year</i> ; ex. <i>Jahr</i> .
K k	kah	K	k
L l	l	L	l
M m	m	M	m

# ALPHABET.

N	n	n	N	n	
O	o	o	O	o	
P	p	pay	P	p	
Q	q	koo	Q	q	
R	r	err	R	r	
S	s	s	S	s	[of words, not f.
T	t	tay	T	t	s...obs. s is always used at the end
U	u	oo	U	u	...has either the long sound of the English oo; as, <i>Ruh</i> , ( <i>koo</i> ) <i>cow</i> , or the short sound of u in <i>full</i> .
V	v	fow	V	v	...as f in English; ex. <i>father</i> , <i>Water</i> .
W	w	vay	W	w	...nearly as v in the English word <i>vine</i> ; as, <i>Wein</i> , <i>wine</i> .
X	x	iks	X	x	
Y	y	ip-silon	Y	y	...Y is merely double i, and was formerly written ij, it is sounded as y in the English word <i>system</i> , <i>System</i> .
Z	z	tsett	Z	z	...as ts, in the German word <i>Zimmer</i> , <i>room</i> , which is sounded as if it were <i>tzimmer</i> .

The letters, f, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, and x, when combined with other letters, are pronounced as in English.

THE VOWELS ARE a, e, i, o, u.

THE DIPHTHONGS ARE

a or ae*	pronounced as	a, in <i>hare</i> .
o or oe		eu, or au, in the French <i>peu</i> , little; <i>cœur</i> , heart; ex. <i>hören</i> , to hear.
u or ue		u French in <i>dure</i> , hard; ex. <i>übel</i> , ill.
au		ou, in <i>house</i> ; ex. <i>Bau</i> , building.
ai ay		y, in <i>sky</i> ; ex. <i>Kaiser</i> , emperor.
ei ey		y, in <i>by</i> ; ex. <i>bei</i> or <i>bey</i> , near.
ie		ee, in the English word <i>feet</i> .
eu		ey, in <i>eye</i> ; ex. <i>Feuer</i> , <i>fire</i> .

\* As it would be inconvenient to put dots, or e, over capitals, the diphtongs Ae, Oe, Ue, are used at the beginning of

A **TRIPHTHONG** is the union of three vowels ; *au*, *au* or *aeu*, pronounced as *ey* in the English word *eye* ;  
ex. *Mäuse*, *mice*.

## THE DOUBLE CONSONANTS ARE

ch, sch, ck, ff, ph, pf, ss, sz, tz.  
ch, sch, ck, ff, ph, pf, ss, sz, tz.

Some of the letters or characters are so similar in form as to be easily confounded. To avoid this confusion observe :

1. That among the capital letters *B*, *bay*, is closed in the middle, and *B*, *fow*, is open.

2. *D*, *day*, has a projecting stroke at the top, but *D*, *o*, is joined.

3. *E*, *a*, has a small projecting stroke in the middle, *E*, *tsay*, has not.

4. *G*, *ghay*, is without any opening, but *G*, *s*, has an opening.

5. *K*, *kah*, is rounded at the top towards the right hand, *K*, *n*, open in the middle, and *K*, *err*, closed.

6. *M*, *m*, is open, and *M*, *vay*, closed at the bottom. Among the small letters.

1. *b*, *bay*, is perfectly closed below, and *b*, *hah*, open.

2. *f*, *f*, has a projecting stroke on both sides, and *f*, *s*, has only one on the left.

3. *m*, *m*, is quite open below, and *m*, *vay*, is closed.

4. *v*, *fow*, is closed, and *v*, *ipson*, is open at the bottom.

5. *r*, *iks*, has a small stroke below on the left, and *r*, *err*, none.

**Pronunciation.**

In German, as in most other foreign languages, attempts are generally made by writers of Grammars to give rules for the pronunciation ; but as any de-

---

words instead of *ä*, *ö*, *ü*. Ex. : *die Äpfel*, *the apples* ; but *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, are used when differently situated. Ex. : *die Bögen*, *the bows*, *die Brüder*, *the brothers*.

scription of sounds that can possibly be given, must fall far short of oral instruction, and serve rather to mislead than instruct, I shall confine myself to the following observation.

The Germans pronounce every letter in each word, and always according to the original sound, except the diphthongs and combined consonants *ch, sch, ph, &c.*

This rule cannot mislead, but students of the German or of any other foreign language, had better never attempt to acquire the pronunciation without the assistance of a teacher: as sounds must be acquired by the ear and not by the eye.

### Capitals.

*Observations respecting the use of Capital Letters.*

1. All substantives, as well as words used substantively, begin with capitals, and also all sentences: as,

Der Tag, the day.	die Woche, the week.
der Weise, the wise man.	die Meinigen, my family.
das Grüne, the green.	das Unserige, our property.
das Meine, mine.	das Lesen, ( <i>the</i> ) reading, &c.
Ein rechtschaffener Mann ist	An honest man is the
das edelste Werk Gottes.	noblest work of God.

2. The pronouns answering to *you, your, &c.* must begin with a capital, when they refer to the person whom we address; as, *Sie, you; Du, thou &c. Ihr, Ihrige, your; Dein, thine;* but the pronoun *ich, I,* is never written with a capital but at the beginning of a sentence, or in some particular instances, such as, *Er ist mein anderes Ich, he is my other self.*

The pronoun *sie*, when it answers to the English pronoun *they*, or *she*, is written with a small letter, unless it begin a sentence.

3. The numeral *Ein, one*, begins with a capital to distinguish it from the article, when a particular stress is laid upon it; as, *Es ist nur Ein Gott, there is but one God.\**

---

\* Adjectives derived from the proper names of places begin with a small letter; as, *Die französische Sprache ist viel*

## Orthography.

### Observations on Orthography.

As learners are often embarrassed by the various modes of spelling, adopted by different authors, the following examples and remarks may be found useful.

For K, as Capitel, Cabinet, &c. instead of Kapitel, Kabinet.

C .. Z .. Centner, Cither, &c. .. .. Zentner, Zither.

i .. y .. { zwei, drei, frei, Ei, &c. } .. { zwey, drey, frey, Ey,  
i .. y .. { Mai, bei, Fischelei, &c. } .. { May, bey, Fischeley.

in .. inn .. Königin, Fürstin, &c. .. .. Königinn, Fürstinn.

t .. d .. Brot, Linte, &c. .. .. Brod, Dinte.

z .. s .. Reizen, Weizen, &c. .. .. Reizen, Weizen.

Many authors reject the h from some words or syllables which are sounded long; as Name, *name*, Einmal, *once*, &c. instead of Nahme, Einmahl.

In many of the modern publications, which are printed in German characters, i is used instead of y. Ex. bei (not bey) and all words compounded with bei; as beißen, *to sit by*, (not beyßen, &c.); also, beide, *both*, (not beyde); zwei, *two*, (not zwey); drei, *three*, (not drey), &c. *Vide* the new edition of Bailey's Dictionary, Heinsius' German Grammar, Zeitung für die Elegante Welt, Morgenblatt, &c. But in the Jena and Leipsic Literary Gazettes, y is used instead of i in the above examples.

As still greater irregularities take place in the use of ff and ß, the following observations respecting them may be found useful.

1. A word should never terminate in ff, when printed in German characters, therefore we must write muß, not muss; bloß, not bloss. So Schloß, *palace*, Haß, *hatred*, naß, *wet*, &c. For this authority *vide* Heinsius' Grammar, Adelung's Dictionary or Grammar, or any modern publications, which are printed in German characters. But it appears to be indifferent, whether

---

ärmer als die deutsche, *the French language is much poorer than the German*; but some Germans prefer the use of the capital, and would write: Die Französische Sprache ist, &c.

ff or ß be employed when the Roman characters are used. *Vide* the Jena or Leipsic Literary Gazettes.

2. ß is invariably used after a vowel when it is long, both in the middle and at the end of words ; as, groß, *great* ; grüßen, *to salute* ; saßen, *sat* ; Spaß, *sport*, &c.\*

3. ß is used instead of ff, at the end of a syllable, when a consonant follows : as, häßlich, *hateful*, ; größte or größteste, *greatest* ; Sprößling, *sprig*, &c. But when a short vowel precedes and another vowel follows, ff is used instead of ß ; as, wissen, *to know* ; hassen, *to hate* ; essen, *to eat* ; Schlösser, *palaces* ; Wasser, *water*, &c. So in declining, the same observations apply. Ex.

<i>Sing.</i>	N.	Faß, (cask)	G.	Fasses,	D.	Fasse,	A.	Faß.
<i>Plur.</i>	N.	Fässer, (casks)	G.	Fässer,	D.	Fässern,	A.	Fässer.
<i>Sing.</i>	N.	Gräß, (gluttony)	G.	Gräses,	D.	Gräße,	A.	Gräß.
<i>Plur.</i>	N.	Gräße	G.	Gräße,	D.	Gräßen,	A.	Gräße.

N. B. a is short in Faß ; but long in Gräß.

4. In the following adjectives and nouns o and u are long. Bloß, *naked*. M. bloßer, F. bloße, N. bloßes ; Blöße, f. *nakedness*. Groß, *great*. M. größer, F. große, N. großes ; Größe, f. *greatness*. Süß, *sweet*, M. süßer, F. süße, N. süßes ; Süßigkeit, f. *sweetness*.

But in the following the vowel a is short :

	M.	F.	N.
Bläß, pale.	blässer,	blasse,	blasses.
Graß, horrible.	grässer,	grasse,	grasses.
Naß, wet.	nasser,	nasse,	nasses.
Blässe, paleness.	Nässe, wetness.		

5. In contracted words ß is used instead of s, or ff ; as,

dieß for dieses, this, *Nom. Neuter*.

deß ... dessen, of this, *Gen. Mas. and Neut.*

wesß ... wessen, whose or whom.

er ißt ... er isset, he eats.

er läßt .. er lässt, he lets.

---

\* The double vowels aa, au, äu, ei, ie, oo, are always pronounced long. But ä, ö ü, are sometimes pronounced long and sometimes short.

# GRAMMAR.

## Parts of Speech.

In German, as in English, there are nine different classes of words or parts of speech, five of which are declinable, and four indeclinable.

### Declinable.

1. Article, *Geschlechtswort*.
2. Noun, *Nennwort*.
3. Adjective, *Beiwort*, or *Eigenschaftswort*.
4. Pronoun, *Fürwort*.
5. Verb, *Zeitwort*.

### Indeclinable.

6. Adverb, *Nebenvort*.
7. Preposition, *Vorwort*.
8. Conjunction, *Bindewort*.
9. Interjection, *Empfindungswort*.

## Articles.—*Geschlechtswörter*.

There are two articles, viz. *ein*, *a* or *an*, and *der*, *the*; which are declined in three genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter.

The indefinite article *Ein*, *a*, is thus declined :

	MAS.	FEM.	NEUTER.
<i>N.</i>	<i>ein</i> ,	<i>eine</i> ,	<i>ein</i> , <i>a</i> .
<i>G.</i>	<i>eines</i> ,	<i>einer</i> ,	<i>eines</i> , of <i>a</i> .
<i>D.</i>	<i>einem</i> ,	<i>einer</i> ,	<i>einem</i> , to <i>a</i> .
<i>A.</i>	<i>einen</i> ,	<i>eine</i> ,	<i>ein</i> , <i>a</i> .

*Ein* has no plural.

The definite article *Der*, *the*, is thus declined :

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>for all genders.</i>
<i>N.</i> <i>der</i> ,	<i>die</i> ,	<i>daß</i> ,	<i>die</i> , <i>the</i> .
<i>G.</i> <i>des</i> ,	<i>der</i> ,	<i>des</i> ,	<i>der</i> , of <i>the</i> .
<i>D.</i> <i>dem</i> ,	<i>der</i> ,	<i>dem</i> ,	<i>den</i> , to <i>the</i> .
<i>A.</i> <i>den</i> ,	<i>die</i> ,	<i>daß</i> ,	<i>die</i> ,* <i>the</i> .

\* The articles must agree with the nouns to which they are joined in gender, number, and case. This is properly a rule belonging to syntax, but it may here be found of great utility.



**Nouns.—Nennwörter or Hauptwörter.****DECLENSION OF NOUNS.**

The changes of termination, in German nouns, are all comprehended under five declensions.

**FIRST DECLENSION.**

Nouns of the first declension generally end in *el*, *er*, *en*, *lein*, they take *s* in the genitive singular, and *n* in the dative plural, without any other change of termination.\*

<i>Singular.</i> }	MASCULINE.	<i>{ Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> der Engel, the angel.	<i>N.</i> die Engel, the angels.	
<i>G.</i> des Engels, of the angel.	<i>G.</i> der Engel, of the angels.	
<i>D.</i> dem Engel, to the angel.	<i>D.</i> den Engeln, to the angels.	
<i>A.</i> den Engel, the angel.	<i>A.</i> die Engel, the angels.	

<i>Sing.</i> }	MASCULINE.	<i>{ Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> der Degen, the sword.	<i>N.</i> die Degen, the swords.	
<i>G.</i> des Degens, of the sword.	<i>G.</i> der Degen, of the swords.	
<i>D.</i> dem Degen, to the sword.	<i>D.</i> den Degen, to the swords.	
<i>A.</i> den Degen, the sword.	<i>A.</i> die Degen, the swords.	

<i>Sing.</i> }	NEUTER.	<i>{ Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> das Messer, the knife.	<i>N.</i> die Messer, the knives.	
<i>G.</i> des Messers, of the knife.	<i>G.</i> der Messer, of the knives.	
<i>D.</i> dem Messer, to the knife.	<i>D.</i> den Messern, to the knives.	
<i>A.</i> das Messer, the knife.	<i>A.</i> die Messer, the knives.	

So, for exercise, decline,

Der Adler, the eagle.	das Becken, the bason.
das Alter, the age.	der Busen, the bosom.

Most nouns of this declension change the vowels *a*, *o*, and *u*, into *ä* or *ae*, *ö* or *oe*, *ü* or *ue* in the plural; as,

<i>Sing.</i> }	MASCULINE.	<i>{ Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> der Apfel, the apple.	<i>N.</i> die Äpfel, the apples.	
<i>G.</i> des Apfels, of the apple.	<i>G.</i> der Äpfel, of the apples.	
<i>D.</i> dem Apfel, to the apple.	<i>D.</i> den Äpfeln, to the apples.	
<i>A.</i> den Apfel, the apple.	<i>A.</i> die Äpfel, the apples.	

\* Those nouns which end in *en*, in the nominative, do not take another *n*, in the dative plural, as, *Degen*.

# NOUNS.

9

*Sing.* } \*FEMININE. { *Plural.*

<i>N.</i> die Mutter, the mother.	<i>N.</i> die Mütter, the mothers.
<i>G.</i> der Mutter, of the mother.	<i>G.</i> der Mütter, of the . . . .
<i>D.</i> der Mutter, to the mother.	<i>D.</i> den Müttern, to the . .
<i>A.</i> die Mutter, the mother.	<i>A.</i> die Mütter, the mothers.

So, for exercise, decline.

der Bogen, the bow.	die Tochter, the daughter.
der Bruder, the brother.	der Vogel, the bird

## WITH THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

When a noun is declined with the indefinite article in the singular it takes no article in the plural ; as,

<i>Sing.</i> }	MASCULINE.	{ <i>Plural.</i> [angels.
<i>N.</i> ein Engel, an angel.	<i>N.</i> Engel, angels, or some	
<i>G.</i> eines Engels, of an angel.	<i>G.</i> Engel, of angels.	
<i>D.</i> einem Engel, to an angel.	<i>D.</i> Engeln, to angels.	
<i>A.</i> einen Engel, an angel.	<i>A.</i> Engel, angels.	

<i>Sing.</i> }	FEMININE.	{ <i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> eine Tochter, a daughter.	<i>N.</i> Töchter, daughters.	
<i>G.</i> einer Tochter, of a . . . .	<i>G.</i> Töchter, of daughters.	
<i>D.</i> einer Tochter, to a . . . .	<i>D.</i> Töchtern, to daughters.	
<i>A.</i> eine Tochter, a daughter.	<i>A.</i> Töchter, daughters.	

<i>Sing.</i> }	NEUTER.	{ <i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ein Degen, a sword.	<i>N.</i> Degen, swords.	
<i>G.</i> eines Degen, of a sword.	<i>G.</i> Degen, of swords.	
<i>D.</i> einem Degen, to a sword.	<i>D.</i> Degen, to swords.	
<i>A.</i> ein Degen, a sword.	<i>A.</i> Degen, swords.	

So, for exercise, decline,

Ein *Apfel, <i>m.</i> an apple.	Eine *Mutter, <i>f.</i> a mother.
Ein Ferkel, <i>n.</i> a pig.	Ein Balken, <i>n.</i> a beam.

## EXERCISES ON THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Observe. The words marked (\*) change the vowels *a, o, u* in the plural, into the diphthongs *ä, ö, ü*,

Of the ditch *Graben, <i>m.</i>	Of the father *Vater, <i>m.</i>
A ditch . . . . .	To a father . . . . .

\* Feminines, in the German language, never change their terminations in the singular. *Vide Mutter.*

*D.* dem Kreuze, to the cross.      *D.* den Kreuzen, to the crosses.  
*A.* das Kreuz, the cross.      *A.* die Kreuze, the crosses.]

So, for exercise, decline.

der \*Korb, the basket.      der \*Kamm, the comb  
 der König, the king.      der \*Kopf, the head.

Feminines, it should be remembered, do not change in the singular. [*V. note p. 8.*]; as,

*Sing.* }

FEMININE.

{ *Plural.*

*N.* die Wand, the wall.      *N.* die Wände, the walls.  
*G.* der Wand, of the wall.      *G.* der Wände, of the walls.  
*D.* der Wand, to the wall.      *D.* den Wänden, to the walls.  
*A.* die Wand, the wall.      *A.* die Wände, the walls.

So, for exercise, decline the following feminines :

die \*Stadt, the city.      die \*Ruh, the cow.  
 die \*Magd, the maid.      die \*Kunst, the art.

WITH THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

SINGULAR.

*Mas.*

*Fem.*

*Neuter.*

*N.* ein Stöck, a stick.      eine Nuß, a nut.      ein Pferd, a horse.  
*G.* eines Stöckes,      einer Nuß,      eines Pferdes,  
*D.* einem Stöcke,      einer Nuß,      einem Pferde,  
*A.* einen Stöck,      eine Nuß,      ein Pferd.

PLURAL.

*N.* Stöcke, sticks.      Nüsse, nuts.      Pferde, horses.  
*G.* Stöcke, of sticks.      Nüsse, of nuts.      Pferde, of horses.  
*D.* Stöcken, to stick.      Nüssen, to nuts.      Pferden, to horses.  
*A.* Stöcke, sticks.      Nüsse, nuts.      Pferde, horses.

So, for exercise, decline.

ein \*Rock, *m.* a coat.      eine \*Gans, *f.* a goose.  
 ein \*Fuß, *m.* a foot.      ein Haar, *n.* a hair.

EXERCISE ON THE SECOND DECLENSION.

To the head, *Kopf, <i>m.</i>	Nuts, or some nuts, Nuß.
Of the horse, Pferd, <i>n.</i>	The nets, ( <i>Nom.</i> ) Netz, <i>n.</i>
Of a horse, ....	Of a net, ....
To the feet, *Fuß, <i>m.</i>	Of the button, *Knopf, <i>m.</i>
Of a foot, ....	A button, ....
The frogs, ( <i>Nom.</i> ) *Frosch, <i>m.</i>	To the measure, Maß, <i>n.</i>
To a frog, ....	The pounds, ( <i>Acc.</i> ) Pfund, <i>n.</i>
The hoofs, ( <i>Acc.</i> ) Huf, <i>m.</i>	A mouse, ( <i>Nom.</i> ) *Maus, <i>f.</i>
The nut, ( <i>Nom.</i> ) Nuß, <i>f.</i>	Mice, or some mice, ....

*Observations on the Second Declension.*

1. This declension ends in almost all the letters of the alphabet: as; b, d, f, g, h, k, l, m, n, s, t, v, and z; as,

der Dieb, the thief.  
 der Fleck, the blot.  
 der Freund, the friend.  
 die Frucht, the fruit.  
 der Gebrauch, the custom.  
 das Gewächs, vegetables.  
 das Gewürm, vermin.  
 der Pech, the pike.  
 das Heil, (*the*) welfare.

der Kampf, the combat.  
 der Kapaun, the capon.  
 der Keim, the sprig.  
 die Kraft, the power.  
 der Kreis, the circle.  
 der Krieg, the war.  
 die Laufbahn, the career.  
 der Muff, the muff.

2. Some masculines of this declension change the vowels a, o and u into ä, ö and ü in the plural as,

der Abt, the abbot.  
 der Bart, the beard.  
 der Bischof, the bishop.  
 der Block, the block.  
 der Buck, the buck.  
 der Brand, the fire.  
 der Damm, the dam.  
 der Diebstahl, the theft.  
 der Duft, the exhalation.  
 der Dunst, the vapour.  
 der Fall, the fall.  
 der Gesang, the song.  
 der Hahn, the cock.  
 der Kauf, the purchase.  
 der Krug, the pitcher.  
 der Lauf, the course.  
 der Markt, the market.  
 der Mund, the mouth.

der Pflock, the plug.  
 der Pflug, the plough.  
 der Pfuhl, the pool.  
 der Sarg, the coffin.  
 der Schlag, the blow.  
 der Schluß, the conclusion.  
 der Schooß, the lap.  
 der Schwan, the swan.  
 der Schlund, the gulf.  
 der Stab, the staff.  
 der Stamm, the trunk.  
 der Storch, the stork.  
 der Sturm, the storm.  
 der Vorhang, the curtain.  
 der Wall, the rampart.  
 der Wunsch, the wish.  
 der Zaum, the bridle, &c.

So likewise the following foreign words:

der Altan, the balcony.  
 der Altar, the altar.  
 der Canal, the canal.  
 der Capellan, the chaplain.  
 der Cardinal, the cardinal.  
 der Fiscäl, the exchequer.

der Magistrat, the magistrate.  
 der Marschall, the marshal.  
 der Pocal, the drinking cup.  
 der Propst, the provost.  
 das Tribunal, the tribunal, &c.

The following nouns do not change their vowels in the plural:

der Aal, the eel.  
 der Ahorn, the maple.  
 der Amboss, the anvil.  
 der Anwalt, the attorney.

der Ballast, the ballast.  
 der Bau, the building.  
 der Dachs, the badger.  
 der Dolch, the dagger.

der *Kalz*, the notch.  
 der *Flachs*, the flax.  
 der *Gemahl*, the spouse.  
 der *Halm*, the stubble.  
 der *Harnisch*, the harness.  
 der *Hauch*, the breath.  
 der *Kalk*, or *Kalk*, the lime.  
 der *Lachs*, the salmon.  
 der *Lauch*, the leek.  
 der *Laut*, the sound.  
 der *Leichnam*, the corpse.

der *Luchs*, the lynx.  
 der *Mittag*, the noon.  
 der *Pfad*, the path.  
 der *Port*, the port.  
 der *Schuh*, the shoe.  
 der *Stoff*, the stuff.  
 der *Strauß*, the ostrich.  
 der *Trunkenbold*, the drunkard.  
 der *Zoll*, the inch.  
 but der *Zoll*, the toll, makes  
 die *Zölle*, in the plural.

3. All feminines change their vowels but none of the neuters, except :

*Sing.*  
 das *Arsenal*, the arsenal.  
 das *Chor*, the choir.  
 das *Floß*, the float, or raft.

*Plur.*  
 die *Arsenale*, the arsenals.  
 die *Chöre*, the choirs.  
 die *Floße*, the floats or rafts.

4. *Abend*, evening, and a few other words of this declension, take *s* instead of *es* in the genitive singular.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

In this declension all the cases end in *en*, except the nominative singular ; but those nouns which end in *e*, *el*, or *er*, take *n* instead of *en*, as :

<i>Sing.</i> }	MASCULINE.	{ <i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> der <i>Fürst</i> , the prince.	<i>N.</i> die <i>Fürsten</i> , the princes.	
<i>G.</i> des <i>Fürsten</i> , of the prince.	<i>G.</i> der <i>Fürsten</i> , of the ....	
<i>D.</i> dem <i>Fürsten</i> , to the ....	<i>D.</i> den <i>Fürsten</i> , to the ....	
<i>A.</i> den <i>Fürsten</i> , the prince.	<i>A.</i> die <i>Fürsten</i> , the princes.	

<i>Sing.</i> }	MASCULINE.	{ <i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> der <i>Knabe</i> , the boy.	<i>N.</i> die <i>Knaben</i> , the boys.	
<i>G.</i> des <i>Knaben</i> , of the boy.	<i>G.</i> der <i>Knaben</i> , of the boys.	
<i>D.</i> dem <i>Knaben</i> , to the boy.	<i>D.</i> den <i>Knaben</i> , to the boys.	
<i>A.</i> den <i>Knaben</i> , the boy.	<i>A.</i> die <i>Knaben</i> , the boys.	

So, for exercise, decline.

der <i>Soldat</i> , the soldier.	der <i>Neffe</i> , the nephew.
der <i>Komödiant</i> , the player.	der <i>Tyrann</i> , the tyrant.

<i>Sing.</i> }	FEMININE.	{ <i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> die <i>Freiheit</i> , the liberty.	<i>N.</i> die <i>Freiheiten</i> , liberties.	
<i>G.</i> der <i>Freiheit</i> , of .....	<i>G.</i> der <i>Freiheiten</i> , of .....	

*D. der Freiheit, to the liberty*    *D. den Freiheiten, to . . .*  
*A. die Freiheit, the liberty.*    *A. die Freiheiten, liberties.*

So, for exercise, decline.

*die Kirche, the church.*                      *die Last, the burden.*  
*die Königin, the queen.*                      *die Zeit, the time.*

WITH THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

<i>Mas.</i> }	SINGULAR.	<i>Fem.</i>
<i>N. Ein Hase, a hare.</i>	<i>N. Eine Blume, a flower.</i>	
<i>G. eines Hasen, of a hare.</i>	<i>G. einer Blume, of a flower.</i>	
<i>D. einem Hasen, to a hare.</i>	<i>D. einer Blume, to a flower.</i>	
<i>A. einen Hasen, a hare.</i>	<i>A. eine Blume, a flower.</i>	

<i>Mas.</i> }	PLURAL.	<i>Fem.</i>	[flowers.
<i>N. Hasen, hares.</i>	<i>N. Blumen, flowers, or some</i>		
<i>G. Hasen, of hares.</i>	<i>G. Blumen, of flowers.</i>		
<i>D. Hasen, to hares.</i>	<i>D. Blumen, to flowers.</i>		
<i>A. Hasen, hares.</i>	<i>A. Blumen, flowers.</i>		

So, for exercise, decline.

*Ein Affe, m. an ape.*                      *Eine Ameise, f an ant.*

EXERCISES ON THE THIRD DECLENSION.

<i>Of the heroes, Helden, m.</i>	<i>Of a tyrant, Tyrann, m.</i>
<i>Heroes, . . . .</i>	<i>Of the burden, Last, f.</i>
<i>The writings, (Nom.) Schrift, f.</i>	<i>To the sister, Schwester, f.</i>
<i>The writing, (Acc.) . . . .</i>	<i>Of the men, - - Mensch, m.</i>
<i>To the ball, Kugel, f.</i>	<i>Men, or some men . . . .</i>
<i>Of a ball, . . . .</i>	<i>Of the intentions, Absicht, f.</i>
<i>Of the master, Herr, m.</i>	<i>To a prince, Fürst, m.</i>
<i>To the count, Graf, m.</i>	<i>Of the churches, Kirche, f.</i>
<i>The world, Welt, f.</i>	<i>To churches, . . . .</i>

Observations on the Third Declension.

(1.) Most masculines in *e* belong to this declension, as :

<i>der Affe, the ape.</i>	<i>der Funke, the spark.</i>
<i>der Böhme, the Bohemian.</i>	<i>der Hase, the hare.</i>
<i>der Britte, the Briton.</i>	<i>der Junge, the boy, or lad.</i>
<i>der Celte, the Celt.</i>	<i>der Sklave, the slave.</i>
<i>der Erbe, the heir.</i>	<i>der Zeuge, the witness, &amp;c.</i>

(2.) The names of people according to their country, profession, character, and the like, as :

<i>der Advocat, the lawyer.</i>	<i>der Christ, the Christian.</i>
<i>der Baier, the Bavarian.</i>	<i>der Franzose, the Frenchman.</i>

der Geß, the fop.	der Monarch, the monarch.
der Gefell, the mate.	der Moor, the Moor.
der Hagestolz, the old batchelor.	der Student, the student.
der Israelit, the Israelite.	der Thor, the fool, &c.

The feminines of this declension are :

(1.) Nouns ending in *e*, *el*, *er*, except *die Mutter*, and *die Tochter*, which are of the first declension, as :

die Ader, the vein.	die Gabel, the fork.
die Ameise, the ant.	die Insel, the island.
die Amsel, the blackbird.	die Kammer, the chamber.
die Bibel, the bible.	die Kugel, the ball.
die Biene, the bee.	die Leber, the liver.
die Birne, the pear.	die Leier, the lyre.
die Blume, the flower.	die Mauer, the wall.
die Fabel, the fable.	die Schwester, the sister, &c.

(2.) Nouns ending in *heit*, *keit*, *schaft*, *ung*, in or *inn*, and *ei*, or *ey*, as :

die Beleidigung, the offence.	die Herrschaft, the lordship, &c.
die Fischerei, the fishery.	die Wohlthäterin, the benefac-
die Freiheit, the freedom.	tress, &c.
die Herrlichkeit, the splendor.	

(3.) Nouns ending in *ath*, *end*, *ft*, *cht*, *ld*, *n*, &c. as :

die Gegend, the country.	die Last, the burden.
die Heirath, the marriage.	die List, the artifice.
die Tugend, the virtue.	die Pflicht, the duty, &c.

*Observe.* Nouns ending in *e*, *el*, *er*, take only *n*, as : *der Bothe, the messenger* ; (*G.*) *Bothen* ; (*Pl.*) *Bothen* ; *die Schulter, the shoulder* ; (*Pl.*) *Schultern*.

The following nouns take *enß*, or *nß*, instead of *en*, in the genitive singular, but those ending in *n*, take *s* only.

der Buchstab, the letter.	der Karpfen, the carp.
der Friede, ( <i>the</i> ) peace.	der Name, the name.
der Funke, the spark.	der Same, the seed.
der Gedanke, the thought.	der Schade, the mischief.
der Haufen, the heap.	der Schmerz, the pain.
das Herz, the heart.	der Wille, the will.

Making the genitive *des Buchstabens*, *des Friedens*, &c. All these words (except *das Herz*), originally had *en* in the nominative, and belonged to the first declension, in which way they may still be used ; *das Herz, the heart*, being neuter, is the same in the accusative as the nominative, that is, *das Herz*, not *Herzen*. These nouns may likewise take *n* in the nominative, and fall under the first declension, as, *der Frieden*, *der Funken*, &c.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

In this declension the genitive singular ends in *eß*, or *ß*, the dative in *e*, and all the cases plural in *en*, or *n*, only, [*V. Obs. 2.*] as :

<i>Sing.</i> }	NEUTER.	<i>{ Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> das Ohr, the ear.	<i>N.</i> die Ohren, the ears.	
<i>G.</i> des Ohres, of the ear.	<i>G.</i> der Ohren, of the ears.	
<i>D.</i> dem Ohre, to the ear.	<i>D.</i> den Ohren, to the ears.	
<i>A.</i> das Ohr, the ear.	<i>A.</i> die Ohren, the ears.	

So, for exercise, decline.

das Bett, the bed.

das Hemd, the shirt.

## WITH THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

<i>Mas.</i> }	SINGULAR.	<i>{ Neuter.</i>
<i>N.</i> ein Pfau, a peacock.	<i>N.</i> ein Auge, an eye.	
<i>G.</i> eines Pfauens, of a peacock.	<i>G.</i> eines Auges, of an eye.	
<i>D.</i> einem Pfau, to a peacock.	<i>D.</i> einem Auge, to an eye.	
<i>A.</i> einen Pfau, a peacock.	<i>A.</i> ein Auge, an eye.	

## PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> Pfauen, peacocks.	<i>N.</i> Augen, eyes, or some eyes.
<i>G.</i> Pfauen, of peacocks.	<i>G.</i> Augen, of eyes.
<i>D.</i> Pfauen, to peacocks.	<i>D.</i> Augen, to eyes.
<i>A.</i> Pfauen, peacocks.	<i>A.</i> Augen, eyes, or some eyes.

So, for exercise, decline.

ein Dorn, *m.* a thorn.

ein Gliedmaß, *n.* a limb.

## EXERCISE ON THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

A Throne, - - Thron, <i>m.</i>	Of the bed, - - Bett, <i>n.</i>
To the thrones, .....	To beds, or } ....
Of some thrones, .....	to some beds, }
To the peacock, Pfau, <i>m.</i>	The beds, ( <i>Acc.</i> ) ....
To a peacock, ....	To the beds, - - ....
Of the neighbour, Nachbar, <i>m.</i>	Of the subject, Unterthan, <i>m.</i>
A neighbour, ( <i>Acc.</i> ) .....	An ornament, - - Zierath, <i>m.</i>
Of a state, - - Staat, <i>m.</i>	To the ornaments, .....
The states, ( <i>Nom.</i> ) ....	To the shirt, Hemd, <i>n.</i>
The state, ( <i>Acc.</i> ) ....	

## Observations on the Fourth Declension.

1. Of this Declension are likewise, der Psalm, the psalm ; der Sporn, the spur ; der Strahl, the ray ; and some foreign words, as :



das Loch, the hole.	das Schwert, the sword.
das Mahl, the meal.	das Stift, the foundation.
das Maul, the mouth.	das Stift, is also of the 2d. dec.
das Nest, the nest. [	das Thal, the valley.
das Pfand, the pledge.	das *Trumm, the fragment.
das Rad, the wheel.	das Tuch, the cloth.
das Reis, the twig.	das Volk, the people.
das Rind, the cattle.	das Weib, the woman.
das Schloß, the castle.	das Wort, the word, and most
foreign names, as, das Hospital, oder Spital, <i>the hospital</i> ; das	
Parlament, <i>the parliament</i> ; das Regiment, <i>the regiment</i> , &c.	

2. The following nouns are of the fifth declension, when taken in a specific sense, and of the second, when taken in a general sense, as :

## SPECIFIC SENSE.

das Band, the ribbon or tie.	die Bänder, the ribbons.
der Dorn, the thorn.	die Dörner, the thorns, or prickles. (which are limited to some particular shrub or shrubs.)
das Horn, the horn.	die Hörner, the horns of an individual animal.
das Land, the country.	die Länder, the lands or provinces of an individual sovereign.
das Mahl, the meal, mark, sign.	die Mähler, individual meals, marks, signs.
der Ort, the place, spot.	die Orter, individual or definite places.
das Thal, the valley.	die Thäler, valleys taken singly.
das Tuch, the cloth.	die Tücher, the linens. [singly.
das Wort, the word.	die Wörter, the words taken

## GENERIC, OF GENERAL SENSE.

die Bande, the bonds or fetters.	[of all kinds,
die Dorne, or rather Dornen, thorns in general, i.e. thorns	
die Horne, horns, of various animals.	
die Lande, the lands, or countries.	[done.
die Mähle, the times, i.e. the times that a thing has been	
die Orte, places, in general.	
die Thale, vallies in general.	
die Tücher, cloths.	
die Worte, connected words, speech.	

---

\* *Obs.* In good German the plural Trümmer, *ruin, wreck*, is used in preference to Trumm.

DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

	1st Form.		2nd Form.		3rd Form.			4th Form.	
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
<i>N.</i>	—	e	—	—	—	e	en, n	—	e
<i>G.</i>	s	e	s	—	enſ, nſ	e	en, n	s, 's	e
<i>D.</i>	en	en	n	n	en, n	en	en, n	—'n	en
<i>A.</i>	en	e	n	—	en, n	e	en, n	—'n	e

*Obs.* The plural of the first and fourth forms are the same, and the third also in the masculine.

FIRST FORM.

*Sing.*

*Plural.*

*N.* Gottfried,

*N.* Gottfriede,

*G.* Gottfrieds,

*G.* Gottfriede,

*D.* Gottfrieden,

*D.* Gottfrieden,

*A.* Gottfrieden,

*A.* Gottfriede.

So, for exercise, decline.

Adolph, Kant, Hagedorn, Friedrich, Sturm,

SECOND FORM.

*Sing.*

*Plural.*

*N.* Hannibal,

*N.* Hannibal,

*G.* Hannibals,

*G.* Hannibal,

*D.* Hannibaln,

*D.* Hannibaln,

*A.* Hannibaln.

*A.* Hannibal.

So, for exercise, decline.

Abel, Luther, Homer; and so may be declined all nouns that end in al, el, il, er, or, except those nouns which have the accent on the last syllable, as: Virgil, Valer.

THIRD FORM.

*Sing. }*

MASCULINE.

*{ Plural.*

*N.* Schulz,

*N.* Schulze,

*G.* Schulzens,

*G.* Schulze,

*D.* Schulzen,

*D.* Schulzen,

*A.* Schulzen.

*A.* Schulze.

So, for exercise, decline

Franz, Wolf, Leibniz, Hans, Hirsch.

die Furcht, the fear.	der Mord, murder.
das Gemurmel, murmuring:— and other collectives in ge.	der Mund, the mouth.
die Gunst, favor.	der Sand, the sand.
der Jammer, affliction.	der Tod, death.
der Kummer, sorrow.	das Unglück, misfortune.
das Leben, life.	der Unterricht, instruction.
die Liebe, love.	der Urlaub, a furlough. [ing.
das Lob, praise.	der Verstand, the understand-
der Lohn, the reward.	der Zant, strife, quarrel.
	der Zwang,* compulsion.

4. *The following words have no singular.*

Keltern, or Eltern, parents.	die Kosten, the cost, price.
Annaten, annats.	die Leute, the people.
Briefschaften, deeds.	Molken, whey.
Weinkleider, small-clothes.	Ostern, Easter.
die Einkünfte, the revenue.	Pfingsten, Whitsuntide.
Gebrüder, brothers.	Sporteln, emoluments, or per-
Geschwister, brothers & sisters.	quisites of office.
Gefälle, revenues.	Weinachten, Christmas.

5. Those words that express quantity, weight or measure are seldom used in the plural, even though a numeral adjective precede them; as,

zehn Acker, (*not Acker*) Land, ten acres of land.  
vier Buch (*not Bücher*) Papier, four quires of paper.  
hundert Fuß (*not Füße*) hoch, a hundred feet high.  
zwanzig Duzend (*not Duzende*) Wein, twenty dozens of wine.  
vier Pfund (*not Pfunde*) Zucker, four pounds of sugar.  
drei paar (*not paare*) Schuhe, three pairs of shoes.  
ein paar (*not paare*) Tage, a few days, &c.

In speaking of *soldiers*, *sailors*, and *workmen*, the Germans say, drei hundert Mann (*not Männer*) three hundred men.

The following are exceptions to the rule:—

drei Ellen (*not Elle*) Tuch, three ells of cloth.  
drei Meilen (*not Meile*), three miles.

---

\* *Obs.* If a plural be required another word must be used as Danksagungen, thanks, from Danksagung; Befürchtungen fears; Begünstigungen, favors; Lebensläufe, or Lebensbeschreibungen, lives; Liebschaften, loves; Lobeserhebungen, praises, Belohnungen, rewards; Mordthaten, murders; Mäuler, or Mündungen, mouths; Rathschläge, councils; Streitigkeiten, contests; Todesfälle, deaths; Unglücksfälle, misfortunes; Belehrungen, Unterweisungen, instructions; Zänkereien, quarrels.

*Exercise, on all the Declensions,*

With the German words in alphabetical order, serving not only as a useful vocabulary, but possessing the advantage of having the gender and declension marked, the former by the letters, *m. f. n.* and the latter by the numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, 5.

Of the eels, <i>Äal, m. 2.</i>	To the pictures, <i>Bild, n. 5.</i>
To the carrion, <i>*Aaß, n. 5.</i>	Some pears, <i>Birne, f. 3.</i>
The evening, <i>Abend, m. 2.</i>	Some flowers, <i>Blume, f. 3.</i>
To the abbots, <i>*Abt, m. 2.</i>	To the letters, <i>Brief, m. 2.</i>
Of the field, <i>*Acker, m. 1.</i>	The breasts, <i>*Brust, f. 2.</i>
Of a field, ....	To the books, <i>*Buch, n. 5.</i>
The shoulders, <i>Achsel, f. 3.</i>	A book, ....
Of the nobility, <i>Adel, m. 1.</i>	Some books, .....
To an ape, <i>Affe, m. 3.</i>	To the canals, <i>*Canal, m. 2.</i>
Of the altars, <i>*Altar, m. 2.</i>	To cardinals, <i>*Cardinal, m. 2.</i>
To the age, <i>Alter, n. 1.</i>	To the roofs, <i>*Dach, n. 5.</i>
Antiquities, <i>*Alterthum, n. 5.</i>	Of the badgers, <i>*Dachß, m. 2.</i>
To blackbirds, <i>Amsel, f. 3.</i>	The dikes, <i>*Damm, m. 2.</i>
The offices, (A.) <i>*Amt, n. 5.</i>	To the thumbs, <i>Daumen, m. 1.</i>
The ants, (A.) <i>Ameise, f. 3.</i>	Of the swords, <i>Degen, m. 1.</i>
The nurses, (A.) <i>Amme, f. 3.</i>	To the poets, <i>Dichter, m. 1.</i>
Of the devotion, <i>Andacht, f. 3.</i>	To the villages, <i>*Dorf, n. 5.</i>
Preparations, <i>Anstalt, f. 3.</i>	To the heirs, <i>Erbe, m. 3.</i>
To the replies, <i>Antwort, f. 3.</i>	Of some eggs, <i>Ey, n. 5.</i>
Of the labors, <i>Arbeit, f. 3.</i>	To the fables, <i>Fabel, f. 3.</i>
To the eyes, <i>Auge, n. 4.</i>	Of threads, <i>*Faden, m. 1.</i>
To an eye, ....	Of the barrels, <i>*Faß, n. 5.</i>
Of the oyster, <i>Auster, f. 3.</i>	To the fists, <i>*Faust, f. 2.</i>
The brooks, <i>*Bach, m. 2.</i>	Of the enemies, <i>Feind, m. 2.</i>
The path, <i>Bahn, f. 3.</i>	To the fields, <i>Feld, n. 5.</i>
Of a ball, <i>*Ball, m. 2.</i>	Of the rocks, <i>Fels, m. 3.</i>
To the ribbons, <i>*Band, n. 5.</i>	To the fetters, <i>Fessel, f. 3.</i>
To the ideas, <i>Begriff, m. 2.</i>	To the fleas, <i>*Floh, m. 2.</i>
Of mountains, <i>Berg, m. 2.</i>	Of the plains, <i>Flur, f. 3.</i>
To a bed, <i>Bett, n. 4.</i>	To the rivers, <i>*Fluß, m. 2.</i>
Of the proofs, <i>Beweis, m. 2.</i>	The wives, <i>Frau, f. 3.</i>

*Obs.* The above German nouns are all given in the singular.

- To the feet, \*Fuß, *m.* 2.  
 The forks, Gabel, *f.* 3.  
 Of a fork, .....  
 The geese, \*Gans, *f.* 2.  
 To the guest, \*Gast, *m.* 2.  
 The prayers, Gebet, *n.* 2.  
 Of the dangers, Gefahr, *f.* 3.  
 The countries, Gegend, *f.* 3.  
 The spirits, Geist, *m.* 5.  
 Of the money, Geld, *n.* 5.  
 The ghosts, Gespenst, *n.* 5.  
 The conversation, Gespräch,  
     *n.* 2.  
 To the limbs, Glied, *n.* 5.  
 The Gods, \*Gott, *m.* 5.  
 The graves, \*Grab, *n.* 5.  
 To the ditches, Graben, *m.* 1.  
 Of the count, Graf, *m.* 3.  
 The property, \*Gut, *n.* 5.  
 Some property, .....  
 The cock, \*Hahn, *m.* 2.  
 Of the hands, \*Hand, *f.* 2.  
 The towels, \*Handtuch, *n.* 5.  
 Of the skins, \*Haut, *f.* 2.  
 Of the heroes, Held, *m.* 3.  
 Of a master, Herr, *m.* 3.  
 To a wood, \*Holz, *n.* 5.  
 To the fowls, \*Huhn, *n.* 5.  
 Of the hats, \*Hut, *m.* 2.  
 Of a hat, .....  
 To the year, Jahr, *n.* 2.  
 Of the islands, Insel, *f.* 3.  
 Of the Jew, Jude, *m.* 3.  
 Of a boy, Junge, *m.* 3.  
 Some boys, .....  
 To the calves, \*Kalb, *n.* 5.  
 To children, Kind, *n.* 5.  
 Of the churches, Kirche, *f.* 3.  
 To the coats, Kleid, *n.* 5.  
 The cloisters, \*Kloster, *n.* 1.  
 Of the buttons, \*Knopf, *m.* 2.  
 To the heads, \*Kopf, *m.* 2.  
 Of the salmon, Lachs, *m.* 2.  
 Some salmon, .....  
 To the countries, \*Land, *n.* 5.  
 Of the burdens, Last, *f.* 3.  
 To the holes, \*Loch, *n.* 5.  
 A hole, .....  
 Of the maids, \*Magd, *f.* 2.  
 To the almonds, Mandel, *f.* 3.  
 Of the mice, \*Maus, *f.* 2.  
 Of mothers, \*Mutter, *f.* 1.  
 To a mother, .....  
 Nightingales, Nachtigall, *f.* 3.  
 Of the fools, Narr, *m.* 3.  
 The nuts, (A.) \*Nuß, *f.* 2.  
 Some nuts, .....  
 Of the places, \*Ort, *m.* 5.  
 To the popes, \*Papst, *m.* 2.  
 Of the path, Pfad, *m.* 2.  
 The plants, Pflanze, *f.* 3.  
 Of a plant, .....  
 Of the jaw, Rachen, *m.* 1.  
 The borders, \*Rand, *m.* 5.  
 The spaces, (A.) \*Raum, *m.* 2.  
 The riches, \*Reichthum, *m.* 5.  
 Riches, .....  
 To the judge, Richter, *m.* 1.  
 A judge, .....  
 To the juices, \*Saft, *m.* 2.  
 The troop, Schaar, *f.* 3.  
 Of the shadow, Schatten, *m.* 1.  
 The treasures, \*Schatz, *m.* 2.  
 To the ships, Schiff, *n.* 2.  
 The shields, Schild, *n.* 5.  
 To the serpents, Schlange, *f.* 3.  
 The castles, \*Schloß, *n.* 5.  
 The debts, Schuld, *f.* 3.  
 The swallows, Schwalbe, *f.* 3.  
 Of the soldier, Soldat, *m.* 3.  
 A. looking-glass, Spiegel,  
     *m.* 1.  
 The storks, Storch, *m.* 2.  
 Stockings, \*Strumpf, *m.* 2.

Of the actions, That, <i>f. 3.</i> [1.	Of the worlds, Welt, <i>f. 3.</i>
To the daughters, Tochter, <i>f.</i>	Of the wind, Wind, <i>m. 2.</i>
To the dreams, Traum, <i>m. 2.</i>	The wishes, Wunsch, <i>m. 2.</i>
The cloths, Tuch, <i>n. 5.</i>	The worms, Wurm, <i>m. 2. 5.</i>
Of the virtues, Tugend, <i>f. 3.</i>	Of the numbers, Zahl, <i>f. 3.</i>
The nations, Volk, <i>n. 5.</i>	To the tooth, Zahn, <i>m. 2.</i>
Of the watches, Uhr, <i>f. 3.</i>	The times, Zeit, <i>f. 3.</i>
To a watch, ....	To the tents, Zelt, <i>n. 2.</i>
To the woods, Wald, <i>m. 5.</i>	Of a circle, Kreis, <i>m. 1.</i>
Of the walls, Wand, <i>f. 2.</i>	The tolls, Zoll, <i>m. 2.</i>
Of women, Weib, <i>n. 5.</i>	Onions, Zwiebel, <i>f. 3.</i>

### Observations on the Nouns.

Nouns are often compounded with other nouns, and also with adjectives, verbs, adverbs, and prepositions; as, *Waterland*, *native country*, is compounded of the simple words *Water* and *Land*; *Neujahr*, *newyear*; *Göththat*, *kindness*; *Vormittag*, *forenoon*, &c.

The meanings of words, in almost all languages, are susceptible of modification by the help of certain syllables called affixes. In German the following are the principal.

1. *chen* and *lein*, are syllables by which diminutives are formed, as: *das Söhnchen*, *the little son*, from *der Sohn*, *the son*; *das Männchen*, *the little man*, from *der Mann*, *the man*; *das Kindlein*, *the babe*, from *das Kind*, *the child*.

2. *er* denotes the business or profession of a male person, as: *der Bettler*, *the beggar*, from *betteln*, *to beg*; *der Gärtner*, *the gardener*, from *der Garten*, *the garden*.

3. *inn*, or *in*, added to a masculine noun, changes it into a feminine, as: *die Fürstinn*, or *Fürstin*, *the princess*, from *der Fürst*, *the prince*; *die Königin*, *the queen*, from *der König*, *the king*.

4. *e*, *heit*, *keit*, *schaft*, *thum*, which generally correspond to the terminations, *ness*, *ude*, *hood*, *unce*, *ty*, or *cy*, in English, denote the quality, character, dignity, &c. of persons or things, as: *die Größe*, *the greatness*, from *groß*, *great*; *die Seligkeit*, *beatitude*, from *Selig*, *happy*; *die Kindheit*, *the childhood*, from *das Kind*, *the child*; *die Dankbarkeit*, *the thankfulness*, from *dankbar*, *thankful*; *die Bekanntschaft*, *the ac-*

*quaintance*, from *bekannt*, *known*; *das Alterthum*, *antiquity*, from *alt*, *old*; *die Anständigkeit*, *decency*, from *anständig*, *decent*.

5. The syllables *un*, *erz*, *miß*, prefixed to nouns, verbs, &c. correspond to the English *in*, *un*, *arch*, *mis*; as, *die Dankbarkeit*, *the gratitude*, *die Undankbarkeit*, *the ingratitude*; *Achtſam*, *mindful*, *Unachtſam*, *unmindful*; *ein Biſchof*, *a bishop*, *ein Erzbiſchof*, *an archbishop*; *Trauen*, *to trust*, *Miſtrauen*, *to mistrust*.

### *General Observations on the Declension of Nouns.*

The German nouns have caused much perplexity to Grammarians in the arrangement of the declensions, owing to the terminations being so singularly varied, that those nouns which agree in the singular, differ in the plural, and consequently admit of different classifications. Adelung and several other German Grammarians have made eight declensions, others have made four, five, &c. and some only one declension. The number five which I have adopted, is probably best adapted for practice. The learner may, however, be benefited by a careful perusal of the following observations :

1. The declension of nouns is determined by the ending of the genitive singular and nominative plural : the former being principally in *ſ*, or *eſ*; *n*, or *en*, the latter either unchangeable or taking *e*, *n*, *en*, or *er*.

2. The genitive singular of four declensions out of the five is in *ſ*, or *eſ*; and those which have *eſ* take *e* in the dative. The third declension takes *en*, or *n* in all cases except the nominative singular.

3. All feminines are unchangeable in the singular, and are of the second and third declensions.

4. The principal part of the nouns, of all genders, falls under the second and third declension, particularly the second.

5. The accusative of all nouns is like the nominative, except the accusative singular of the third declension.

Or, *Obs.* 1st. decl. has *ſ* gen. sing., *n* dat. pl.

2nd. .... *eſ* gen., *e* dat. sing., and *e* in all cases  
pl. except dat. *en*.

3rd. .... all cases in *en*, or *n*, except nom. sing.

4th. .... has *eſ*, or *ſ* gen., *e* dat. sing., *en*, or  
*n*, in all cases pl.

5th. .... has *eſ* gen., *e* dat. sing., *er* in all cases  
pl. except *ern* dat.

SOME NOUNS VARY THEIR DECLENSIONS AND GENDERS  
ACCORDING TO THEIR SIGNIFICATION, as ;

*Sing.*

der Band, the volume, or bind-  
das Band, the ribbon. [ing.  
das Band, the band, fetter.  
die Bank, the bench.  
die Bank, the bank.  
der Bär, the bear.  
der Bär, the bar, or dam.  
der Bauer, the peasant.  
das Bauer, the cage. [paper.  
der Bogen, the bow, or sheet of  
der Bogen, the arch, or curve.  
der Bruch, the fracture, or break  
das Bruch, the marsh, fen, brook  
der Buckel, the hump-back.  
die Buckel, the stud, or curl.  
der Bund, the alliance.  
das Bund, the bundle.  
der Chor, the chorus.  
das Chor, the choir.  
der Erbe, the heir.  
das Erbe, the inheritance.  
der Flor, the blossom.  
der Flor, the crape, or gauze.  
der Geißel, the hostage.  
die Geißel, the scourge, or whip.  
das Gesicht, the vision.  
das Gesicht, the face.  
die Gift, the gift.  
das Gift, the poison,  
der Hapt, the clasp.  
die Hapt, the imprisonment.  
der Heide, the heathen.  
die Heide, the heath.  
der Kaper, the privateer.  
die Kaper, the caper (a pickle),  
der Kiefer, or die Kiefer, the jaw.  
die Kiefer, the pine-tree.  
der Kunde, the customer.  
die Kunde, knowledge.  
der Laden, the shutter.  
der Laden, the shop.  
das Land, country, state.

*Plural.*

die Bände, the volumes.  
die Bänder, the ribbons.  
die Bande, the bands, fetters.  
die Bänke, the benches.  
die Banken, the banks,  
die Bären, the bears.  
die Bäre, the bars, or dams.  
die Bauern, the peasants.  
die Bauer, the cages. [paper.  
die Bogen, the bows, or sheets of  
die Bögen, the arches, or curves.  
die Brüche, the fractures.  
die Brüche, the marshes, &c.  
die Buckel, the hump-backs.  
die Buckeln, the studs, or curls.  
die Bünde, the alliances.  
die Bünde, the bundles.  
die Chöre, the choruses.  
die Chore, or Chöre, choirs.  
die Erben, the heirs.  
die Erbe, inheritances.  
die Flore, the blossoms.  
die Flöre, the crapes.  
die Geißel, the hostages.  
die Geißeln, the scourges.  
die Gesichte, the visions.  
die Gesichter, faces, looks.  
die Gifte, the gifts.  
die Gifte, the poisons.  
die Haste, the clasps.  
No plural.  
die Heiden, heathens.  
die Heiden, heaths.  
die Kaper, privateers.  
die Kapern, the capers.  
die Kiefer, or Kiefern, the jaws.  
die Kiefern, pine trees.  
die Kunden, customers.  
No plural.  
die Läden, the shutters.  
die Laden, the shops.  
die Länder, countries, states.



das Land, the land, province.	die Lande, lands, provinces.
der Leiter, the guide.	die Leiter, the guides.
die Leiter, the ladder.	die Leitern, the ladders.
das Mahl, the meal.	die Mähler, the meals.
das Mahl, the time.	die Mahle, the times, or marks.
der Mangel, want.	die Mängel, wants.
die Mangel, the mangle.	die Mangeln, the mangles.
die Mark, mark, or boundary.	die Markten, the boundaries.
das Mark, the marrow.	No plural.
der Mast, the mast.	die Masten, the masts.
die Mast, the fruit of wild trees, as oak, beech, &c.	No plural.
der Mensch, man, mankind.	die Menschen, men.
das Mensch, the wench.	die Menschen, the wenches.
der Messer, the measurer.	die Messer, the measurers.
das Messer, the knife.	die Messer, the knives.
der Moor, the Moor, or Negro.	die Mohren, the negroes.
das Moor, or Moor, moor, fen.	die Moore, the moors.
der Pack, the pack, bundle.	die Packer, the bundles.
das Pack, the rabble, or mob.	No plural.
der Reis, the rice.	No plural.
das Reis, the twig, or shoot.	die Reiser, the twigs.
der Schild, the shield.	die Schilde, the shields.
das Schild, the sign-board.	die Schilder, the sign-boards.
die Schnur, the tape, or lace.	die Schnüre, the laces.
die Schnur, daughter-in-law.	die Schnuren, daughters in law.
der See, the lake.	die Seen, the lakes.
die See, the sea.	die Seen, the seas.
der Sprosse, the sprig, or sprout.	die Sprossen, the sprouts.
die Sprosse, the step of a ladder.	die Sprossen, steps of a ladder.
der Stift, the tag of a lace.	die Stifte, the tags, or pegs.
das Stift, the foundation, in- stitution.	die Stifte, or Stifter, found- ations.
der Strauß, the ostrich.	die Strauße, or Straußen, ostriches.
der Strauß, the nosegay.	die Strauße, nosegays.
das Stück, a piece, or part of a whole.	die Stücke, the pieces.
das Stück, a piece of ordnance.	die Stücke, cannon.
der Thor, the fool.	die Thoren, the fools.
das Thor, the gate.	die Thore, the gates.
der Zoll, the inch.	die Zölle, the inches.
der Zoll, the toll, or tax.	die Zölle, the tolls, or taxes.

## Gender of Nouns.

The genders of nouns are, *masculine, feminine, and neuter.*

As a general remark it may be observed, that those nouns which express *strength, vigour, energy, or activity*, are *masculine*.

If they express what is *soft, agreeable, pleasant, or tender*, they are *feminine*.

If they do not express any of these things, they are *neuter*. But, though neither this, nor any other general rule, will be sufficient to distinguish the gender of all nouns; yet it may not be improper to make a few remarks on this subject.

### OF THE MASCULINE GENDER ARE,

1. All proper names of *male animals, persons, gods, angels, and spirits*, as well as all names expressing any *office, dignity, quality, station, or implements* used by mechanics, &c. as :

der Löwe, the lion,	a male animal.
der Vater, the father,	a male person.
der König, the king,	the office of a male.
der Bürger, the citizen,	a male relation.
der Maler, the painter,	the employment of a male.
der Hammer, the hammer,	an instrument for males.

### Except

das Gespenst, the ghost.	person, a person of the male sex, a man.
die Leiter, the ladder.	
das Messer, the knife.	das Ruder, the oar.
das Mannsbild, or die Manns-	die Schildwache, the sentinel.

And all diminutives, as : das Söhnchen, the little son; das Männchen, or Männlein, the little man, or the male sex, &c.

2. The names of *stones, winds, trees, mountains, fishes, birds,\* seasons,† months, days, &c.* as :

der Diamant, the diamond.	der Regen, the rain.
der Ost, the east.	der May, or Mai, May.
der Ostwind, the eastwind.	der Lachs, the salmon.
der Sommer, the summer.	der Baum, the tree.
der Sonntag, the sunday.	

\* Except die Bachtel, the quail, die Amsel, the blackbird, die Elster, the magpie.

† Das Jahr, the year, die Jahreszeit, one of the four seasons of the year, die Jahrszeit, the anniversary, die Mittwoch or der Mittwoch, the Wednesday.

## 3. Most nouns ending in en, as :

der Boden, the bottom.	der Magen, the stomach.
der Hafen, the harbour.	der Degen, the sword.
Except all infinitives used as nouns, which are neuter, as : das Lesen, the reading, das Sehen, the seeing, &c. with some few other nouns, as :	
das Almosen, the alms.	das Kissen, the cushion.
das Becken, the bason.	das Lehen, the fee.
das Eisen, the iron.	das Wappen, the coat of arms.
das Füllen, the foal.	das Zeichen, the sign, or signal.

## OF THE FEMININE GENDER ARE,

1. The names of *female persons*, and *female animals*, as well as names expressing the *dignities*, *relations*, *qualities*, *functions*, and *implements of art* peculiar to the female sex, as ;

die Dichterin, the poetess,	a female poet.
die Frau, the wife,	a female relation.
die Kaiserin, the empress,	a female dignity.
die Mutter, the mother,	a female relation.
die Nadel, the needle,	a female's implement of art.
die Sau, the sow,	a female animal.

## Except

das Frauenzimmer, the lady.	das Mädchen, the girl.
das Fräulein, the title of an unmarried lady of distinction.	das Weib, the woman.
das Weibsbild, a female person.	
das Weibchen, a little woman.	

## 2. The names of rivers are feminine, as :

die Oder, the Oder.	die Elbe, the Elbe, &c.
---------------------	-------------------------

## Except

der Rhein, the Rhine.	der Nil, the Nile.
der Mayn, the Maine.	der Jordan, the Jordan.
der Lech, the Lech.	der Euphrat, the Euphrates.
der Neckar, the Necker.	der Po, the Po.

## 3. The names of flowers, fruits, vegetables, &amp;c. as :

die Nuß, the nut.	die Eichel, the acorn.
die Pflaume, the plum.	die Nelke, the gillyflower.
die Birne, the pear.	die Rose, the rose.

Except

der Apfel, the apple.	der Salat, the sallad.
das Kraut, the herb.	der Kohl, the cabbage.
der Rettich, the raddish.	der Spinat, the spinage.

OF THE NEUTER GENDER ARE :

1. The names of *countries, towns, and villages*, as : England, London, Kingsland, &c.

Except

die Turkei (or Turkei,) Turkey.  
 die Wallachei or (Wallachei,) Wallachia.  
 die Barbarey (or Barbarei,) Barbary.

And other names of places ending in *ey* or *ei* as well, as :

die Schweiz, Switzerland.  
 die Sachsenburg, Saxonburgh.

2. The names of metals, as : das Gold, gold ; das Eisen, iron, &c. ;

Except

Der Stahl, steel ; der Zinn, pinchbeck ; der Zink, zink ;  
 die Platina, platina.

3. The names of young animals and diminutive objects, as :  
 das Lamm, the lamb ; das Kalb, the calf ; das Männchen, the little man, &c.

4. Most collectives, as : das Bild, game ; das Heer, the army ; das Volk, the people, &c

5. Most words beginning with *ge* or ending with *thum*, as  
 das Gedder, the veins ; das Alterthum, (*the*) antiquity, &c.

6. All infinitives\* may be used as substantives, and are neuter, as : das Essen, (*the*) eating ; das Trinken, (*the*) drinking, &c.

7. The letters of the alphabet, as : das X, das B, &c.

Some nouns vary their gender according to their signification, *V.* p. 28.

\* *Obs.* All infinitives, in the German language, may be used as nouns.

AN ALPHABETICAL INDEX OF MOST ENDINGS OF  
NOUNS, TO DETERMINE THEIR GENDERS.

*Obs.* Though there may be some exceptions to these endings, they are but few.

MASCULINE.			FEMININE.		NEUTER.
--- ahl	--- en	--- ort	--- acht	--- ucht	--- ach
--- ahn	--- er	--- oft	--- aft	--- uche	--- ad
--- all		--- ob	--- abrt	--- uft	--- at
--- alm	--- ich		--- angft	--- ulb	--- chen
--- am	--- icht	--- uch	--- art	--- uhr	--- edy
--- and	--- ick	--- uck	--- at	--- unft	--- eil
--- ang	--- ieb	--- ug	--- auf	--- ung	--- et
--- anft	--- ieg	--- umpf		--- unft	
--- anr	--- ing	--- und	--- e	--- ur	--- ier
--- arm	--- ifch	--- unf	--- ei	--- uft	--- ir
--- au	--- is	--- uß	--- eit	--- ut	--- ment
--- auch		--- uß	--- enß	--- uß	--- sch
--- aum	--- ock		--- ey		--- ohr
	--- of		--- gend		--- or
--- eck	--- ohn				--- oß
--- eig	--- oldy		--- ie		--- ofß
--- eim	--- oll		--- ift		--- ot
--- eis	--- on		--- if		--- oth
--- eiß	--- opf		--- ion		--- thum
--- el	--- ord		--- ift		
--- elm	--- orn		--- niß		--- ick

The following Table exhibits at one view the endings of Nouns of every Declension in all the Cases, except the Nominative Singular.

SINGULAR.

	First Declension.	Second Declension.	Third Declension.	Fourth Declension.	Fifth Declension.
<i>Nom.</i>	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Gen.</i>	s	es, or s	en, or n ens, or ns	es, or s	es
<i>Dat.</i>	—	e	en, or n	e*	e
<i>Acc.</i>	—	—	en, or n	—	—

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	—	e	en, or n	en, or n	er
<i>Gen.</i>	—	e	en, or n	en, or n	er
<i>Dat.</i>	n	en	en, or n	en, or n	ern
<i>Acc.</i>	—	e	en, or n	en, or n	er

\* *Obs.* Some few nouns have no e in the dative singular of the fourth declension; as *dem Bauer, to the peasant, &c. v. Obs. 2, p. 18.*

As it may sometimes be difficult for learners to ascertain by rules and observations, the genders of nouns, and the declensions to which they belong, a table is given at the end of the work, in which the endings of most nouns are alphabetically arranged.

*Exercises on the Articles and Nouns to be translated into English.*

FIRST LESSON.

Die Hunde jagen die Hasen. Das Lied der Nachtigall ergötzt das Ohr des Menschen. Der gesang der Amsel ist einer der schönsten der Waldbögel.

Die Absichten des Menschen stimmen oft nicht mit seinen Handlungen überein.

Man nennt das Alter, den Winter des Lebens; und die Jugend, den Frühling des Lebens.

Alle Menschen lieben das Leben, und scheuen den Tod, aber der Weise verachtet den Tod.

Die Zeiger der Uhr, zeigen die Stunden und die Minuten.

Die Mathematik lehrt die Verhältnisse der Zahlen, und der Größen.

Die Theologie ist die Lehre von Gott, und der Glückseligkeit des Menschen.

Hund, *m.* dog. Jagen, hunt. Hase, *m.* hare. Lied, *n.* song. Nachtigall, *f.* nightingale. Ergötzen, delight. Ohr, ear. Mensch, man. Der gesang, the song. Amsel, blackbird. Schönsten, most beautiful. Waldbögel, (birds of the wood) feathered tribe. Absicht, intention. Oft, often. Stimmen nicht überein, do not agree. Mit, with, seinen, his. Handlung, action. Man nennt, we call. Alter, old age. Leben, life. Jugend, youth. Frühling, spring. Alle Menschen, all men. Lieben, love. Leben, life. Scheuen, abhor. Tod, death. Aber, but. Weise, wise man. Verachtet, despises. Zeiger, hand. Uhr, watch. Zeigen, point to. Stunde, hour. Die Mathematik, the mathematics. Lehrt, teaches, (*teach.*) Das Verhältniß, the proportion. Die Zahl, number. Die Größe, magnitude. Die Theologie, theology. Ist, is. Die Lehre, the doctrine. Von, of. Die Glückseligkeit, happiness. Des Menschen, of man.

## SECOND LESSON.

Die Klarheit des Himmels, die Schönheit der Gegend, das Rauschen des Wassers, die Stille der Luft, die Lage des Ortes, die Fruchtbarkeit des Bodens, entzücken das Auge und die Seele des Freundes der Natur und des Landes. Der Mensch ist unter allen Geschöpfen das edelste. Die Weisheit des Menschen ist ein himmlisches Geschenk. Die Menschen sind meistens an ihrem eigenen Verderben schuld. Die Eigenliebe ist fähigkeitsreicher, als der fähigkeitsreichste Mensch. Ein treuer Freund ist ein Schatz von unbefchreiblichem Werthe.

---

Klarheit, clearness. Himmel, sky. Schönheit, beauty. Gegend, country. Rauschen, murmuring. Stille, serenity. Lage, situation. Fruchtbarkeit, richness. Boden, land. Entzücken, delight. Seele, mind. Land, country. Das edelste, the noblest. Unter allen Geschöpfen, of all creatures. Weisheit, wisdom. Geschenk, gift. Himmlisches, (heavenly) from heaven. Sind, are meistens, generally. Schuld, the cause, an ihrem eigenen, of their own. Verderben, ruin. Eigenliebe, self-love. Fähigkeitreicher, cleverer. Als, than, treuer, true. Schatz, treasure. Von, of. Unbefchreiblichem, inestimable. Werthe, worth.

---

## THIRD LESSON.

Die neun Musen sind die Göttinnen der schönen Künste und Wissenschaften. Wir haben vier Elemente, das Wasser, die Erde, die Luft, und das Feuer; das Wasser dient den Menschen, den Thieren, den Pflanzen, ja selbst den Metallen zur Nahrung. Die Erde nährt ebenfalls die Pflanzen. Die Luft umgiebt den ganzen Erdball. Die lebendigen Geschöpfe athmen die Luft ein. Das Feuer schmelzt die Metalle. Das Feuer bringt Wärme hervor. Die Flamme ist das Zeichen des Feuers. Auf der Oberfläche der Erde wachsen Bäume, Kräuter, und Pflanzen. Im Frühlinge blühen viele Arten von Blumen, man sieht dann Rosen, Veilchen, Narcissen, Hyacinthen, Tulpen, und viele andre Blumen.

---

Die Muse, the muse. Sind, are. Göttinn, goddess. Schönen fine. Kunst, art. Wissenschaft, science. Wir haben, we have.



Erde, earth. Luft, air. Dient, serves, *is useful to*. Mensch, man. Thier, animal. Pflanze, plant. Ja selbst, even. Zur, as, (for zu her, as.) Nahrung, food. Nährt, nourishes. Ebenfalls, in like manner. Umgiebt, surrounds. Ganz, whole. Erdball, globe. Lebendig, living. Geschöpf, creature. Athmen ein, inhale. Schmelzt, melts. Bringt hervor, brings forth. Wärme, warmth. Flamme, flame. Zeichen, sign. Auf, upon. Oberfläche, surface. Wachsen, grow. Baum, tree. Kraut, herb. Pflanze, plant. Im (for in dem,) in. Frühling, spring. Blühen, blossom. Viele, many. Art, sort. Blume, flower. Dann, then. Sieht man, we see. Das Veilchen, the violet. Andere, other.

In the following exercises, the words which are translated underneath, follow in the order as they ought to stand in the German.

### *Recapitulatory Exercises on the Nouns.*

#### THIRD LESSON.

(\*The) dogs love the society of (of the) man.

The return of the swallows announces the spring.

Horns are (the horn is) the ornament of the stag.

(The) cats catch mice and rats.

The eagle kills birds and even four-footed animals.

Greatness and immortality flatter our wishes.

Sparrows kill insects.

The whale swallows other fish.

The teacher instructs the scholar, and the scholar learns the principles from the teacher.

Praise belongs to the diligent, and blame to the idle.

(The) apes resemble (to the) men.

---

\* Dog, Hund, m. 2. Love, lieben. Society, Gesellschaft, f. 3. (Acc.) Man, Mensch, m. 3. Return, Wiederkunft, f. 2. Swallow, Schwalbe, f. 3. Announces, kündigt—an. The spring, den Frühling. Horn, Geweih, n. 1. Ornament, Zierde, f. 3.

---

\* Obs. The words in italics and within parentheses are most agreeable to the German idiom.

Stag, Hirsch, *m.* 2. Cat, Kage, *f.* 3. Catch, fangen. Mouse, \*Maus, *f.* 2. (*Acc.*) Rat, Raße, *f.* 3. Eagle, Adler, *m.* 1. Kills, tödtet. Bird, \*Vogel, *m.* 1. Even, selbst. Fourfooted, vierfüßige. Animal, Thier, *n.* 2. (*Acc.*) Greatness, Größe, *f.* 3. Immortality, Unsterblichkeit, *f.* 3. To flatter, schmeicheln. Our, unser. Wish, \*Wunsch, *m.* 2. Sparrow, Sperling, *m.* 2. Kill, tödten. Insect, Insect, *n.* 4. Whale, Walfisch, *m.* 2. Swallows, verschlingt. Other, andere. Fish, Fisch, *m.* 2. Teacher, Lehrer, *m.* 1. Instructs, unterrichtet. Scholar, Schüler, *m.* 1. Learns, lernt. Principle, \*Grundsatz, *m.* 2. From the, vom. Praise, Lob, *n.* 2. Belongs, gebührt. Diligent, Fleißige, *m.* 3. (*Acc.*) Blame, Tadel, *m.* 1. Idle, Faulen, *m.* 3. Ape, Affe, *m.* 3. Resemble, gleichen.

## FOURTH LESSON.

The quills of (*of the*) geese, ravens, and bustards, serve for (*to the*) writing, but the quills of (*the*) hens and turkeys are of no such use.

We hold the pen with our (*with the*) fingers to (*in order to*) make letters.

Letters are parts of (*the*) syllables, syllables are parts of (*the*) words, and words are the parts of (*the*) speech.

Many objects we cannot see, for instance, the soul of (*the*) man, and the thoughts of (*the*) man; God only knows the thoughts of (*the*) man.

We know the will of (*the*) men by their actions.

The state institutes schools for the benefit of the citizens, and their children,

Quill, Federkiel, *m.* 2. Goose, \*Gans, *f.* 2. Raven, Rabe, *m.* 3. Bustard, Krappe, *f.* 3. Serve, dienen. For (*the*) zum, or zu dem. Writing, Schreiben. But, aber. Hen, Henne, *f.* 3. Turkey, \*Truthahn, *n.* 5. Are of no such use, taugen nicht dazu. We hold, wir halten. Pen, Feder, *f.* 3. With, mit. Finger, Finger, *m.* 1. Letter, Buchstabe, *m.* 3. To make, um zu machen. Are, sind. Part, Theil, *m.* or *n.* 2. Syllable, Sylbe, *f.* 3. Word, \*Wort, *n.* 5. Speech, Rede, *f.* 3. Many, viele. Object, \*Gegenstand, *m.* 2. We cannot see, können wir nicht sehen. For instance, zum Beispiel. The soul, Seele, *f.* 3. The thought, Gedanke, *m.* 3. God, Gott, *m.* 5. Only knows, nur kennt. We know, wir erkennen. Will, Wille, *m.* 3. By, aus. Actions, Handlung, *f.* 3. State, Staat, *m.* 4. Institutes, errichtet. School, Schule, *f.* 3. For the benefit, zum Nutzen. Citizen, Bürger, *m.* 1. Child, Kind, *n.* 5.

## EXAMINATION ON THE ARTICLES AND NOUNS.

*1st. On the Indefinite Article.*

What is *a* before a feminine noun? *to a* before a masculine noun? *of a* before a feminine noun? Is *to a* the same? What cases are the same in the neuter gender as in the masculine? Does *a*, in the accusative, vary for the genders? If so, what is the difference?

*2nd. On the Definite Article.*

What is *the* before a neuter noun in the nominative? *to the* before a feminine? Is *of the* the same as *to the*? In what cases does the neuter differ from the masculine? Do the cases of the plural vary for the gender? Are all the cases of the plural like the feminine? If not, in what case only do they differ?

**Examination on the Nouns.**

## ON THE FIRST DECLENSION.

What are the general endings of nouns of the first declension? Are there any exceptions? What are the endings of the genitive singular and dative plural? Do the other cases change their terminations? What is the genitive singular and plural of *Äbler*? What is the dative singular and plural of *Beutel*? Do any nouns change their vowels in the plural? If so, what are the vowels that do change? Do feminine nouns ever change their terminations in the singular? Of what gender are nouns of this declension? Are there no exceptions? If so, what are they? Do all infinitives employed as nouns belong to this declension?

## ON THE SECOND DECLENSION.

What is the ending of the genitive singular? What cases end in *e* of this declension? Does any case end in *en*? If so, which is it? Do any nouns of this declension change the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, in the plural?

## ON THE THIRD DECLENSION.

What cases of this declension end in *en*? Do most masculines in *e* belong to this declension? Do feminine nouns in *e*, *el*, *er*, belong to this, or to the first declension? To what declension do *Mutter*, and *Tochter*, belong? Do nouns ending in *e*, *el*, *er*, take *en*, or *n*, in all the cases except the nominative?

Do any nouns of this declension take *enſ*, or *nſ* instead of *en* in the genitive singular? If so, what are they? But if the nominative end in *n*, how is the genitive formed?

## ON THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

How are the genitive and dative singular formed? Do all the cases plural generally take *en*? What nouns are those, which do not alter in the dative singular, and take *ſ* in the genitive, and *n* in all the cases plural?

## ON THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

Are the genitive and dative singular of this declension like those of the fourth? What cases plural of this declension end in *er*? What does the dative plural take? Do all nouns in this declension having *a*, *o*, or *u*, in them, change those letters into *ä*, *ö*, *ü* in the plural? Of what gender are nouns of this declension? Are there any exceptions?

## Adjectives.

## (Beiwörter oder Eigenschaftswörter.)

1. Adjectives are sometimes used adverbially, and are then indeclinable, as :

Der Mann iſt gut,  
Die Frau iſt gut,  
Daſ Kind iſt gut,  
Die Männer ſind gut,  
Der Mann ſchreibt gut,

The man is good.  
The woman is good.  
The child is good.  
The men are good.  
The man writes well.

2. They are declinable in three different forms, viz. 1stly without any article, 2ndly with the article *ein*, and 3rdly with the article *der*.

## FIRST FORM.

If no article or pronoun precede the adjective, its endings are like those of the article *der*, *die*, *das* ; as,

SINGULAR.			PLURAL
Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.	for the three Genders.
N. guter,	gute,	gutes,	gute, good.
G. guten or gutes,	guter,	gutes, or guten	guter, of good.
D. gutem,	guter,	gutem,	guten, to good.
A. guten,	gute,	gutes,	gute, good.

Guter, without an article, is thus declined :

<i>Sing. }</i>	MASCULINE.	<i>{ Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> guter Wein, good wine.	<i>N.</i> gute Weine, good wines.	
<i>G.</i> gutes or guten Weines, of good wine.	<i>G.</i> guter Weine, of good wines.	
<i>D.</i> gutem Weine, to good wine.	<i>D.</i> guten Weinen, to good wines.	
<i>A.</i> guten Wein, good wine.	<i>A.</i> gute Weine, good wines.	

<i>Sing.</i> }	FEMININE.	{ <i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> schöne Frucht, fine fruit.	<i>N.</i> schöne Früchte, fine fruits.	
<i>G.</i> schöner Frucht, of ....	<i>G.</i> schöner Früchte, of ....	
<i>D.</i> schöner Frucht, to ....	<i>D.</i> schönen Früchten, to ..	
<i>A.</i> schöner Frucht, fine ..	<i>A.</i> schöne Früchte, fine fruits.	

Obs. An adjective with a collective noun, can only be declined in the singular, as :

## FEMININE.

- N. gute Milch, good milk, or some good milk.  
 G. guter Milch, of good milk, or of some good milk.  
 D. guter Milch, to good milk, or to some good milk.  
 A. gute Milch, good milk, or some good milk.

## NEUTER.

- N.* weißes Brot, or Brod, white bread.  
*G.* \*weißes or weißen Brotes, of white bread.  
*D.* weißem Brote, to white bread.  
*A.* weißes Brot, white bread.

So, for exercise, decline,

Rother Wein, (*n.* 2 dec.) red wine; dünnes Bier, (*n.* 2 dec.) small beer; schwarze Tinte, or Dinte, (*f.* 3 dec.) black ink; schönes Wetter (*n.* 1 dec.) fine weather; wahre Geschichte, (*f.* 3) true history.

## SECOND FORM.

Adjectives with the indefinite article *ein*, or the pronouns *mein*, *my*; *dein*, *thy*, *sein*, *his*, &c. are thus declined :

## SINGULAR.

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
† <i>N.</i> ein guter,	eine gute,	ein gutes.
<i>G.</i> eines guten,	einer guten,	eines guten.
<i>D.</i> einem guten,	einer guten,	einem guten.
<i>A.</i> einen guten,	eine gute,	ein gutes.

Ein guter, with a masculine noun is thus declined ;

## SINGULAR.

- N.* ein guter Vater, a good father.  
*G.* eines guten Vaters, of a good father.  
*D.* einem guten Vater, to a good father.  
*A.* einen guten Vater, a good father.

\* *Obs. I.* In the masculine and neuter, the genitive takes either *es* or *en*, depending, however, on the harmony of the sentence ; in some cases, one mode of expression is as good as the other ; thus, we may say, *stehendes*, or *stehenden Fußes*, immediately.

2. The genitive without any article or pronoun before it, frequently corresponds to what is called the ablative absolute in Latin ; as, *unverrichteter Sache*, the business not being ended, or done (*re infecta*) ; *schmetternder Last*, with a crushing weight, (*infesto pondere*)

† The plural is formed in the same manner as without any article. *Vide* the plural of *guter Wein*, p. 42.

Ein guter, with a feminine noun is thus declined :

## SINGULAR.

- N. eine gute Mutter, a good mother.  
 G. einer guten Mutter, of a good mother.  
 D. einer guten Mutter, to a good mother.  
 A. eine gute Mutter, a good mother.

Ein guter, with a neuter noun is thus declined :

## SINGULAR.

- N. ein gutes Weib, a good woman.  
 G. eines guten Weibes, of a good woman.  
 D. einem guten Weibe, to a good woman.  
 A. ein gutes Weib, a good woman.

*The plural, for the three Genders, takes no article.*

- |                  |          |                      |
|------------------|----------|----------------------|
| N. gute Väter,   | Mütter,  | Weiber,              |
| good fathers.    | mothers. | women.               |
| G. guter Väter,  | Mütter,  | Weiber, of good &c.  |
| D. guten Vätern, | Müttern, | Weibern, to good &c. |
| A. gute Väter,   | Mütter,  | Weiber, good, &c.    |

So, for exercise, decline.

Ein weiser Mann, (*m.* 5 dec.) a wise man; eine schöne Frau, (*f.* 3 dec.) a handsome woman; ein kleines Haus (*n.* 5 dec.) a little or small house; ein warmer Wind, (*m.* 2 dec.) a warm wind.

## THIRD FORM.

Adjectives with the definite article *der*, are thus declined :

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

- | <i>Mas.</i>   | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neuter.</i> | <i>for the three Gend.</i> |
|---------------|-------------|----------------|----------------------------|
| N. der gute,  | die gute,   | das gute,      | die guten,                 |
| G. des guten, | der guten,  | des guten,     | der guten.                 |
| D. dem guten, | der guten,  | dem guten,     | den guten,                 |
| A. den guten, | die gute,   | das gute,      | die guten.                 |

Der gute, with a masculine noun, is thus declined :

## SINGULAR.

- N. der gute Mann, the good man.  
 G. des guten Mannes, of the good man.  
 D. dem guten Manne, to the good man.  
 A. den guten Mann, the good man.

**Der gute**, with a feminine noun, is thus declined :

## SINGULAR.

- N.* die gute Frau, the good woman.  
*G.* der guten Frau, of the good woman.  
*D.* der guten Frau, to the good woman.  
*A.* die gute Frau, the good woman.

**Der gute**, with a neuter noun, is thus declined :

## SINGULAR.

- N.* das gute Kind, the good child.  
*G.* des guten Kindes, of the good child.  
*D.* dem guten Kinde, to the good child.  
*A.* das gute Kind, the good child.

*PLURAL for the three Genders.*

- N.* die guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder.  
 The good men, women. children.  
*G.* der guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder, of the good &c.  
*D.* den guten Männern, Frauen, Kindern, to the good &c.  
*A.* die guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder, the good &c.

So, for exercise, decline,

**Der kleine Knabe**, (*m.* 3 dec.) the little boy ; **die fluge Frau**, (*f.* 3 dec.) the prudent woman ; **das kleine Mädchen**, (*n.* 1. dec.) the little girl.

---



The following Tables exhibit at one view, the Terminations as the ending of Articles.

FIRST FORM, like <i>der, die, das</i> .				
This form is used when no <i>Article</i> or <i>Pronoun</i> precedes the <i>Adjective</i> .				
Cases.	Singular.			Plural for all Genders.
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	
NOM.	er	e	eß	e
GEN.	eß, or en	er	eß, or en	er
DAT.	em	er	em	en
ACC.	en	e	eß	e

So also may be declined the *Relative, Demonstrative, and Possessive Pronouns*, when no *Article* precedes.

### SECOND FORM, like *ein guter*.

Cases.	Singular.						Plural for all Genders.	
	Masculine.		Feminine.		Neuter.			
	Article and Pronoun.	Adjective.	Article and Pronoun.	Adjective.	Article and Pronoun.	Adjective.	* 1st.	2nd.
N.	ein mein	er	eine meine	e	ein mein	eß	e	en
G.	eines meines	en	einer meiner	en	eines meines	en	er	en
D.	einem meinem	en	einer meiner	en	einem meinem	en	en	en
A.	einen meinen	en	eine meine	e	ein mein	eß	e	en

*Obs.* This form is used, when the adjective is preceded by another adjective, the indefinite article *ein*, or the possessive pronouns *mein*, *bein*, *sein*, &c.—*V. Obs. p. 48.*

\* When one adjective is used in the plural in the second form, the first terminations are employed; *vide* the plural of

nations of the three different forms of Adjectives, as well as, Nouns and Pronouns.

### THIRD FORM, like *der gute*.

Cases.	Singular.						Plural for all Genders.	
	Masculine.		Feminine.		Neuter.			
	Article and Poss. Pron.	Adj. and Rel. Poss.Pron.	Article and Poss. Pron.	Adj. and Rel. Poss.Pron.	Article and Poss. Pron.	Adj. and Rel. Poss.Pron.	Article and Poss. Pron.	Adj. as R.Poss. Pron.
N.	<i>der dieser</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>die diese</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>das dieses</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>die diese</i>	<i>en</i>
G.	<i>des dieses</i>	<i>en</i>	<i>der dieser</i>	<i>en</i>	<i>des dieses</i>	<i>en</i>	<i>der dieser</i>	<i>en</i>
D.	<i>dem diesem</i>	<i>en</i>	<i>der dieser</i>	<i>en</i>	<i>dem diesem</i>	<i>en</i>	<i>den diesen</i>	<i>en</i>
A.	<i>den diesen</i>	<i>en</i>	<i>die diese</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>das dieses</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>die diese</i>	<i>en</i>

Obs. This form is used, when preceded by the *Definite Article*, or a *Demonstrative Pronoun*, &c. *V. Obs. p. 48.*

### ENDINGS OF NOUNS.

Cases.	Singular.			Plural.			
	1 decl.	2, 4, 5	3	1	2	3, 4	5
N.	—	—	—	—	<i>e</i>	<i>en, n</i>	<i>er</i>
G.	<i>s</i>	<i>es, s</i>	<i>en, n ens, ns</i>	—	<i>e</i>	<i>en, n</i>	<i>er</i>
D.	—	<i>e</i>	<i>en, n</i>	<i>n</i>	<i>en</i>	<i>en, n</i>	<i>ern</i>
A.	—	—	<i>en, n</i>	—	<i>e</i>	<i>en, n</i>	<i>er</i>

*gute Väter, Mütter, Weiber*, p. 44 ; but when several adjectives are used, the first adjective takes the first terminations, and the others the second ; however, modern writers use the plural of the first form throughout ; as, *gute rothe alte Weine*, p. 50.

*Exercise on the Articles, Adjectives and Nouns.*

Of the fine children, schön, Kind, n. 5. To a fine child, schön, Kind, n. 5. Of happy days, glücklich, Tag, m. 2. Of good men, gut, \*Mann, m. 5. The liquid air, flüßig, \*Luft, f. 2. A timid girl, furchtsam, Mädchen, n. 1. The industrious maid, fleißig, \*Magd, f. 2. An easy work, leicht, Arbeit, f. 3. Of hard labour, schwer, Arbeit, f. 3. The frugal meal, mäßig, Mahlzeit, f. 3. Lofty pines, erhaben, Fichte, f. 3. Of the hard oak, hart, Eiche, f. 3. A shady elm, schattig, Ulme, f. 3. Of hard iron, hart, Eisen, n. 1. The early lark, früh, Lerche, f. 3. An unknown land, unbekannt, \*Land, n. 5. Of the Trojan hero, trojanisch, Held, m. 3. Of civilized Europe, gesittet, Europa, n. To hot Africa, heiß, Afrika, n. To the burning Hecla, brennend, Hecla, m. Of the fair Helen, schön, Helena, f. The chaste Diana, keusch, Diana, f. The geographical miles, geographisch, Meile, f. 3. Terrible thunder, schrecklich, Donner, m. 1. The Olympic games, olympisch, Spiel, n. 2. Of distant vallies, entfernt, \*Thal, n. 5. Of fine flowers, schön, Blume, f. 3. The pious fathers, (Acc.) fromm, \*Vater, m. 1. To fresh butter, frisch, Butter, f. 3. To a red coat, roth, Kleid, n. 5. Black bread, schwarz, Brot, n. 2.

*Observations on the Declension of Adjectives.*

1. Adjectives are declined according to the second form, (viz. like ein guter) when preceded by the personal pronouns ich, I; du, thou; er, he, &c. after the possessives, mein, my; dein, thy; sein, his, &c. and the indefinites, kein, no; viel, many; wenig, few or little; mehr, more; as, ich armer Mann, I poor man; du gute Seele, thou good soul; ihr ehrlichen Leute, you honest people; kein ehrlicher Mann, no honest man; viel guter Wein, much good wine; ein wenig gutes Brot, a little good bread; mein eigenes Haus, my own house; meines eigenen Hauses, of my own house; meinem eigenen Hause, to my own house; mit ihrer gütigen Erlaubniß, with your kind permission; unser altes Haus, our old house; keine grünen Wälder, no green woods; so likewise when several adjectives follow one another; as:

Dein guter alter ehrlicher Vater, thy good honest old father.  
 Ein einziger lieber Sohn, an only dear son,

But adjectives are declined after the third form, that is like der gute, when they follow ;

Alle, all. Beide, both. Dieser, this. Derjenige, that.  
 Derselbe, the same. Jeder, every. Jener, that. Solcher, such.  
 Mancher, many a one. Welcher, what; as ;

*Singular.*

N. Dieser fromme Vater, this pious father.  
 G. Dieses frommen Vaters, of this pious father.  
 D. Diesem frommen Vater, to this pious father.  
 A. Diesen frommen Vater, this pious father.

*Plural.*

N. Diese frommen Väter, these pious fathers.  
 G. Dieser frommen Väter, of these pious fathers.  
 D. Diesen frommen Vätern, to these pious fathers.  
 A. Diese frommen Väter, these pious fathers.

*Singular.*

N. Mancher kluge Mann, many a prudent man. [man.  
 G. Manches guten Menschen Herzens, of many a good-hearted  
 D. Manchem bösen Menschen, to many a bad man.  
 A. Manchen frommen Mann, many a pious man.

So also when many adjectives come together, as :

*Singular.*

N. Dieser alte brave Mann, or Dieser brave alte Mann, this  
 brave old man.  
 G. Dieses alten braven Mannes, of this brave old man.  
 D. Diesem alten braven Manne, to this brave old man.  
 A. Diesen alten braven Mann, this brave old man.

*Plural.*

N. Jene schönen rothen Blumen, those fine red flowers.  
 G. Jener schönen rothen Blumen, of those fine red flowers, &c.

After alle, all; etliche and einige, some; manche, many; the  
 nominative and accusative plural may end in e, instead of en,  
 as :

N. or A. Alle gute Menschen, all good men.  
 N. or A. Alle übrige fremde Gäste, all the other strange guests.  
 N. or A. Einige griechische Schriftsteller, some Grecian writers.  
 N. or A. Manche wilde Vögel, many wild birds; but the other  
 cases follow the rule, as :

*Plural.*

G. Aller übrigen fremden Gäste, of all the other strange guests.  
 G. Um einiger griechischen Schriftsteller willen, for the sake of some Grecian writers.

3. When indeclinable words precede, whether numerals, adjectives, or adverbs, they have no influence upon the adjective, as :

Etwas guter Wein, some good wine. Viel frische Milch, much fresh milk. Wenig kaltes Wasser, a little cold water. Sehr gute Menschen, very good men. Fünf lange Jahre, five long years. Nach zehn langen Jahren, after ten long years.

But the adjective is declined as in the third form when preceded by zwei or drei, these two numerals being declinable in the genitive and dative. Examples :

G. Zweier langen Tage, of two long days.

G. Dreier baaren Thaler, of three dollars in cash.

D. Dreien guten Menschen, to three good men.

Obs. For the sake of euphony, *n* is used instead of *m* in the dative, when the adjective ends in *m*; as, from arm, *poor*, is formed the dative armen (*not* armem); from angenehm, *pleasant*, is formed angenehmern (*not* angenehem), &c.

4. When several adjectives come together without any article before them, the first only is declined in the first form, like der, die, das, the others in the second form; but modern authors decline each adjective in the plural, according to the first form.

MASCULINE.—*Singular.*

N. Guter rother alter Wein, good old red wine.

G. Guten or gutes rothen alten Weines, of good old red wine.

D. Gutem rothen alten Weine, to good old red wine.

A. Guten rothen alten Wein, good old red wine.

*Plural.*

N. Gute rothen alten Weine, or, according to modern writers, gute rothe alte Weine, good old red wines.

G. Guter rothen alten Weine, or, modern, guter rother alter Weine, of good old red wines.

D. Guten rothen alten Weimen, to good old red wines.

A. Gute rothen alten Weine, or gute rothe alte Weine, good old red wines.

So, for exercise, decline.

Guter weißer Hafer, good white oats.

FEMININE.—Singular.

N. Reife süße Frucht, sweet ripe fruit.

G. Reifer süßen Frucht, of sweet ripe fruit.

D. Reifer süßen Frucht, to sweet ripe fruit.

A. Reife süße Frucht, sweet ripe fruit.

Plural.

N. Reife süße Früchte, sweet ripe fruits.

G. Reifer süßen Früchte, of sweet ripe fruits.

D. Reifen süßen Früchten, to sweet ripe fruits.

A. Reife süßen Früchte, sweet ripe fruits.

NEUTER.—Singular.

N. Schönes grünes Glas, fine green glass.

G. Schönen grünen Glases, of fine green glass.

D. Schöнем grünen Glase, to fine green glass.

A. Schönes grünes Glas, fine green glass.

Plural.

N. Schöne grüne Gläser, fine green glasses.

G. Schöner grünen Gläser, of fine green glasses.

D. Schönen grünen Gläsern, to fine green glasses.

A. Schöne grünen Gläser, fine green glasses.

Obs. 1. Adjectives which admit of declension should retain their proper endings ; hence, schön Wetter, is not grammatical, but is used in conversation for schönes Wetter, *fine weather*.

2. Some adjectives never admit of declension, as : anderthalb, *one and a half* ; dritthalb, *two and a half* ; allerlei, *all sorts* ; mancherlei, *many sorts* ; and all compounds in halb and lei or len. Viel, *much* ; wenig, *little* ; mehr, *more*, are indeclinable before nouns which are considered as a whole ; as, viel Brot, *much bread* ; wenig Mühe, *little trouble or pain* ; but before plural nouns they are declinable ; as, viele Kinder, *many children* ; wenige Menschen, *few men*. Ganz, *all* ; and halb, *half*, before names of places, are frequently indeclinable, as : ganz Deutschland, *all Germany* ; halb Frankreich, *half France*.

3. When two adjectives come together, coupled by the conjunction und, it is usual in familiar discourse to drop the end-

ing of the first; as, ein roth-und weißes Gesicht, for ein rothes und weißes Gesicht, *a red and white face*; ein zufrieden-und arbeitsamer Mensch, *a contented and industrious man*.

4. Adjectives may be converted into substantives, both in the singular and plural, the nouns being understood, for which they are made to stand; as, der Weise, *the wise man*; die Weise, *the wise woman*; das Erhabene, *the sublime*; so, der Gelehrte, *the learned man*; die Schöne, *the fair woman*; der Bekannte, *the male acquaintance*; die Bekannte, *the female acquaintance*; der Verwandte, *the male relation*; die Verwandte, *the female relation*; der Höchste, *the supreme, (the supreme being)*; der Geliebte, *the beloved man*; die Geliebte, *the beloved woman*; der Allmächtige, *the Almighty*; der Bediente, *the servant man*.

5. Both active and passive participles are declined like adjectives; as, Ein liebender Vater, *a loving father*; ein geliebter Vater, *a beloved father*; eine liebende Mutter, *a loving mother*; eine geliebte Mutter, *a beloved mother*.

### Comparison of Adjectives.

The degrees of comparison are the positive, comparative, and superlative. The comparative is formed by adding *r* or *er*, and the superlative\* by adding *ste*, or *este* † to the end of the positive, as:

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Klein, little;	kleiner, less;	der, die, das kleinste, the least.
Weise, wise;	weiser, wiser;	der weiseste, the wisest
Dreist, bold;	dreister, bolder;	der dreiste, the boldest.

\* The superlative degree is seldom used without the definite article, or a pronoun, which must agree in gender, number and case, with the noun to which it refers, as:

das ist der kleinste Mann, that is the least man.  
 das ist die kleinste Frau, that is the least woman.  
 das ist das kleinste Kind, that is the least child.

† When adjectives are used adverbially, the superlative degree is formed by adding *st*, or *est* (*not ste, nor este*). Ex.

der Mann ist kleinst, the man is least.  
 die Frau ist weisest, the woman is wisest.  
 das Kind ist dreistest, the child is boldest.

So, for exercise, form :

Hohl, hollow. Rauh, rough. Blau, blue. Toll, mad.  
Schlecht, bad. Sanft, soft. Müde, weary. Lahm, lame.  
Stolz, proud. Roh, raw. Fremd, strange. Fest, firm.  
Zähm, tame. Schlank, slender.

The preceding adjectives do not change their vowels in the comparative and superlative, but most adjectives change the vowels a, o, u, into ä, ö, ü, in the comparative and superlative, as ;

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
alt, old ;	älter, older ;	der, die or das älteste, the oldest, or eldest.
lang, long ;	länger, longer ;	der längste, the longest.
kurz, short ;	kürzer, shorter ;	der kürzeste, the shortest.

So, for exercise, form :

Arm, poor. Bange, fearful. Dumm, stupid. Grob, coarse. Groß, great. Hart, hard. Kalt, cold. Klar, clear. Klug, prudent. Naß, wet. Schwach, weak. Stark, strong.

Some adjectives and adverbs form their comparisons irregularly, as :

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
balb, soon ;	eher, sooner ;	der, die, or das eheste, the soonest.
gern, willing ;	lieber, more willing ;	am liebsten, the most willing.
gut, good, or well ;	besser, better ;	der beste, the best.
hoch, high ;	höher, higher ;	der höchste, the highest.
nahe, near ;	näher, nearer ;	der nächste, the nearest.
viel, much ;	mehr, more ;	der meiste, the most.

The comparatives and superlatives of adjectives are declinable.

Declension of the comparative älter, older, with ein, and a masculine noun.



*Singular.*

- N.* Ein älterer Mann, an older man.  
*G.* Eines älteren or ältern Mannes, of an older man.  
*D.* Einem älteren or ältern Manne, to an older man.  
*A.* Einen älteren or ältern Mann, an older man.

*A feminine noun.*

- N.* Eine ältere Frau, an older woman.  
*G.* Einer älteren or ältern Frau, of an older woman.  
*D.* Einer älteren or ältern Frau, to an older woman.  
*A.* Eine ältere Frau, an older woman.

*A neuter noun.*

- N.* Ein älteres Kind, an older child.  
*G.* Eines älteren or ältern Kindes, of an older child.  
*D.* Einem älteren or ältern Kinde, to an older child.  
*A.* Ein älteres Kind, an older child.

*Plural for the three Genders, without any Article.*

- N.* Ältere Männer, Frauen, Kinder, older men, women, children.  
*G.* Älterer Männer, Frauen, Kinder, of older men, &c.  
*D.* Ältern Männern, Frauen, Kindern, to older men, &c.  
*A.* Ältere Männer, Frauen, Kinder, older men, &c.

Declension of the superlative *älteste*, with *der*, and a masculine noun.

## SINGULAR.

- N.* Der älteste Mann, the oldest man.  
*G.* Des ältesten Mannes, of the oldest man.  
*D.* Dem ältesten Manne, to the oldest man.  
*A.* Den ältesten Mann, the oldest man.

*A feminine noun.*

- N.* Die älteste Frau, the oldest woman.  
*G.* Der ältesten Frau, of the oldest woman.  
*D.* Der ältesten Frau, to the oldest woman.  
*A.* Die älteste Frau, the oldest woman.

## A neuter noun.

N. Das älteste Kind, the oldest child.

G. Des ältesten Kindes, of the oldest child.

D. Dem ältesten Kinde, to the oldest child.

A. Das älteste Kind, the oldest child.

## PLURAL for the three Genders.

N. Die ältesten Männer, Frauen, Kinder, the oldest men, women, children.

G. Der ältesten Männer, Frauen, Kinder, of the, &c.

D. Den ältesten Männern, Frauen, Kindern, to the, &c.

A. Die ältesten Männer, Frauen, Kinder, the, &c.

So, for exercise, decline,

Ein besserer Mann, a better man. Eine schönere Frau, a more beautiful woman. Ein jüngeres Kind, a younger child. Der beste Mann, the best man. Die schönste Frau, the handsomest woman. Das jüngste Kind, the youngest child. Ein heiterer Tag, a clearer day. Eine freiere Luft, a freer air. Ein klügeres Weib, a more prudent woman. Der heiterste Tag, the clearest day. Die freieste Luft, the freest air. Das klügste Weib, the most discreet woman. Das sicherste Mittel, the safest means. Der größte Held, the greatest hero. Ein höheres Haus, a higher house. Die breiteste Straße, the broadest road.

*Observations on the Comparison of Adjectives.*

1. The *e* is often dropped in the comparative of adjectives, ending in *el*, *en* and *er*, as :

*Positive.*

edel, noble ;

sicher, safe ;

vollkommen, perfect.

*Comparative.*

edler, nobler, (for edeler.)

sicherer, safer, (for sicherer.)

vollkommener, more perfect, (for vollkommener.)

2. Most primitives change their vowels in the comparative and superlative ; as, *stark*, *strong* ; *stärker*, *stronger* ; *der stärkste*, *the strongest* ; *kurz*, *short* ; *kürzer*, *kürzeste* ; but the following are exceptions, as well as some others previously noticed : *falsch*, *false* ; *gerade*, *straight* ; *hold*, *affectionate* ; *lose*, *loose* ; *lass*, *lazy* ; *matt*, *faint* ; *nackt*, *naked* ; *rund*, *round* ;

*stumpf, dull; platt, flat; schlaff, slack. Derivatives never change their vowels; as, lasterhaft, vicious; lasterhafter, more vicious; der lasterhafteste, most vicious.*

*Recapitulatory Exercises on the Adjectives.*

FIRST LESSON.

Die Natur zeigt uns schönere Gegenstände als die Kunst. Die bergigen Gegenden sind angenehmer als die ebenen. Kleine Fürsten sind glücklicher als große Könige. Die Wolle der sächsischen Schaafe ist feiner als die Wolle der englischen Schaafe. Die Mandeln haben einen feinern Geschmack als die Nüsse. Die unüberwindliche Flotte der Spanier hielt einen außerordentlichen Sturm aus. Der reichste Mensch ist nicht immer der glücklichste, und der ärmste ist nicht immer der unglücklichste; sondern der tugendhafteste ist der glücklichste unter den Menschen. Die Tugend ist das höchste Gut des Menschen, der größte Mensch aber, hat nicht immer dieses höchste Gut, und er ist daher nicht immer unsrer Achtung der würdigste. Die Figur des Kreises ist die vollkommenste unter den geometrischen Figuren.

Natur, nature. Zeigt, exhibits. Schön, fine. Gegenstand, object. Als, than. Kunst, art. Bergig, mountainous. Gegen, countries. Angenehm, pleasant. Eben, plain. Klein, little. Fürst, prince. Glücklich, happy. Groß, great. König, the king. Wolle, wool. Sächsische, Saxon. Schaafe, sheep. Fein, fine. Mandel, almond. Haben, have. Geschmack, taste, or flavor. Aus, out. Unüberwindlich, invincible. Flotte, fleet. Spanier, Spaniard. Hielt aus, endured. Außerordentlich, extraordinary. Sturm, storm. Reich, rich. Mensch, man. Nicht immer, not always. unglücklich, unhappy. Sondern, but. Tugendhaft, virtuous. Glücklich, happy. Arm, poor. Hoch, high. höchste, supreme. Gut, good. Aber, but. Hat nicht immer, has not always. Dieses, this. Daher, therefore. Würdig, worthy. Unser, of our. die Achtung, esteem. Kreis, circle. Vollkommen, complete. Unter, among, of. Geometrisch, geometrical.

SECOND LESSON.

Die Jahre der Jugend sind die angenehmsten und zugleich die kostbarsten. Dies ist die Bemerkung der weisesten Menschen, daher muß der Knabe und der Jüngling diese Jahre aufs beste benutzen, er muß seinen möglichsten Fleiß

anwenden, um sich die wichtigsten Kenntnisse zu erwerben, seinen Sitten die möglichste Politur zu geben, und sein Herz durch die besten Maximen zu bilden. Die feinste List des Bösewichts, ist doch nicht der Geradheit des einfältigsten Bauern vorzuziehen. Der schönste Tag des Winters ist nicht zu vergleichen mit einem schönen Tage des Frühlings. Derjenige Staat ist der glücklichste, den ein weiser und gerechter Monarch regiert. In einem solchen Staate gelten die gerechtesten Gesetze. Die erhabenste Weisheit des berühmtesten Heiden, reicht doch nicht an die göttliche Weisheit Jesu.

Jahr, year. Jugend, youth. Angenehm, pleasant. Zugleich, at the same time. Kostbar, precious. Dies, this. Bemerkung, remark. Weise, wise. Daher, therefore. Knabe, boy. Jüngling, youth. Muß, must. Auf's beste benutzen, employ in the best manner. Anwenden, use. Möglichste, utmost. Fleiß, assiduity. Um sich zu erwerben, in order to acquire. Wichtig, important. Kenntnisse, knowledge. Zu geben, to give. Möglichste Politur, greatest polish possible. Seinen, his. Sitten, manners. Zu bilden, to improve. Sein, his. Herz, heart. Durch, by. Maxime, maxim. Fein, subtle. List, cunning. Bösewicht, villain. Ist doch nicht vorzuziehen, is yet not to be preferred. Geradheit, rectitude. Einfältig, simple. Bauer, peasant. Tag, day. Winter, winter. Frühlings, spring. Ist nicht zu vergleichen, is not to be compared. Mit, to. Derjenige, that. Staat, state. Gerecht, just, upright. Monarch, monarch. Regiert, governs. Ein solcher, such. Gesetz, law. Gelten, are valid. Erhaben, exalted. Weisheit, wisdom. Berühmt, celebrated. Heide, heathen. Reicht doch nicht an, does not come up to. Göttlich, divine.

## THIRD LESSON.

(The) gold is the most precious of metals, and yet not to be preferred to the useful iron. (The) English tin is the best. (The) alabaster is the whitest stone. Frederic the second was a great warrior. A polite man has not always the worth, which an honest man has. The picture hangs in a (the) false light. Scipio possessed all the virtues (*all virtues*) which are necessary to a great commander. We have not all equal talents. One (*the one*) has a talent for mechanical labors, another (*the other*) for (*the*) poetry and the like. The earth has high mountains, deep vallies, level fields, shady woods, and

hollow caves. Mining is a dangerous, troublesome and expensive business; without which, however, human (*the human*) society in these days cannot easily subsist.

*Obs.* Make the adjectives of the same gender, number, and case as the substantives.

Gold, Gold *n.* 2. Precious, kostbar. Of, unter. Metal, Metall, *n.* 3. (*Dat.*) And yet not, und doch nicht. To be preferred, vorzuziehen. Useful, nützlich. Iron, Eisen, *n.* 1. English, englisch. Tin, Zinn, *n.* 2. Alabaster, Alabaster, *m.* 1. White, weiß. Stone, Stein, *m.* 2. Frederic, Friederich. Second, zweite. Was, war. Great, groß. Warrior, Krieger, *m.* 1. Polite, höflich. Man, Mann, *m.* 5. Has not always, hat nicht immer. Worth, Werth, *m.* 2. Which, den, or welchen. Honest, ehrlich. Picture, Gemälde, *n.* 1. Hangs, hängt. In the, im. False, falsch. Light, Licht, *n.* 5. Scipio, Scipio. Possessed, besaß. All, alle. Virtue, Tugend, *f.* 3. Which, die. Necessary, nöthig. Commander, Feldherr, *m.* 3. We have not, wir haben nicht. Equal, gleich. Talent, Talent, *n.* 2. Talent, Anlage, *f.* 3. Mechanical, mechanisch. Labor, Arbeit, *f.* 3. For the, zur. Poetry, Dichtkunst. And the like, und so weiter. Earth, Erde, *f.* 3. High, hoch. Mountain, Berg, *m.* 2. Deep, tief. Valley, Thal, *n.* 3. Even, eben. Field, Feld, *n.* 5. Shady, schattig. Wood, Wald, *n.* 5. Hollow, hohl. Cave, Höhle, *f.* 3. Mining, Grubenbau or Bergbau, *m.* 2. Dangerous, gefährlich. Troublesome, mühsam. Expensive, kostspielig. Business, Geschäft, *n.* 2. Without, ohne. Which, welches. However, doch. Human, menschlich. Society, Gesellschaft, *f.* 3. In these days, in diesen Tagen. Cannot easily subsist, nicht wohl bestehen kann.

## FOURTH LESSON.

The father is more discreet than the son. The cedar is higher than the willow. The oak yields us the hardest wood, and is said to attain (*to*) the greatest age of all trees. God is the most powerful being: therefore he can humble the most exalted man, and make the weakest into the strongest. Iceland is one of the coldest countries, and those regions are the hottest, which lie under the equator. The petitions of the poorest citizens ought to be heard. The oldest persons do not remember such a severe frost. The longer the better. This is my youngest son. That is the tamest bird. He is the proudest man. He has the strongest reasons.

Discreet, \*flug. Son, \*Sohn, *m.* 2. Cedar, \*Seber, *f.* 3. Willow, \*Weide, *f.* 3. Oak, \*Eichbaum, *m.* 2. Yields, liefert. Us, uns. Hard, \*hart. Wood, \*Holz, *n.* 5. And is said, und er soll. Great, \*hoch. Age, Alter, *n.* 1. Of, unter. All, allen. Tree, \*Baum, *m.* 2. (*Dat.*) To attain to, erreichen. Powerful, mächtig. Being, \*Beyn, *n.* Therefore he can, daher kann er. Exalted, erhaben. Man, \*Mensch, *m.* 3. Humble, erniedrigen. Weak, \*schwach. Into, zum. Strong, \*stark. To make, machen. Iceland, Island. Cold, kalt. Country, \*Land, *n.* 5. Region, \*Gegend, *f.* 3. Hot, heiß. Which, welche. Under the equator, unter dem Aequator. Lie, liegen. Petition, Bitte, *f.* 3. Poor, \*arm. Citizen, Bürger, *m.* 1. Ought to be heard, sollten gehört werden. Old, \*alt. Person, Person, *f.* 3. Do remember, erinnern sich. Such a, ein solcher. Severe, \*stark. Frost, Frost, *m.* 2. The, je. Long, \*lang. The, je. This, dieß. My, mein. Young, \*jung. That, daß. Tame, zahm. Bird, \*Vogel, *m.* 1. Proud, stolz. Strong, \*stark. Reason, \*Grund, *m.* 2.

## NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

The numbers are divided into *cardinal, ordinal, proportional, distributive, and collective.*

## 1. The cardinal numbers are as follows :

(Null or Zero, nothing.)

Ein or eins, one.

Zwei or zwey, two.

Drei or drey, three.

Vier, four.

Fünf, five.

Sechs, six.

Sieben, seven.

Acht, eight.

Neun, nine.

Zehen, or zehn, ten.

Elf, or Elf, eleven.

Zwölf, twelve.

Dreizehn, thirteen.

Vierzehn, fourteen.

Fünfzehn, fifteen.

Sechzehn, sixteen.

Siebzehn, seventeen.

Achtzehn, eighteen.

Neunzehn, nineteen.

Zwanzig, twenty.

Ein und Zwanzig, one and twenty, or twenty-one.

Zwei und zwanzig, two and twenty, or twenty-two.

Drei und zwanzig, twenty three, &c.

Dreißig, thirty.

Ein und dreißig, one and thirty, or thirty-one.

Zwei und dreißig, thirty two, &c.

Vierzig, forty, &c.

Fünfzig, fifty, &c.

Sechzig, sixty, &c.

Siebenzig, seventy, &c.

Achtzig, eighty, &c.

Neunzig, ninety, &c.

Hundert a hundred.	Zehn tausend, ten thousand.
Hundert und ein or eins, a hundred and one.	Eine Million, one million.
Hundert und zwei, a hundred and two, &c.	Zwei Millionen, two millions.
Zwei hundert, two hundred, &c.	Drei Millionen, &c.
Tausend, a thousand.	Ein tausend acht hundert und zwei und dreißig, 1832.

Some of the cardinal numbers are declinable. The numeral *ein*, when put before a substantive, may be declined;

1st. Like the article *ein*, as: *N. ein, eine, ein, one; G. eines, einer, eines, of one, &c.*

Or 2nd. like an adjective without any article preceding, as:

*N. einer, eine, eines, one.*

*G. eines, einer, eines, of one, &c.*

Or, 3rd. Like an adjective preceded by the definite article, as;

*N. der eine, die eine, das eine, the one.*

*G. des einen, der einen, des einen, of the one, &c.*

\* *Zwei* and *Drei*, make *zweiter* and *dreier*, in the genitive; *zweiten*, and *dreien* in the dative: most of the other numerals are declined in the dative only, with *en*, as: *vieren, fñnfen, &c.*

#### *Observations on the Cardinal Numbers.*

1. *Ein* is added to the noun; as, *ein Mann, one man; eine Frau, one woman*; and in order to distinguish it from the article, it is pronounced with a stronger accent. *Einer* is used when the noun is understood; as, *hier ist einer, here is one*; (that is, one man, or one thing understood); *hier ist eine, here is one*, (that is, one woman) &c. *Einmal eins ist eins, once one is one. Haben sie ein Messer? have you a knife? hier ist eines, here is one*, (that is one knife.)

2. The cardinal numbers are converted into substantives, by the addition of *er, in*; as, *ein Fñnfziger, a man of fifty; eine Dreißigsterin, a woman of thirty.*

\* The cardinal number *zwei, two*, admits of three genders, as, *Mas. zween Mñnner Fem. zwei, Neut. zwei, two*; but *zwei*, in modern German, is mostly used for all genders.

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

The ordinal numbers are formed by adding *te* to the cardinal, except *der erste*, *the first*; *der dritte*, *the third*; but after the number nineteen, *ste* is added, as:

Der, die, or das erste, the first.	Der zwei und zwanzigste, the two and twentieth, or the twenty-second.
Der zweite, the second.	Der drei und zwanzigste, the three and twentieth, the twenty-third, &c.
Der dritte, the third.	Der dreißigste, the thirtieth.
Der vierte, the fourth.	Der ein und dreißigste, the one and thirtieth, or the thirty-first, &c.
Der fünfte, the fifth.	Der vierzigste, the fortieth.
Der sechste, the sixth.	Der fünfzigste, the fiftieth.
Der siebente, the seventh.	Der sechzigste, the sixtieth.
Der achte, the eighth.	Der siebenzigste, or siebzigste, the seventieth.
Der neunte, the ninth.	Der achtzigste, the eightieth.
Der zehnte, the tenth.	Der neunzigste, the ninetieth.
Der elfte or eilfte, the eleventh.	Der hundertste, the hundredth.
Der zwölfte, the twelfth.	Der zwei hundertste, the two hundredth.
Der dreizehnte, the thirteenth.	Der drei hundertste, the three, &c.
Der vierzehnte, the fourteenth.	Der tausendste, the thousandth.
Der fünfzehnte, the fifteenth.	Der zwei tausendste, the two thousandth.
Der sechzehnte, the sixteenth.	Der drei tausendste, the three, &c.
Der siebenzehnte, the seventeenth.	
Der achzehnte, the eighteenth.	
Der neunzehnte, the nineteenth.	
Der zwanzigste, the twentieth.	
Der ein und zwanzigste, the one and twentieth, or the twenty-first.	

*Obs.* In compound numbers, the last only assumes the form of an ordinal; as, *der tausend acht hundert und ein und dreißigste*, the one thousand eight hundred and thirty first.

These numerals may be declined in all the three forms of adjectives;



1st. Without the article; as:

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	
<i>N. Zweiter,</i>	<i>zweite,</i>	<i>zweites,</i>	second. [ &c.
<i>G. Zweites or zweiten,</i>	<i>zweiter,</i>	<i>zweiter, zweites,</i>	of a second,

2. With the indefinite article, as:

<i>N. Ein zweiter,</i>	<i>eine zweite,</i>	<i>ein zweites,</i>	a second.
<i>G. eines zweiten,</i>	<i>einer zweiten,</i>	<i>eines zweiten,</i>	of a second, &c.

3rd. With the definite article, as:

<i>N. der zweite,</i>	<i>die zweite,</i>	<i>das zweite,</i>	the second.
<i>G. des zweiten,</i>	<i>der zweiten,</i>	<i>des zweiten,</i>	of the second, &c.

*Obs.* *Der andere, the other,* is used as synonymous with *der zweite*, where there are only two persons or things spoken of.

The Germans always say *ein und zwanzigste, one and twentieth*; *zwei und dreißigste, two and thirtieth*; and the like; but never, as in English, *zwanzig erste, twenty-first*; *dreißig zweite, thirty-second*, &c.

#### PARTITIVE AND FRACTIONAL NUMBERS.

These numbers are formed by a composition of the ordinal numbers, with various words or letters.

1st. With *halb*, thus;

\**Anderthalb* (for *zweitehalb*,) one and a half.  
*Drittehalb*, two and a half.  
*Viertehalb*, three and a half.  
*Fünftehalb*, four and a half.  
*Sechstehalb*, five and a half.  
*Siebentehalb* or *siebtehalb*, six and a half.  
*Achtehalb*, seven and a half.  
*Neuntehalb*, eight and a half.  
*Zehntehalb*, nine and a half, &c.

\* *Obs.* This mode of compounding seldom exceeds *zwölfttehalb, eleven and a half*.

#### EXAMPLES.

Vor *anderthalb Jahren, a year and a half ago*; in *brit-*

*halb Stunden, in two hours and a half; but in speaking of the hour of the day, halb, is placed before the next number, as: halb eins, half past twelve; halb zwei, half past one, &c.*

2nd. With *tel*, or, *thell*, part, as :

Das *Drittel*, or *Dritttheil*, the third, or the third part.

Das *Viertel*, *Viertheil*, the quarter, or fourth part.

Das *Fünftel*, *Fünftheil*, the fifth, or fifth part.

Ein *Viertel*hundert, a quarter of a hundred, &c.

So, the following fractional numbers are formed from the ordinals, by adding an *l*, making the last syllable *tel*, which is only a contraction of *thell*; as, from *der dritte*, the third, is formed *ein Drittel*, a third part, or one third; from *der vierte*, is formed *ein Viertel*, a fourth part, or a quarter. In the same manner,

Ein *Fünftel*, a fifth, or one fifth.

Ein *Sechstel*,  $\frac{1}{6}$ th, or a sixth part.

Ein *Zehntel*,  $\frac{1}{10}$ th, or a tenth part.

Ein *Zwanzigstel*,  $\frac{1}{20}$ th, &c. So in the plural, as ;

*Zwei Drittel*,  $\frac{2}{3}$ rds, two thirds.

*Drei Viertel*,  $\frac{3}{4}$ ths, three fourths.

*Vier Siebentel*,  $\frac{4}{7}$ ths, &c. These are regarded as substantives, and of the neuter gender; but *thell*, when used separately, is masculine.

#### NUMERALS OF PROPORTION.

Numerals of proportion are formed by adding *fach* or *fältig*, fold, to the cardinal numbers, as :

*Einfach* or *einfältig*, single.

*Zweifach* or *zweifältig*, double, or twofold.

*Dreifach* or *dreifältig*, treble, or threefold.

*Vierfach* or *vierfältig*, fourfold, &c.

*Hundertfach*, centuple, or a hundredfold.

*Tausendfach*, a thousandfold, &c.

\* *Obs.* The above numeral adjectives, in *fach* or *fältig* may be regularly declined.

Distributive numbers or Numeral Adverbs, are thus formed ;

Erstlich, or erstens, firstly, or in the first place.

Zweitens, or zum andern, secondly.

Drittens, or zum dritten, thirdly.

Viertens, or zum vierten, fourthly, &c.

Einzeln, singly, or ein und ein, one by one.

Zwei und zwei, two and two, or two by two.

Drei und drei, three and three, &c.

Je eins, je zwei, je drei, one, two, three, at a time,  
or every one, two, or three.

To denote the same sort of thing, or a variety of things of the same kind, *erlei* is added to the cardinal numbers, as :

Einerlei, of one sort, the same sort, or the same.

Zweierlei, of two sorts, or two different kinds.

Dreierlei Bänder, three sorts of ribbons, &c.

### 3. The collective numbers are :

Die Hälfte, the half.

Ein Paar, a pair, few, or couple.

Ein Duzend, a dozen.

Ein halb Duzend, half a dozen.

Eine Mandel, a fifteen.

Ein Schoß, sixty, or three score.

Ein halb Schoß Eier, thirty eggs, &c.

The English word *time*, or *times*, is to be expressed by the termination *Mahl*, or by *mal*, if in composition with other words, as :

Ein Mahl, or einmal, once. Oftmal, often times.

Zwei Mahl, or zweimal, twice. Einandermal, another time.

Diesesmal, this time. Vielmal, many times.

Manchmal, many a time. Wie vielmal, how many times.

*Mal* is also used in multiplying ; as *zwei mal zwei sind vier*, twice two are four, (that is literally, *two times two are four*) ; *drei mal drei sind neun*, three times three are nine, &c.

*Recapitulatory Exercises on the Numerals, &c.*

## FIRST LESSON.

Ist Heinrich nicht älter als Ludwig? Ja, mein Herr, Heinrich ist am siebzehnten Januar ein tausend sieben hundert zwei und achzig geboren, und Ludwig am sieben und zwanzigsten Julius ein tausend sieben hundert fünf und achzig; folglich ist er drei Jahre sechs Monate und zehn Tage älter, als Ludwig.

Wie alt ist Ihre älteste Schwester? Sie ist völlig ein und zwanzig Jahr alt. Und die jüngste? Sie ist in ihrem sechzehnten Jahre. Wie alt kann Ihre Mutter seyn? Sie ist am neunten des vorigen Monats zwei und vierzig Jahr alt geworden. Und Ihr Vater? Er wird am ersten Februar fünf und vierzig Jahre alt seyn. Ihr Großvater soll sehr alt seyn. Ich glaube, daß er neun und siebenzig Jahr alt ist.

Heinrich, Henry. Alt, old. Ludwig, Louis. Ja, yes. Mein Herr, Sir. Ist geboren, was born. Am, on the. Folglich, consequently. Ist er, he is. Jahr, year. Wie, how. Ihr, your. Völlig, quite. Ihrem, her. Kann, may. Seyn, be. Ist geworden, was. Vorigen, last. Wird seyn, will be. Soll seyn, must be. Glaube, believe. Daß, that. Er ist, he is.

## SECOND LESSON.

Der erste Planet in der Nähe der Sonne ist der Merkur, welcher sechzehn mal kleiner als die Erde ist. Er ist auch 36,814,721 Meilen von der Sonne entfernt.

Der zweite Planet, die Venus, steht beinahe zweimal so weit von der Sonne als Merkur.

Der dritte Planet, die Erde, ist 1,377,613 mal kleiner als die Sonne, und fünf und neunzig Millionen Meilen entfernt.

Der vierte Planet, der Mars, ist beinahe sechsmal kleiner als die Erde. Von der Sonne ist er 144,907,630 Meilen entfernt.

Der fünfte, der Jupiter, ist von der Sonne, 494,499,108 Meilen entfernt. Er ist vierzehn hundert mal größer als unsere Erde.

Der sechste Planet ist der Saturn; welcher 907,089,032 Meilen von der Sonne entfernt ist. Er ist neun hundert sechs und sechzig mal größer als die Erde.

Den siebenten Planet hat Herschel entdeckt. Er ist 1,822,413,975, Meilen von der Sonne entfernt.

In der, in its. Nähe, proximity. Mercur, Mercury. Welche, which. Er ist auch, it is also. Entfernt, distant. Von, from. Beinahe, nearly, or almost. So weit, as far. Als, as. Unsere, our. Hat, has. Entdeckt, discovered.

## THIRD LESSON.

One and one make two. Ten times ten make a hundred. Six thousand six hundred and sixty-six men composed a legion with the Romans. It is said, that in order to be able to write (*the*) Chinese, the common man has occasion to know eighty thousand letters or characters, but the learned (*man*) a hundred and sixty thousand. Since the birth of Christ, a thousand eight hundred and thirty two years have elapsed. Germany was divided into ten circles. America was discovered by Christopher Columbus in the fifteenth century. (*The*) spring commences the twenty-first of March, (*the*) summer the twenty first of June, (*the*) autumn the twenty-first of September, and (*the*) winter the twenty first of December. December is the twelfth month in the year. Sunday (*the Sunday*) is the first day in the week, (*the*) Monday the second, (*the*) Tuesday the third, (*the*) Wednesday the fourth, (*the*) Thursday the fifth, (*the*) Friday the sixth, (*the*) Saturday the seventh and last. Vienna, the capital of Austria, lies in the sixteenth degree of longitude and forty-eight degree of latitude.

Make, machen. Times, mal. Men, Männer, *m.* 5. Composed with the Romans a legion, machten bei den Römern eine Legion aus. It is said, man sagt. That in order to be able to write Chinese, daß um chinesisches schreiben zu können. Common, gemein. Letter, Buchstab, *m.* 3. To know, kennen. Occasion has, nöthig habe. But, aber. Learned, gelehrt. Since, seit. Christ, Christus. Birth, Geburt, *f.* 3. Have, sind. Year, Jahr, *m.* 2. Elapsed, verfloßen. Germany, Deutschland. Was, war. Into, in. Circle, Kreis, *m.* 2. Divided, getheilt. America, Amerika. Was, wurde. By, von. Christopher Columbus, Christoph Columb. Century, Jahrhundert. Discovered, entdeckt. Spring, Frühling, *m.* 2. Commences, fängt an. March, März, *m.* 2. Summer, Sommer, *m.* 1. June, Junius, *m.* (Juni, of June.) Autumn, Herbst, *m.* 2. September, Sep-

tember, *n.* 1. Winter, Winter, *m.* 1. December, December, *m.* 1. Month, Monat, *m.* 2. In the, in, Sunday, Sonntag, *m.* 2. Week, Woche, *f.* 3. Monday, Montag, *m.* 2. Tuesday, Dienstag, *m.* 2. Wednesday, Mittwoch, *f.* 3. Thursday, Donnerstag, *m.* 2. Friday, Freitag, *m.* 2. Saturday, Sonnabend, *m.* 2. Last, letzte, Vienna, Wien. Capital, Hauptstadt, *f.* 2. Of, von, Austria, Oesterreich, Lies, liegt. Longitude, Länge, *f.* 3. Latitude, Breite, *f.* 3.

## FOURTH LESSON.

Ferdinand Magellan was the first who sailed round the world, in the year one thousand five hundred and nineteen; his ship came back again, after a voyage of three years and twenty-nine days. The polar circles are twenty-three degrees and a half (*twenty-three and a half degrees*) distant from each pole. In regard to the warmth and cold on the earth, five zones have been admitted, (*one has in regard upon the warmth, &c. admitted*) About two thousand stars have been reckoned visible to the naked eye, (*one has about two thousand visible stars with naked eyes reckoned.*) We must first learn to count, then to add, thirdly to subtract, fourthly to multiply, and fifthly to divide.

Who, der. Round, um. World, Welt, *f.* 3. (*Acc.*) Sailed, schiffte. In the, in, Year, Jahr, *n.* 2. Ship, Schiff, *n.* 2. Came back again, kam wieder zurück. After, nach. Voyage, Reise, *f.* 3. (*Dat.*) Of, von. Polar circle, Polar Kreis, *m.* 1. Degree, Grad, *m.* 2. (*Sing.*) From each, von jedem. Pole, Pol, *m.* 2. Distant, entfernt. One has, man hat. In regard to, in Rücksicht auf, *f.* 3. Warmth, Wärme, *f.* 3. Cold, Kälte, *f.* 3. On, auf. Earth, Erdboden, *m.* 1. Zone, Zone, *f.* 3. Admitted, angenommen. With, mit. Naked, bloß. Eye, Auge, *m.* 3. About, etwa, or ungefähr. Visible, sichtbar. Star, Stern, *n.* 2. Reckoned, gezählt. We must, man muß. To count, zählen. Learn, lernen. Then, dann. To add, addiren. To subtract, subtrahiren. To multiply, multiplizieren. To divide, dividiren.

## EXAMINATION ON THE ADJECTIVES.

In how many forms may adjectives be declined? When no article is used before the adjective, how is it declined? When an adjective is preceded by ein, in what genders are the cases the same as if preceded by der? What three

cases in the masculine end alike when the adjective is preceded by either *ein* or *der*? What is the termination in those three cases? How do feminine adjectives terminate in all the cases, when preceded by either of the articles? In the neuter gender, what cases differ when preceded by the articles? What is the difference in those cases? How are adjectives compared? When an adjective is used adverbially, how is the superlative formed? Are any comparisons of adjectives irregularly formed? What is the comparative of *gut*? And what is the superlative of *gut*? How are the ordinal numbers formed? Are there no exceptions? What are they?

## Pronouns.

### Fürwörter.

There are six kinds of pronouns, viz. *personal, possessive, demonstrative, interrogative, relative, and indefinite.*

#### PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

In German, as in English, there are five personal pronouns, viz. *ich, I*; *du, thou*; *er, he*; *sie, she*; *es, it*; with their plurals, *wir, we*; *ihr, you*; *sie, they*.

The personal pronouns are declined as follows:

#### FIRST PERSON.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Ich, I.	N. Wir, we.
G. Meiner, of me.	G. Unser, of us.
D. Mir, to me.	D. Uns, to us.
A. Mich, me.	A. Uns, us.

#### SECOND PERSON.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Du, thou.	N. Ihr, you.
G. Deiner, of thee.	G. Euer, of you.
D. Dir, to thee.	D. Euch, to you.
A. Dich, thee.	A. Euch, you.

## THIRD PERSON.

*Singular.*

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. Er, he.	sie, she.	es, it.
G. Seiner, of him.	ihrer, of her.	seiner, of it.
D. Ihm, to him.	ihr, to her.	ihm, to it.
A. Ihn, him.	sie, her.	es, it.

*Plural for the three Genders.*

N. Sie, they, (or Sie, you.)
G. Ihrer, of them, or theirs (or Ihrer, of you, or yours.)
D. Ihnen, to them, (or Ihnen, to you.)
A. Sie, them, (or Sie, you.)

The personal pronouns, when employed as reflectives, are declined in the following manner :

## FIRST PERSON.

*Singular.**Plural.*

N.....	N.....
G. Meiner (mein,) of myself.	G. Unser, of ourselves.
D. Mir, to myself.	D. Uns, to ourselves.
A. Mich, myself.	A. Uns, ourselves.

## SECOND PERSON.

*Singular.**Plural.*

N.....	N.....
G. Deiner (dein,) of thyself.	G. Euer, of yourselves.
D. Dir, to thyself.	D. Euch, to yourselves.
A. Dich, thyself.	A. Euch, yourselves.

## THIRD PERSON.

*Singular.*

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N.....	.....	.....
G. Seiner (sein,) of himself.	ihrer (ihr) of herself.	seiner (sein,) of itself.
D. Sich, to himself.	sich, to herself.	sich, to itself.
A. Sich, himself.	sich herself.	sich, itself.



*Plural for the three Genders.*

N.....

G. *Ihrer*, of themselves.

D. *Sich*, to themselves.

A. *Sich*, themselves.

*Obs.* These pronouns are used with reflexive verbs, to express what we do to ourselves; examples, *ich kleide mich*, I dress myself; *du liebst dich*, thou lovest thyself; *er liebt sich*, he loves himself, &c.

## Possessive Pronouns.

Possessive pronouns are either conjunctive or relative. The conjunctive possessive pronouns are as follow :

	Singular.		Plural.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	Mas.	Fem. and Neut.
Mein,		meine,	mein,	meine,	my.
Dein,		deine,	dein,	deine,	thy.
Sein,		seine,	sein,	seine,	his, its.
Ihr,		ihre,	ihr,	ihre,	her.
Unser,		unsere, or unser,	unser,	unsere,	our.
Euer,		eure, or eure,	euer,	eure,	your.
Ihr,		Ihre,	Ihr,	Ihre,	your.
Ihr,		ihre,	ihr,	ihre,	their.

*Obs.* These pronouns are declined like the article *ein* (a) in the singular, and like the adjective *gute*, (*good*), in the plural; as,

	Singular.		Plural.	
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	for the three Gend.
N. Mein,		meine,	mein,	meine, my.
G. Meines,		meiner,	meines,	meiner, of my.
D. Meinem,		meiner,	meinem,	meinen, to my.
A. Meinen,		meine,	mein,	meine, my.

These pronouns are called conjunctive, because they are joined to substantives, with which they must agree, in gender, number and case. They are declined as follow :

*Mein*, with a masculine noun, is thus declined :

	Singular.	Plural.
N. Mein Vater,	my father.	N. Meine Väter, my fathers.
G. Meines Vaters,	of my father.	G. Meiner Väter, of my fathers.

D. Meinem Vater, to my father. D. Meinen Vätern, to my fathers.

A. Meinen Vater, my father. A. Meine Väter, my fathers.

Mein, with a feminine noun is thus declined :

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

N. Meine Mutter, my mother.

N. Meine Mütter, my mothers.

G. Meiner Mutter, of my mother.

G. Meiner Mütter, of my mothers.

D. Meiner Mutter, to my mother.

D. Meinen Müttern, to my mothers.

A. Meine Mutter, my mother.

A. Meine Mütter, my mothers.

Mein, with a neuter noun, is thus declined :

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

N. Mein Buch, my book.

N. Meine Bücher, my books.

G. Meines Buches, of my book.

G. Meiner Bücher, of my books.

D. Meinem Buche, to my book.

D. Meinen Büchern, to my books.

A. Mein Buch, my book.

A. Meine Bücher, my books.

So, for exercise, may be declined :

Meine Tante, *f.* my aunt or cousin. Sein Vater, *m.* his father. Deine Mutter, *f.* thy mother. Seine Mutter, *f.* his mother. Ihre Mutter, *f.* her mother. Ihre Mutter, *f.* your mother. Ihr Vater, *m.* their father. Ihr Kind, *n.* her child. Ihr Kind, *n.* your child. Sein Kind, *n.* his child. Ihr Vetter, their male cousin. Ihre Cousine, *f.* their female cousin. Euer Verwandter, *m.* your male relation. Eure Verwandtin, *f.* your female relation. Unser Bruder, *m.* our brother. Mein Vetter, *m.* my cousin. Unsere Schwester, *f.* our sister. Ihre Nichte, *f.* their niece. Ihr Neffe, *m.* their nephew. Sein Nachbar, *m.* his neighbour. Seine Nachbarin, *f.* his female neighbour. Ihr Nachbar, *m.* her neighbour. Ihre Nachbarin, *f.* her neighbour. Unser Vaterland, *n.* our country. Euer Buch, *n.* your book. Ihr Herz, *n.* your heart. Ihr Glück, *n.* their fortune.

---

†Obs. The pronouns, sein, ihr, and euer, agree in gender, respectively, with the possessor, but the termination must agree in gender, number, and case, with the thing possessed.

**Relative Possessive Pronouns.**

They are called relative possessive pronouns, because they stand for some noun, which precedes them, expressed or understood, and, with which they must agree in gender, number, and case. They are declined like *der gute*, in the following manner :

	<i>Singular.</i>		
	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N.</i>	Der meinige,	die meinige,	daß meinige, mine.
<i>G.</i>	Deß meinigen,	der meinigen,	deß meinigen, of mine.
<i>D.</i>	Dem meinigen,	der meinigen,	dem meinigen, to mine.
<i>A.</i>	Den meinigen,	die meinige,	daß meinige, mine.

*Plural for the three Genders.*

<i>N.</i>	Die meinigen, mine.
<i>G.</i>	Der meinigen, of mine.
<i>D.</i>	Den meinigen, to mine.
<i>A.</i>	Die meinigen, mine.

So, for exercise, decline the following :

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Der deinige,	die deinige,	das deinige,	die deinigen, thine.
Der seinige,	die seinige,	das seinige,	die seinigen, his, its.
Der ihrige,	die ihrige,	das ihrige,	die ihrigen, hers.
Der unsrige,	die unsrige,	das unsrige,	die unsrigen, ours.
Der eurige,	die eurige,	das eurige,	die eurigen, yours.
Der ihrige,	die ihrige,	das ihrige,	die ihrigen, theirs.
Der Ihrige,	die Ihrige,	das Ihrige,	die Ihrigen, yours.

The substantive *Hut*, *hat*, with the conjunctive possessive pronoun before, and the relative possessive pronoun, *der meinige*, after, is thus declined :

<i>N.</i>	Sein Hut und der meinige, his hat and mine.
<i>G.</i>	Seines Hutes und deß meinigen, of his hat and mine.
<i>D.</i>	Seinem Hute und dem meinigen, to his hat and mine.
<i>A.</i>	Seinen Hut und den meinigen, his hat and mine.

*Plural.*

<i>N.</i>	Seine Hüte und die meinigen, his hats and mine.
<i>G.</i>	Seiner Hüte und der meinigen, of his hats and mine.
<i>D.</i>	Seinen Hüten und den meinigen, to his hats and mine.
<i>A.</i>	Seine Hüte und die meinigen, his hats and mine.

So, for exercise, decline.

Mein Freund und der seinige, my friend and his.  
 Seine Freundin und die meinige, his *female* friend and mine.  
 Ihr Freund und der \*Ihrige, her friend and yours.  
 Ihr Vater und der ihrige, your father and hers.  
 Ihr Bruder und der seinige, their brother and thine.  
 Mein Bruder und der eurige, my brother and yours.  
 Meine Schwester und die seinige, my sister and his.  
 Seine Schwester und die ihrige, his sister and hers.  
 Ihre Mutter und die meinige, her mother and mine.  
 Ihre Mutter und der ihrige, your mother and hers.  
 Mein Buch und das seinige, my book and his.  
 Sein Vaterland und das Ihrige, his country and yours.  
 Unser Vaterland und das ihrige, our country and theirs.  
 Ihr Vaterland und das unsrige, their country and ours.

The following relative possessive pronouns are sometimes used instead of the preceding.

Mas.	Singular.		Plural
	Fem.	Neut.	for the three Genders.
Meiner,	meine,	meines,	meine, mine.
Deiner,	deine,	deines,	deine, thine.
Seiner,	seine,	seines,	seine, his, its.
Ihrer,	ihre,	ihres,	ihre, hers.
Unser,	unsere,	unseres,	unsere, ours.
Eurer,	eure,	eures,	eure, yours.
Ihrer,	ihre,	ihres,	ihre, theirs.
Ihrer,	Ihre,	Ihres,	Ihre, yours.

or,

Der meine, die meine, das meine, die meine, mine.  
 Der deine, &c. They correspond to the French pronouns,  
*le mien, le tien, &c.*

The pronoun *meiner*, like *der meine*, and *der meinige*, is used without a noun, when the same is understood ; as, *das ist mein Hut*, that is my hat ; *no*, it is mine, *nein*, es ist meiner, or *der meine*, or *der meinige*.

The pronouns, *meiner*, *mine* ; *deiner*, *thine* ; &c. are declined like *guter*, *gute*, *gutes* ; as,

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural</i>
	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>for the three Genders.</i>
<i>N. Meiner,</i>	<i>meine,</i>	<i>meines,</i>	<i>meine, mine.</i>
<i>G. Meines,</i>	<i>meiner,</i>	<i>meines,</i>	<i>meiner, of mine.</i>
<i>D. Meinem,</i>	<i>meiner,</i>	<i>meinem</i>	<i>meinen, to mine.</i>
<i>A. Meinen,</i>	<i>meine,</i>	<i>meines,</i>	<i>meine, mine.</i>

- So decline, *deiner*, thine ; *seiner*, his, its, &c.

*Obs. 1.* Near relations, intimate friends, and confidential servants, are usually addressed in the second person singular, *du*, *dein*, *deiner*.

*Obs. 2.* The third person plural is used, in addressing superiors, or equals in respectable society ; For the sake of distinction *Sie*, *you*, is written and printed with a capital in all its cases, as ; *Nom. Sie*, you, *Gen. Ihrer*, of you ; *Dat. Ihnen*, to you ; *Acc. Sie*, you. The same remark applies to the possessive pronouns, as ; *Ihr*, *Ihre*, *Ihr*, *your*, *Ihrer*, *Ihre*, *Ihres*, or *der Ihrige*, *die Ihrige*, *das Ihrige*, *yours*. *Ex. Sind Sie Ihr eigener Herr ?* are you your own master ?

*Obs. 3.* Servants and those who are looked upon as inferiors are addressed in the third person singular, *er* or *sie* ; as, *Peter*, bring *er* *mir Wasser*, *Peter*, bring me some water ; *Maria hat sie mein Feuer angezündet ?* *Mary*, have you lighted my fire ?

## Demonstrative Pronouns.

These pronouns are used in pointing out the persons, or things spoken of. They are declined in the following manner ; like *guter*, or the article *der*.

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	
<i>N. Dieser,</i>	<i>diese,</i>	<i>dieses, or dieß, this.</i>	<i>diese, these.</i>
<i>G. Dieses,</i>	<i>dieser,</i>	<i>dieses, of this.</i>	<i>dieser, of these.</i>
<i>D. Diesem,</i>	<i>dieser,</i>	<i>diesem, to this.</i>	<i>diesen, to these.</i>
<i>A. Diesen,</i>	<i>diese,</i>	<i>dieses, this.</i>	<i>diese, these.</i>

So, for exercise decline,

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>
<i>Jener,</i>	<i>jene,</i>	<i>jenes, that ;</i>	<i>jene, those.</i>
<i>Selbiger,</i>	<i>selbige,</i>	<i>selbiges,</i>	<i>selbige, the same.</i>
<i>Solcher,</i>	<i>solche,</i>	<i>solches,</i>	<i>solche, such.</i>

*Dieser*, with a masculine noun, is thus declined :

*Sing.*

*N.* Dieser Knabe, this boy.

*G.* Dieses Knaben, of this boy.

*D.* Diesem Knaben, to this boy.

*A.* Diesen Knaben, this boy.

*Plur.*

*N.* Diese Knaben, these boys.

*G.* Dieser Knaben, of these boys.

*D.* Diesen Knaben, to these boys.

*A.* Diese Knaben, these boys.

*Dieser*, with a feminine noun, is thus declined :

*Sing.*

*N.* Diese Magd, this (maid) servant.

*G.* Dieser Magd, of this servant.

*D.* Dieser Magd, to this servant.

*A.* Diese Magd, this servant.

*Plur.*

*N.* Diese Mägde, these servants.

*G.* Dieser Mägde, of these servants.

*D.* Diesen Mägden, to these servants. [vants.

*A.* Diese Mägde, these servants.

*Dieser*, with a neuter noun, is thus declined :

*Sing.*

*N.* Dieses Kind, this child.

*G.* Dieses Kindes, of this child.

*D.* Diesem Kinde, to this child.

*A.* Dieses Kind, this child.

*Plur.*

*N.* Diese Kinder, these children.

*G.* Dieser Kinder, of these children.

*D.* Diesen Kindern, to these children.

*A.* Diese Kinder, these children.

So, for exercise, decline :

Jenes Mädchen, *n.* that girl. Jener Bruder, *m.* that brother.  
Diese Frau, *f.* this woman or wife. Solche Person, *f.* such a person.  
Jenes Schiff, *n.* that ship. Dieses Thor, *n.* this gate.  
Jene Frucht, *f.* that fruit. Solches Wetter, *n.* such weather.

The demonstrative pronoun *der*, *that*, is thus declined, like the article *der*, *the*, except in the genitive singular.

*Singular.*

*Mas.*

*N.* Der,

*G.* Des, or dessen,

*D.* Dem,

*A.* Den,

*Fem.*

*N.* Die,

*G.* der or deren.

*D.* der,

*A.* die,

*Neuter.*

*N.* Das, that.

*G.* des, or dessen, of that

*D.* dem, to that.

*A.* das, that.

*Plural for the three Genders.*

N. Die, those, these, they.

G. Derer, der, of those, &amp;c.

D. Denen, den, to those, &amp;c.

A. Die, those, &amp;c.

*Obs.* These stand for *dieser*, &c. and may also be Englished by *this*, *he*, *she*, *it*, and their changes for the cases.

The pronoun *derjenige*, *he that*, is thus declined, like *der meinige*.

*Singular.**Mas.**Fem.**Neuter.*N. *Derjenige*,\* *diejenige*, *daßjenige*, he, she, it or that.G. *Desjenigen*, *derjenigen*, *beßjenigen*, of him, her, it or that.D. *Demjenigen*, *derjenigen*, *demjenigen*, to him, her, it or that.A. *Denjenigen*, *diejenige*, *daßjenige*, him, her, it or that.*Plural for the three Genders.*N. *Diejenigen*, they, or those.G. *Derjenigen*, of them, or of those.D. *Denjenigen*, to them, or to those.A. *Diejenigen*, them, or those.

So for exercise, decline :

*Mas.**Fem.**Neut.**Plural.*

*Derfelbe*, *diefelbe*, *daffelbe*, *diefelben*, the same,  
or he, she, it, those.

*Derfelbige*, *diefelbige*, *daffelbige*, *diefelbigen*, the &c.

\**Obs.* 1. *Derjenige* is mostly used as a relative like the French *celui*, *that*; as, *die Kutfche des Königs, und diejenige* (or *die*) *der Königin*, *le carrosse du roi et celui de la reine*, the coach of the king, and *that* of the queen. *Der* and *derjenige* are sometimes used as relatives. *Derfelbe*, &c. may be used with nouns: ex. *Derfelbe Mann*, *m.* the same man. *Diefelbe Tugend*, *f.* the same virtue. *Daffelbe Buch*, *n.* the same book.

*Obs.* 2. In order to give strength to an assertion the Germans add *felbst*, *self* or *same*, *felbften*, or *felber*, to a personal pronoun, or a noun; as,

**Relative Pronouns.**

Relative pronouns relate to some word or phrase going before, which word or phrase is called the antecedent.

The relative *der* is declined like the demonstrative *der* [v. p. 75.]; as,

*Singular.*

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N. Der,</i>	<i>die,</i>	<i>daß, who, which, or that.</i>
<i>G. Dessen, deß,</i>	<i>deren, der,</i>	<i>dessen, deß, whose, of whom, or of which.</i>
<i>D. Dem,</i>	<i>der,</i>	<i>dem, to whom, or to which.</i>
<i>A. Den,</i>	<i>die,</i>	<i>daß, whom or which.</i>

*Plural for the three Genders.*

<i>N. Die, who, which, or that.</i>
<i>G. Deren, der, whose, of whom, or of which.</i>
<i>D. Denen, den, to whom, or to which.</i>
<i>A. Die, whom, or which.</i>

*Welcher, who or which,* is thus declined ; like *guter*.

*Singular.*

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
<i>N. Welcher,</i>	<i>welche,</i>	<i>welches, who, which, or that.</i>
<i>G. Welches,</i>	<i>welcher,</i>	<i>welches, of whom, or of which.</i>
<i>D. Welchem,</i>	<i>welcher,</i>	<i>welchem, to whom, or to which.</i>
<i>A. Welchen,</i>	<i>welche,</i>	<i>welches, whom, or which.</i>

*Plural for the three Genders.*

<i>N. Welche, who, which, or that.</i>
<i>G. Welcher, of whom, or of which.</i>
<i>D. Welchen, to whom, or to which.</i>
<i>A. Welche, whom, or which.</i>

*Ich selbst, or selbst, or selber* I myself.  
*Er selbst,.....* .he himself.  
*Wir selbst,.....* .we ourselves.  
*Gott selbst,.....* .God himself, &c.



Einiger,	einige,	einiges, some, or any.
Einziger,	einzige,	einziges, only.
Jeder,	jede,	jedes, every, or each.
Jedweder,	jedwede,	jedwedes, every.
Keiner von bei-	keine von bei-	keines von beiden, neither.
den,	den,	
*Einer von bei-	eine von bei-	eines von beiden, either.
den,	den,	
Einer,	eine,	eines, a person, some one, or one.

*Plural for the three Genders.*

Manche, many, many a one.

Solche, such.

Einige, some, or any, several.

Einzige, only.

Jede, every, or each.

Jedwede, every.

Keine von beiden, neither.

Beide, *both*, and alle, *all*, are thus declined in the plural number only.

*Plural.*

N. Beide, both.

N. \*Alle, all, every.

G. Beider, of both.

G. Aller, of all.

D. Beiden, to both.

D. Allen, to all.

A. Beide, both.

A. Alle, all.

\* *Obs.* Alle, when used without a noun becomes alles.

Some of these pronouns may be declined as adjectives, with ein or der.

Ein jeder, *each*, is thus declined in the singular number only.

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. Ein jeder,	eine jede,	ein jedes, each, or every one.
G. Eines jeden,	einer jeden,	eines jeden, of each.
D. Einem jeden,	einer jeden,	einem jeden, to each.
A. Einen jeden,	ein jede,	ein jedes, each.

\* Einer von beiden, *either*; and einer, *some one*, or *one*, are indeclinable in the plural.

*Der eine, the one*, is thus declined ;

*Singular.*

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
N. <i>Der eine,</i>	<i>die eine,</i>	<i>daß eine, the one.</i>
G. <i>Des einen,</i>	<i>der einen,</i>	<i>deß einen, of the one.</i>
D. <i>Dem einen,</i>	<i>der einen,</i>	<i>dem einen, to the one.</i>
A. <i>Den einen,</i>	<i>die eine,</i>	<i>daß eine, the one.</i>

*Plural for the three Genders.*

N. <i>Die einen, the ones.</i>
G. <i>Der einen, of the ones.</i>
D. <i>Den einen, to the ones.</i>
A. <i>Die einen, the ones.</i>

So decline :

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>
Ein *jedweder,	eine jedwede,	ein jedwedes, every.
Ein andrer,	eine andre,	ein andres, another.
Der andre,	die andre,	daß andre, the other.
Ein einziger,	eine einzige	ein einziges, an only one.
Der einzige,	die einzige,	daß einzige, the only one.
Ein einiger,	eine einige,	ein einiges, an only one.
Der einige,	die einige,	daß einige, the only one.
Ein jeglicher,	eine jegliche,	ein jegliches, any, every one.

The substantive pronouns, *Jemand, some, or any body ; Niemand, nobody ; Jedermann, every body, any body* , are declined as follow ; in the singular only.

N. *Jemand, some, or any body.*

G. *Jemand's, of some, or of any body.*

D. *Jemand, or Jemanden, to some, or to any body.*

A. *Jemand, or Jemanden, some, or any body.*

N. *Niemand, nobody.*

N. *Jedermann, every body.*

G. *Niemand's, of nobody.*

G. *Jedermann's, of every body.*

D. *Niemand-en, to nobody.*

D. *Jedermann, to every body.*

A. *Niemand-en, nobody.*

A. *Jedermann, every body.*

*Man, one, some one, we, people, they, &c.* like the French pronoun *on*, is used only in the third person singular, and is indeclinable.

\* *Jedweder*, is generally used without the article, and is then declined like *jeder*, or *keiner*.

*Recapitulatory Exercises on all the Pronouns.*

## FIRST LESSON.

Wir sind Menschen und wir sind sterblich.

Thoren, die ihr seyd, indem ihr hoffet, daß ihr ohne euch Mühe zu geben, gelehrt und weise werden könnet.

Socrates sagte oft zu seinen Freunden: mein Leben ist mir nicht so schätzbar als die Tugend.

Unser Körper ist hinfällig, aber unsre Seele wird ewig leben.

Mein Geschmack ist nicht der deinige, und dein Geschmack ist nicht der meinige: denn ich finde Vergnügung an Gemälden aus der Niederländischen Schule und du an Gemälden aus der Italiänischen.

Woher dieser Unterschied? da doch sonst meine Neigung mit der deinigen beinahe ganz übereinstimmt.

Ein jeder schöpft aus der Quelle seiner Leidenschaften, entweder sein Glück oder Unglück.

Ich zweifle daß jemand die Menschen besser gekannt habe als Horaz.

Jedes Land hat seine Gebräuche.

Die Schwachheit ist ein Fehler, welchen man schwerlich verbessert.

Es giebt Fehler welche man sorgfältig verbirgt.

Sterblich, mortal. Thor, fool. Die ihr seyd, as you are. Indem ihr hoffet, since you hope. Könnnet werden, can become. Gelehrt, learned. Ohne zu geben, without giving. Such, yourselves. Die Mühe, trouble. Sagte oft, often said. Das Leben, life. Ist nicht so schätzbar, is not so valuable. Die Tugend, virtue. Körper, body. Hinfällig, perishable. Seele, soul. Wird ewig leben, will live for ever. Geschmack, taste. Finde Vergnügen an, am pleased with. Das Gemälde, picture. Aus, (out) of. Niederländisch, Flemish. Italiänischen, Italian. Woher, whence. Unterschied, difference. Da doch, since. Sonst, otherwise. Die Neigung, inclination. Beinahe ganz übereinstimmt, coincides almost entirely. Schöpft, draws. Entweder, either. Das Glück oder das Unglück, the good or ill fortune. Aus, from. Quelle, source. Leidenschaft, passion. Zweifle, doubt. Daß, whether. Habe besser gekannt, had a greater knowledge of. Horaz, Horace. Land, country. Ge-

brauch, custom. Schwachheit, weakness. Fehler, fault. Man-  
schwerlich verbessert, is with great difficulty corrected. Es  
giebt, there are. Sorgfältig, carefully. Verbirgt, conceals  
(conceal).

SECOND LESSON.

Wer hat die Welt erschaffen? Das weiseste und ver-  
ständigste Wesen, welches wir Gott nennen.

Wer ist der schätzbarste unter den Menschen? Das ist,  
ohne Widerspruch, der tugendhafteste und vernünftigste.

Welches Datum haben wir heute? Den ein und zwanzigsten Januar.

Welche Jahreszeit ist die angenehmste? Gewiß der Früh-  
ling.

Der hat am meisten, wer am wenigsten begehrt.

Der Band an ihren Büchern ist besser als meiner.

Er hat viel Verstand und nicht weniger Stolz.

Viele Menschen haben viele Fehler, wenige Menschen  
wenige, keine Menschen keine.

Leihen Sie mir Ihr Messer; ich habe das meinige  
verloren; und meine Schwester hat das ihrige auch ver-  
loren.

Hat geschaffen, has created. Verständig, intelligent. Das  
Wesen, being. Nennen, call. Schätzbar, esteemed. Ohne  
Widerspruch, without contradiction. Vernünftig, reasonable.  
Datum, date. Heute, to-day. Januar, January. Die  
Jahreszeit, season. Angenehm, pleasant. Frühling, spring.  
Am meisten, most. Begehrt, desires. Am wenigsten, least.  
Band, binding. An, of. Als, than. Viel, a great deal.  
Verstand, sense. Wenig, little. Stolz, pride. Viel, many.  
Fehler, fault. Leihen, lend. Messer, knife. Verloren, lost.  
Auch, also.

THIRD LESSON.

I know him. He knows them. She knows us. You  
know her. They know them. He gives it to them. We  
give it to him. She gives it to me. They give it to us.  
Tell it to him. He told it to them. We laugh at them.  
Take pity on (of) me. He is ashamed (*shames himself*)  
of thee. We remember (*ourselves of*) you. There are  
ten of us. There are six of them. Thou shalt love thy  
neighbour as thyself. I ascribe it to myself. He was not

master of himself. When thy days are dark, then thy false friends depart from thee, but thy true friends forsake thee not. That is not thy letter, it is mine. They gave it not to my friend, but to thine. They gave it not on account of your desert, but of ours. That is not thy lot but mine. I mean this house. This is the man (*this man is it*) of whom I speak. Thou must do this, but not leave that undone. This is his own estate. He does as those people of the torrid zone, who shoot arrows at the sun. Who is the most estimable among men? The most virtuous and discreet man. What (*which*) man can promise himself constant good fortune? Which season is the pleasantest?

Know, *kenne*, him, (*Acc.*) Knows, *kennst*. You know, *ihr kennet*. They—know, *kennen*. Gives, *gibt*. Give, *geben*. Tell, *sage*. Told, *sagte*. Laugh at, *auslachen*. Take pity, *erbarmet euch*. Ashamed, *schämt*. Remember, *erinnern*. Shalt, *solst*. Neighbour, *Nächste* (*m.*) 3. As, *als*. Ascribe, *schreibe—zu*. Of himself, *von sich*. When, *wenn*. Day, *der Tag*, *m.* 2. Dark, *dunkel*. Are, *sind*. Then, *dann*. Depart, *weichen—ab*. False, *falsch*. Letter, *Brief*, *m.* 2. From, *von*. Thee, (*Dat.*) but, *aber*. True, *wahr*. Forsake, *verlassen*. That, *daß*. Gave, *gaben*. On account of, *um*. Desert, *Berdienst*, *m.* 2. Sake, *Willen*. Of, *um*. Lot, *Loos*, *n.* 2. Mean, *meine*. Speak, *rede*. Must, *mußt*. This, (*Acc. Neut.*) *dies*. Do, *thun*. But, *aber*. That, *das*. Not leave, *nicht lassen*. Estate, *Gut*, *n.* 5. Does, *macht es*. As, *wie*. People, *\*Volk*, *n.* 5. Torrid, *heiß*. Zone, *Zone*, *f.* 3. Arrow, *Pfeil*, *m.* 2. At, *gegen*. Sun, *Sonne*, *f.* 3. To shoot, *abschießen*. Estimable, *schätzbar*. Among, *unter*. Virtuous, *tugendhaft*. Discreet, *vernünftig*. Can, *kann*. Himself, (*Dat.*) constant, *beständig*. Happiness, *Glück*, *n.* 2. Promise, *versprechen*. Season, *Jahrzeit*, *f.* 3. Pleasant, *angenehm*.

## FOURTH LESSON.

The Graces were goddesses; to whom men were indebted for refinement of manners, for beauty and elegance, all which (*which all*) were the effects of their power. The Fates were called *Parcæ*; to them was assigned a spindle, upon which they spun the thread of life. We cannot console ourselves in being deceived by our friends, and yet we are often contented to be so by ourselves. Apply thyself to virtue, for this will never forsake thee.

Whoever is not diligent in his youth, will not know how to employ himself in his manhood. Who did (*has done*) that? his brother or your sister? His sister and mine. Which house do you mean? For what book are you looking? Who will get the prize? my cousin or his? (*The*) Magistrates must be just towards every one, even towards their enemies. Put these coins again in their places. I know no one who is so happy as he. We must give to every one his own.

Graces, Grazie, *f. 3.* Goddess, Göttin, *f. 3.* Men were indebted for, verbanckte man. Refinement, Verfeinerung, *f. 3.* Manner, Sitte, *f. 3.* Beauty, Schönheit, *f. 3.* Elegance, Anstand, *m. 2.* Which all, welches alles. Effect, Wirkung, *f. 3.* Of, von. Power, \*Macht, *f. 2.* Fate, Schicksal, *n. 2.* Parcæ, Parzen. Were assigned, legte man bei. Spindle, Spinzel, *f. 3.* Upon, auf, which, (*Dat. Mas.*) Thread, \*Faden, *m. 1.* Life, leben, *n. 1.* Spun, spannen. We can, wir können. Not console, nicht trösten. By, von. Friend, Freund, *m. 2.* For being deceived, betrogen zu seyn. And yet, und doch. We are, sind wir. Contented, zufrieden. So, es. By ourselves, durch uns selbst. Apply, befelefige. Virtue, Tugend, *f. 3.* Will, wird. Thee, dir. Never, nie. Forsake, verlassen. Is not, nicht—ist. In, in; his (*Fem. Dat.*) Youth, Jugend, *f. 3.* Will not know, wird nicht wissen. Manhood, das männliche Alter. How to employ himself, wie sich zu beschäftigen. That, daß. Done, gethan. House, \*Haus, *n. 5.* Do you mean, meinen Sie. Are you looking for, suchen Sie. Prize, Preis, *m. 2.* Get, davon tragen. Cousin, Vetter, *m. 1.* Magistrate, Obrigkeit, *f. 3.* Must, muß. Towards, gegen. Every one, jedermann. Even, selbst, (*Acc.*) Just be, gerecht seyn. Put, leget. Coin, Münze, *f. 4.* Again, wieder. In, auf; their (*Acc.*) Place, \*Platz, *n. 2.* Know, kenne. Happy, glücklich. We must, man muß. To every one, jedem. His own, das Seinige. Give, geben.

## EXAMINATION ON THE PRONOUNS.

What is the pronoun for *I*, in German? What is *to me*? And what is *me* in the accusative? What are the possessive pronouns *mein*, *dein*, &c. declined like? Is the demonstrative pronoun *dieser* declined in the same manner? What is it declined like? What is the genitive of the demonstrative pronoun *der* in the masculine? Is the relative pronoun *der* declined like the demonstrative

der? In what respect does the declension of the pronoun der differ from the article der? What is the English to mer? How is es Englished, when used as a pronoun? Why are indefinite pronouns so called? Is the indefinite pronoun *feiner* declined like an adjective? Like what adjective is it declined? By what words do you English the pronoun *Man*?

---

## Verbs. Zeitwörter.

### DIVISION OF VERBS.

Verbs are divided into *regular* and *irregular*, and then again into *auxiliary*, *active*, *passive*, *neuter*, *compound*, *reflective*, and *impersonal*.

Verbs are regular when the simple tenses are formed by the same general termination, in each tense, and retain their original letters in the infinitive, except *en*, or *n*, at the end, which is changed into *te*, in the first person singular of the imperfect tense; and into *t* at the end, and *\*ge* at the beginning of the verb, for the past participle; as,

<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Imp.</i>
Lieben, to love.	ich liebe, I love.	ich liebte, I loved.

#### Participle.

†Geliebt, or geliebet, loved.

Verbs are irregular when their terminations, as well as some of their original letters, are varied; as

<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Imp.</i>
Singen, to sing.	ich singe, I sing.	ich sang, I sung.

---

\* It is to be observed that most participles of the irregular, as well as the regular verbs, begin with *ge*, but there is this difference, that the participles of the irregulars mostly terminate in *en*.

† When the infinitive begins with the syllables *be*, *emp*, *ent*, *er*, *ver*, *zer*, or *ge*, then *ge* is omitted before the participles, except in *gegeben*, *given*; *gebeten*, *prayed for*; and some others.

*Participle.*

Gesungen, sung.

The verbs *ich habe, I have; ich bin, I am; ich werde,* also Englished *I am;* are called auxiliary verbs, because they help to conjugate other verbs in some of their tenses.

An active verb expresses that sort of action, which passes over to an object; as, if we say, *er liebet, he loves;* we must add, or mean, *he loves his child, or something else.* A passive verb, on the contrary, expresses the suffering, or the receiving of an action. The passive verb in German is formed by *ich werde, (Englished I am;)* and the perfect participle; as, *ich werde gelobt, I am praised.*

A verb neuter simply expresses existence; as, *ich bin, I am; existence in a particular state; as, ich stehe, I stand;* or an action which does not pass over to an object; as, *ich gehe, I go; ich falle, I fall; ich laufe, I run.*

A compound verb is that which is compounded of a verb and a preposition, adverb, adjective, or substantive, &c.; as, *vornehmen, to intend; großthun, to boast; dank-sagen, to thank, &c.*

A verb is called reflective, when its subject and object are the same; as, *ich liebe mich; I love myself.* Properly speaking there are no reflective verbs, they are only active verbs that reflect upon the agent.

A verb is called impersonal, when the agent, or nominative is unknown, or considered as such. This unknown agent is expressed in English, by the word *it,* and in German by *es;* as, *es regnet, it rains.*

---



## Auxiliary Verbs.

1. Conjugation of the auxiliary verb, *Seyn*,\* *to be*.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Part. Pres.</i>	<i>Part. Perf.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Seyn, to be.	Seyend, being.	gewesen, been.
<i>Pret.</i> Gewesen seyn, to have been.		

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Singular.</i> }	PRESENT.	{ <i>Singular.</i>
Ich bin, I am,		Ich sey, I may be.
Du bist, thou art.		Du seyst, thou mayst be.
†Er, sie, or es ist, he, she, or it is.		Er sey, he may be.

<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Wir sind, we are.	Wir seyn, we may be.
Ihr seyd, you are.	Ihr seyd, you may be.
Sie sind, they are.	Sie seyn, they may be.

<i>Sing.</i> }	IMPERFECT.	{ <i>Sing.</i>
Ich war, I was.		Ich wäre, I might be; or, if I were.
Du warst, (or warest,) thou wast.		Du wärest, thou mightst be.
Er war, he was.		Er wäre, he might be.

<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Wir waren, we were.	Wir wären, we might be.
Ihr wäret, you were.	Ihr wäret, you might be.
Sie waren, they were.	Sie wären, they might be.

\* *Obs.* Some writers substitute *i* for *η*, throughout the conjugation, and write *sein*, *to be*; *seiend*, *being*; *Ich sei*, *I may be*, &c.

† *Er, sie, or es*, may be used before all other verbs in the third person singular, throughout all the tenses.

*Sing. }*

PERFECT.

{ *Sing.*

Ich bin gewesen, I have been.

Ich sey gewesen, I may have been.

Du bist gewesen, thou hast been.

Du seyest gewesen, thou mayst have been.

Er ist gewesen, he has been.

Er sey gewesen, he may have been.

*Plural.**Plural.*

Wir sind gewesen, we have been.

Wir seyn gewesen, we may have been.

Ihr seyd gewesen, you, &amp;c.

Ihr seyd gewesen, you, &amp;c.

Sie sind gewesen, they, &amp;c.

Sie seyn gewesen, they, &amp;c.

*Sing. }*

PLUPERFECT.

{ *Sing.*

Ich war gewesen, I had been.

Ich wäre gewesen, I might have been.

Du warst gewesen, thou hadst been.

Du wärest gewesen, thou mightst have been.

Er war gewesen, he had been.

Er wäre gewesen, he might have been.

*Plural.**Plural.*

Wir waren gewesen, we had been.

Wir wären gewesen, we might have been.

Ihr wäret gewesen, you had been.

Ihr wäret gewesen, you might have been.

Sie waren gewesen, they had been.

Sie wären gewesen, they might have been.

*Sing. }*

FIRST FUTURE.

{ *Sing.*

Ich werde seyn, I shall be.

Ich werde seyn, I shall be.

Du wirst seyn, thou wilt be.

Du werdest seyn, thou wilt be.

Er wird seyn, he will be.

Er werde seyn, he will be.

*Plural.**Plural.*

Wir werden seyn, we shall be.

Wir werden seyn, we shall be.

Ihr werdet seyn, you will be.

Ihr werdet seyn, you will be.

Sie werden seyn, they will be.

Sie werden seyn, they will be.

*Sing.*}

SECOND FUTURE.

{*Sing.*Ich werde gewesen seyn, I  
shall have been.Ich werde gewesen seyn, I  
shall have been.Du wirst gewesen seyn, thou  
wilt have been.Du werdest gewesen seyn,  
thou wilt have been.Er wird gewesen seyn, he  
will have been.Er werde gewesen seyn, he  
will have been.*Plural.**Plural.*Wir werden gewesen seyn,  
we shall have been.Wir werden gewesen seyn,  
we shall have been.Ihr werdet gewesen seyn,  
you will have been.Ihr werdet gewesen seyn,  
you will have been.Sie werden gewesen seyn,  
they will have been.Sie werden gewesen seyn,  
they will have been.

SIMPLE.

COMPOUND.

*Sing.*}

CONDITIONAL.

{*Sing.*

Ich würde seyn, I should be.

Ich würde gewesen seyn, I  
should have been.Du würdest seyn, thou  
wouldest be.Du würdest gewesen seyn,  
thou wouldest have been.Er würde seyn, he would  
be.Er würde gewesen seyn, he  
would have been.*Plural.**Plural.*Wir würden seyn, we should  
be.Wir würden gewesen seyn,  
we should have been.Ihr würdet seyn, you would  
be.Ihr würdet gewesen seyn,  
you would have been.Sie würden seyn, they  
would be.Sie würden gewesen seyn,  
they would have been.*Sing.*}

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

{*Plural.*

Sey (du,) be, or be thou.

Lasset uns seyn, let us be.

Seh (er) be he, or let him  
be.

Sehd (ihr,) be, or be you.

Seyn Sie, be, or be you.

Sehn sie, let them be, or be  
they.

*Exercises on the Auxiliary Verb, Seyn, to be.*

This verb, as well as all others, may be conjugated in four forms; that is, *affirmatively, negatively, interrogatively, and negatively interrogatively.*

**AFFIRMATIVELY.** Ich bin. Du warst. Er ist gewesen. Wir waren gewesen. Ihr werdet seyn. Sie werden gewesen seyn. Ich würde seyn. Wir würden gewesen seyn. Daß ich sey. Du wärest. Er sey gewesen. Wir wären gewesen. Du werdest seyn. Er werde gewesen seyn. Lasset uns seyn.

**NEGATIVELY.** Ich bin nicht. Er war nicht. Du bist nicht gewesen. Wir waren nicht gewesen. Er wird nicht seyn. Sie werden nicht gewesen seyn. Ich würde nicht seyn. Ihr würdet nicht gewesen seyn. Daß ich nicht sey. Daß er wäre nicht. Daß wir nicht gewesen seyn. Daß er nicht gewesen wäre.

**INTERROGATIVELY.** Bin ich? Ist er gewesen? Waren wir gewesen? Wird er seyn? Werden sie gewesen seyn? Würde ich seyn? Würden wir gewesen seyn? Würden sie gewesen seyn?

**INTERROGATIVELY NEGATIVELY.** Bin ich nicht? Ist er nicht gewesen? War er nicht gewesen? Waren wir nicht gewesen? Wird sie nicht seyn? Werden wir nicht gewesen seyn? Würde ich nicht gewesen seyn?

*Second Exercise.*

**Pres. Ind.**—Art thou? Is he not? We are not. Are they not? They are not. Are you not? You are. Are we not?

**Imp.** Was I? Thou wast not. It was not. She was. Were we? Were we not? Were you not? You were not. Were they?

**Perf.** I have been. Have I been? I have not been. Have I not been? Hast thou been? She has been. Has she not been? It has been. He has not been. Have we been? Have you not been? They have been. They have not been. Have they not been?

*Plup.*—Had I been? I had not been. Thou hadst been. She had not been. Had he not been? Had he been? You had not been. They had not been. Had they been? Had they not been? We had not been. Had we not been?

*1st. Fut.*—I shall not be. Wilt thou not be? He will be. Will she not be? It will not be. You will be. Shall you not be? Shall we be? We shall not be. They will not be. Will they not be?

*2nd. Fut.*—Shall I not have been? Wilt thou not have been? He will have been. Will she not have been? It will not have been. We shall have been. Shall we not have been? You will not have been. Will they not have been?

*Cond. Simple and Comp.* Should I be? Wouldst thou not be? It would be. Would she not be? He would not be. We should not be. Would you not be? You would not be. Would they not be? They would not be. I should not have been. Would it not have been? Should we not have been? We should not have been. Would you not have been? They would not have been.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Pres.*—I may not be. Thou mayst be. It may not be. He may not be. We may be. You may not be. They may not be.

*Imp.*—I might not be. She might be. It might not be. We might not be. You might be. They might not be.

*Perf.*—I may not have been. Thou mayst have been. He may have been. It may have been. We may not have been. You may have been. They may not have been.

*Plup.*—I might not have been. Thou mightst have been. She might not have been. We might have been. You might have been. They might not have been.

*1st. Fut.*—I shall not be. Thou wilt be. He will not be. It will be. We shall not be. You will not be. They will not be.

*2nd. Fut.*—I shall not have been. She will have been.  
We shall not have been. You will not have been. They  
will not have been.

IMPERATIVE.

Be (*thou*). Let him be. Let him not be. Let us not  
be. Be, or do you be. Do not be (*you*). Let them  
not be.

II. Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb, *Haben*, to have.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Part. Pres.</i>	<i>Part. Perf.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Haben, to have.	Habend, having.	Gehabt, had.
<i>Pret.</i> Gehabt haben, to have had.		

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Sing.</i> }	PRESENT.	{ <i>Sing.</i>
Ich habe, I have.	Ich habe, I may have.	
Du hast, thou hast.	Du habest, thou mayst have.	
Er, sie, or es hat, he, she, or it has.	Er, or sie habe, he, or she may, or could have.	

<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Wir haben, we have.	Wir haben, we may have.
Ihr habt, or habet, you have.	Ihr habet, you may have.
Sie haben, they have.	Sie haben, they may have.

<i>Sing.</i> }	IMPERFECT.	{ <i>Sing.</i>
Ich hatte, I had.	Ich hätte, I might, or could have.	
Du hattest, thou hadst.	Du hättest, thou mightst have.	
Er hatte, he had.	Er hätte, he might have.	

<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Wir hatten, we had.	Wir hätten, we might have.
Ihr hättet, you had.	Ihr hättet, you might have.
Sie hatten, they had.	Sie hätten, they might have.

*Sing.*}

PERFECT.

{*Sing.*

Ich habe gehabt, I have had.

Ich habe gehabt, I may have had.

Du hast gehabt, thou hast had.

Du habest gehabt, thou mayst have had.

Er hat gehabt, he has had.

Er habe gehabt, he may have had.

*Plural.**Plural.*

Wir haben gehabt, we have had.

Wir haben gehabt, we may have had.

Ihr habt, or habet gehabt, you have had.

Ihr habet gehabt, you may have had.

Sie haben gehabt, they have had.

Sie haben gehabt, they may have had.

*Sing.*}

PLUPERFECT.

{*Sing.*

Ich hatte gehabt, I had had.

Ich hätte gehabt, I might have had.

Du hättest gehabt, thou hadst had.

Du hättest gehabt, thou mightst have had.

Er hatte gehabt, he had had.

Er hätte gehabt, he might have had.

*Plural.**Plural.*

Wir hatten gehabt, we had had.

Wir hätten gehabt, we might have had.

Ihr hättet gehabt, you had had.

Ihr hättet gehabt, you might have had.

Sie hatten gehabt, they had had.

Sie hätten gehabt, they might have had.

*Sing.*}

FIRST FUTURE.

{*Sing.*

Ich werde haben, I shall have.

Ich werde haben, I shall have.

Du wirst haben, thou wilt have.

Du werdest haben, thou wilt have.

Er wird haben, he will have.

Er werde haben, he will have.

*Plural.*

*Plural*

Wir werden haben, we shall have.

Wir werden haben, we shall have

Ihr werdet haben, you will have.

Ihr werdet haben, you will have.

Sie werden haben, they will have.

Sie werden haben, they will have.

*Sing. }*

SECOND FUTURE.

*{ Sing.*

Ich werde gehabt haben, I shall have had.

Ich werde gehabt haben, I shall have had.

Du wirst gehabt haben, thou wilt have had.

Du werdest gehabt haben, thou wilt have had.

Er wird gehabt haben, he will have had.

Er werde gehabt haben, he will have had.

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

Wir werden gehabt haben, we shall have had.

Wir werden gehabt haben, we shall have had.

Ihr werdet gehabt haben, you will have had.

Ihr werdet gehabt haben, you will have had.

Sie werden gehabt haben, they will have had.

Sie werden gehabt haben, they will have had.

CONDITIONAL : *Ind. and Sub.*

*Simple.*

*Compound.*

*Sing.*

*Sing.*

Ich würde haben, I should have.

Ich würde gehabt haben, I should have had.

Du würdest haben, thou wouldst have.

Du würdest gehabt haben, thou wouldst have had.

Er würde haben, he would have.

Er würde gehabt haben, he would have had.

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

Wir würden haben, we should have.

Wir würden gehabt haben, we should have had.

Ihr würdet haben, you would have.

Ihr würdet gehabt haben, you would have had.

Sie würden haben, they would have.

Sie würden gehabt haben, they would have had.



## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Sing.**Plural.*

Habe du, have, or have thou.	Lasset uns haben, let us have.
Habe er, have he, or let him have.	Habt, or habet ihr, have you, or do you have.
	Haben Sie, have you, or do you have.
	Haben sie, have they, or let them have.

*1st Exercise on the Auxiliary Verb Haben, to be translated into English.*

Ich habe geschrieben, und du hast nicht geschrieben. Er hat geliebt, und sie hat nicht geliebt. Habt Ihr es geschrieben? Wir haben es nicht geschrieben. Wer hat an die Thüre geklopft? Haben Sie an die Thüre geklopft? Ich hatte es gesehen, und mein Bruder hatte es nicht gesehen. Warum hatten Sie den Wechsel noch nicht bezahlt? Ich habe diesen Frühling viel Vergnügen auf dem Lande gehabt. Man hat wenig wahre Freuden, man ist nicht glücklich ohne Gesundheit. Es stehet selten in unserer Macht viele Freude zu haben.

Geschrieben, written. Geliebt, loved. Geklopft, knocked. Gesehen, seen. Warum, why. Bezahlt, paid. Wechsel, bill; or bill of exchange. Viel, much, a great deal. Vergnügen, pleasure. Auf, in. Frühling, spring. Wahre, true. Glücklich, happy. Gesundheit, health. Es stehet, it stands (it is.) Macht, power.

*2nd Exercise on the Auxiliary Verb, Haben, to have.*

*Pres. Ind.*—Have I? Have I not? He has not. Hast thou? She has not. Have we? We have not. You have not. Have they? They have not. Have they not?

*Imp.*—Had I? He had. Had she not? Had we not? Had you not? They had. Had they not?

*Perf.*—Have I had? Hast thou not had? Has he not had? Have you not had? She has not had. Have they not had? We have not had. Have they had? They have not had. Have they not had?

*Pluperfect.*—I had not had. Had I not had? Hadst thou had? She had not had. Had he not had? Had we had? They had not had. They had had. Had they not had?

*1st. Fut.*—Shall I not have? Wilt thou have? I shall not have. We shall not have. Shall you not have? You will not have.

*2nd. Fut.*—Will he have had? They will not have had. Will they not have had? We shall have had. Shall you not have had?

*Cond. Simple.*—Should I have? Thou wouldst not have. Would he not have? We should not have. Should we have? Should we not have? You would not have. Would you not have? They would not have. Would they not have?

*Cond. Comp.*—I should not have had. Would he not have had? We should not have had. Would you have had? They would not have had.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Pres.*—I may have. I may not have. Thou mayst not have. We may have. We may not have. They may have. They may not have.

*Imp.*—Thou mightst not have. Hadst thou not. \*Had we. Had we not. Had you not. Had they not. They might not have.

*Perf.*—Thou mayst not have had. We may not have had. You may have had. They may not have had.

*Plup.*—I might not have had. Thou mightst have had. He might have had. He might not have had. We might not have had. They might not have had.

*Imper.*—Have (thou). Let us have. Have you. Have they, or let them have.

---

\* *Had we*, is not interrogative, but has the same meaning as, *if we had*, in the subjunctive mood.

### III. *The Irregular and Auxiliary Neuter Verb, Werden, to become.*

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participle Pres.</i>
<i>Pres. Werden, to become.</i>	<i>Werdend, becoming.</i>
<i>Perf. Geworden seyn, to have become.</i>	<i>Ein Werdender, one who becomes.</i>
<i>Perf. Participle.</i>	<i>Geworden, become.</i>

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Sing. }</i>	<i>{ Sing.</i>
PRESENT.	
<i>Ich werde, I become.</i>	<i>Ich werde, I may become.</i>
<i>Du wirst, thou becomest.</i>	<i>Du werdest, thou mayest, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Er, sie, or es wird, he, she, or it becomes.</i>	<i>Er, sie, or es werde, he, she, or it may become.</i>

<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Wir werden, we become.</i>	<i>Wir werden, we may become</i>
<i>Ihr werdet, you become.</i>	<i>Ihr werdet, you may become</i>
<i>Sie werden, they become.</i>	<i>Sie werden, they may become</i>

<i>Sing. }</i>	IMPERFECT.	<i>{ Sing.</i>
<i>Ich wurde, or ward, I became.</i>		<i>Ich würde, I might become.</i>
<i>Du wurdest, or wardst, thou becamest.</i>		<i>Du würdest, thou mightst become.</i>
<i>Er wurde, or ward, he became.</i>		<i>Er würde, he might become.</i>

<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Wir wurden, we became.</i>	<i>Wir würden, we might become.</i>
<i>Ihr wurdet, you became.!</i>	<i>Ihr würdet, you might, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Sie wurden, they became.</i>	<i>Sie würden, they might, &amp;c.</i>

<i>Sing. }</i>	PERFECT.	<i>{ Sing.</i>
<i>Ich bin geworden, I have become.</i>		<i>Ich sey geworden, I may have become.</i>
<i>Du bist geworden, &amp;c.</i>		<i>Du seyst geworden, &amp;c.</i>

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Sing.* }

PLUPERFECT.

*{ Sing.*

Ich war geworden, I had Ich wäre geworden, I might  
become. have become.

Du warst geworden, &c. Du wärest geworden, &c.

*Sing.* }

FIRST FUTURE.

*{ Sing.*

Ich werde werden, I shall Ich werde werden, I shall be-  
come. come.

Du wirst werden, &c. Du werdest werden, &c.

*Sing.* }

SECOND FUTURE.

*{ Sing.*

Ich werde geworden seyn, Ich werde geworden seyn,  
I shall have become. I shall have become.

Du wirst geworden seyn, Du werdest geworden seyn,  
&c. &c.

*Sing.* }

CONDITIONAL ; SIMPLE.

*{ Plural.*

Ich würde werden, I should Wir würden werden, we  
become. should become.

Du würdest werden, &c. Ihr würdet werden, &c.

*Sing.* }

CONDITIONAL ; COMPOUND.

*{ Plural.*

Ich würde geworden seyn, I Wir würden geworden seyn,  
should have become. we should have become.

Du würdest geworden seyn, Ihr würdet geworden seyn,  
&c. &c.

*Sing.* }

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*{ Plural.*

Werde, or werde du, become Lasset uns werden, let us be-  
(thou.) come.

Werde er, let him become. Werdet (Ihr), become (you.)

Werden Sie, become (you.)

Werden sie, let them become.

*Obs.* Ich werde, &c. when used as an auxiliary verb, is Englished by *I am, I shall, I will, I grow*; and the perfect participle, as an auxiliary with an active verb, becomes *worden*, instead of *geworden*; as, *Ich bin gesehen worden*, I have been seen.

*Exercise on the Auxiliary, Werden.*

*Pres. Ind.*—Does he become? Does she not become? Thou dost not become. Do we become? Do you not become? They do not become.

*Imp.*—I did not become. Did it not become? Did we become? She became. She did not become. Did we not become? Did you not become? They did not become.

*Perf.*—I have become. Have I not become? Hast thou not become? She has not become. Have we not become? Have you not become? Have they become?

*Plup.*—I had become. Had I become? Had I not become? I had not become. Hadst thou become? He had not become. Had she not become? Had we become? Had you not become? They had become. They had not become. Had they become? Had they not become?

*First Fut.*—Shall I become? Shall we become? Wilt thou become? Wilt thou not become? He will become. She will not become. Shall you become? They will not become.

*Second Fut.*—I shall have become. Will he have become? Shall we have become? You will not have become. Will they have become? They will not have become. Will they not have become?

*Cond. Simple.*—Should I become? Wouldst thou become? It would become. Should he not become? We should not become. Would you become? They would not become.

*Cond. Comp.*—I should have become. Would it have become? Should we have become? We should not have become. Would you not have become? You would have become. Would they have become?

*Pres. Sub.*—I may not become. She may not become. Thou mayst become. He may not become. We may not become. They may become.

*Imp.*—I might become. Thou mightst become. She might not become. We might not become. You might become. They might not become.

*Perf.*—I may have become. He may not have become. You may have become. They may not have become.

*Plup.*—Thou mightst have become. She might not have become. It might not have become. You might have become. They might not have become.

*Imperat.*—Become thou. Become (you) not. Become they, or let them become. Let them not become.

*Recapitulatory Exercises on the Auxiliaries.*

FIRST LESSON.

Die Griechen sind die Lehrer vieler Völker gewesen, und haben erst spät aufgehört es zu seyn.

Die Römer können sich nicht rühmen es gewesen zu seyn, denn sie waren die Schüler der Griechen.

Die Eigenliebe ist der größte von allen Schmeichlern ; sie ist die Verführerin vieler Menschen gewesen, und wird es noch von vielen seyn, die nicht auf ihrer Hut sind.

Wir sind ihren Verführungen immer ausgesetzt, und wir müssen sie daher immer fliehen.

Wenn wir einmal von ihr verführt worden sind, so ist es schwer uns ihrer Herrschaft zu entziehen.

Als Hannibal von Scipio überwunden worden war, so fragte ihn Scipio, wer nach seiner Meinung wohl der größte Feldherr wäre? Hannibal nannte den Alexander. Wer ist aber wohl nach dem Alexander der größte Held gewesen? Hannibal sagte, daß es Pyrrhus sey! Wer aber der dritte? Hannibal erwiderte, ich bin es.

Griechen, Greek. Lehrer, teacher. Viele, many. Volk, nation. Aufgehört, ceased. Erst spät, but lately. Römer, Romans. Können sich nicht rühmen, cannot boast. Es zu seyn, of being so. Denn, for. Schüler, scholar. Eigenliebe, self-love. Von, of. Schmeichler, flatterer. Verführerin, seducer. Vieler, of many. Wird seyn, will be. Von vielen, of many. Die, who. Auf, upon. Hut, guard. Immer, always. Ausgesetzt, exposed. Verführung, seduction. Müssen, must. Daher, therefore. Fliehen, flee, or shun. Wenn, when. Einmal, once. Verführt, seduced. Schwer, difficult. Uns zu entziehen, to disengage ourselves. Herrschaft, dominion. Ueberwunden worden war, was conquered. Von, by. Fragte, asked. Nach, in. Meinung, opinion. Feldherr, commander. Nannte, named. Held, hero. Sagte, said. Erwiderte, replied. Ich bin es, it is I.

## SECOND LESSON.

Hast thou been lame?

Was she not a sincere friend?

Switzerland is a mountainous country.

The people have been long free.

We have not all equal talents.

Have they had equal advantages?

If he had always had the understanding which he now has, he would not have been so proud.

Who is not mortal? There is no man who is not mortal.

Thou art a man, and consequently art frail.

Should any one be envious? Would he not then be unhappy? Be not, therefore, envious, if you wish not to be unhappy.

Had he been contented, he would have been happy.

Many have had the greatest possessions, and yet have been unhappy, because they were not contented.

Become first contented, and then you may hope to be happy.

*Obs.* Put the participles and infinitives of the German at the end of the sentence.

Lame, lahms. Sincere, aufrichtig. Switzerland, die Schweiz. Mountainous, bergig. Country, \*Land, n. 5. People, \*Volk, n. 3. Free, frei. Equal, gleich. Advantage, Vortheil, n. 2. If, wenn. Understanding, Verstand, m. 2. Had had, gehabt hätte. Proud, stolz. Mortal, sterblich. Man, Mensch, m. 3. Consequently, folglich. Frail, zerfallig. Should, sollte. Any one, jemand. Envious, eckig. Be, sein. Then, dann. Unhappy, unglücklich. Therefore, daher. If you wish not to be, wenn du nicht sein willst. Contented, zufrieden. Many, viele, f. 3. Possession, Besizung, f. 3. Yet, doch. Because, weil. Not contented were, nicht zufrieden waren. Become, sey. First, erst. May you, magst du. Hope, hoffen. Happy, glücklich.

## THIRD LESSON.

Alexander said, were I not Alexander, I should wish to be Diogenes.

The Romans had, in the commencement, kings, afterwards they had consuls, and lastly emperors.

Scarcely any (*almost no*) empire of the world has had so mean an (*as we mean*) origin, and has become so great as the Roman empire.

If Scipio had not been so great a general, Carthage would not (*so would Carthage not*) have been conquered by him.

How happy would every one have been, if all men had been what they should have been.

How much happier we should be than we are at present, if we had no inordinate passions.

The taste of the Romans was (*has been*) never so refined as that of the Greeks: this arose from their being imitators.

The cultivated Romans had also mostly been in Greece, and had brought with them from thence knowledge and taste.

Said, *sagte*. Should wish, *möchte gern*. Roman, *Römer*, *m. 1.* In the commencement, *Anfang*. King, *König*, *m. 2.* Afterwards, *nachher*. Lastly, *zuletzt*. Emperor, *Kaiser*, *m. 1.* Almost, *beinahe*. Empire, *Reich*, *n. 2.* World, *Welt*, *f. 3.* Mean, *geringe*. Origin, *Ursprung*, *m. 2.* As, *als*. Roman, *römisch*. General, *Feldherr*, *m. 3.* Carthage, *Carthago*. By, *von*. Him (*Dat.*) Conquered been, *erobert worden*. How, *wie*. At present, *jetzt*. Inordinate, *unordentlich*. Passion, *Leidenschaft*, *f. 3.* Taste, *Geschmack*, *m. 2.* Refined, *verfeinert*; that, (*Mas.*) Greek, *Griech*, *m. 3.* Came thence, *kam daher*. Imitator, *Nachahmer*, *m. 1.* Cultivated, *gebildet*. Also, *auch*. Mostly, *meistentheils*. Greece, *Griechenland*. Brought with them, *mit gebracht*. From thence, *von da*. Knowledge, *Kenntniß*, *f. 2.* (*Pl.*)

## Wollen.

The following verbs, *Wollen*, *Sollen*, &c. are generally used in German like the corresponding words in English, being sometimes auxiliary and sometimes principal verbs.

*Obs.* Their use will be best understood by examples. *Vide* pages 114, 115, &c.

*Conjugation of the Verb Wollen, to be willing, wish, &c*

*Inf.*

*Part. Pres.*

*Pres. Wollen*, to be willing. *Wollend*, willing.

*Pret. Gewollt haben*, to have been willing, or to have willed.

*Part. Past, or Perf. Gewollt*, willed, or been willing.



## IMPERATIVE.

*Plural.*

Wir sollen, we shall.  
Ihr sollet, or sollt, you shall.  
Sie sollen, they shall.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Plural.*

Wir sollen, &c.  
Ihr sollet, &c.  
Sie sollen, &c.

*Sing. }*

## IMPERFECT.

*{ Sing.*

Ich sollte, I should  
Du solltest, &c.

Ich sollte, &c.  
Du solltest, &c.

*Plural.**Plural.*

Wir sollten, we should.  
Ihr solltet, &c.

Wir sollten, &c.  
Ihr solltet, &c.

*Sing. }*

## PERFECT.

*{ Sing.*

Ich habe gesollt,\* I should have, or I ought to have, &c.

Ich habe gesollt, &c.

*Sing. }*

## PLUPERFECT.

*{ Sing.*

Ich hatte gesollt, I had been obliged, &c.

Ich hätte gesollt, &c.

*Sing. }*

## FIRST FUTURE.

*{ Sing.*

Ich werde sollen, I shall be obliged.

Du wirst sollen, &c.

Ich werde sollen, &c.

Du werdest sollen, &c.

*Sing. }*

## SECOND FUTURE.

*{ Sing.*

Ich werde gesollt haben, &c.

Du wirst gesollt haben, &c.

Ich werde gesollt haben, &c.

Du werdest gesollt haben, &c.

*Simp. Sing. }*

## CONDITIONAL.

*{ Comp. Sing.*

Ich würde sollen, &c.

Ich würde gesollt haben, &c.

---

\* Ich habe gesollt, also signifies in English, I have been obliged, I have been commanded, or ordered; I have been forced.

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

**Wir würden sollen, &c.**

**Wir würden gefällt haben, &c.**

NO IMPERATIVE.

*Conjugation of the Verb ~~Müssen~~, to be obliged.*

*Inf.*

*Part. Pres.*

*Pres. Müssen, to be obliged.*

No present part.

*Pret. Gemusst haben, to have been obliged.*

*Part. Perf. Gemusst, obliged.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Sing. }*

PRESENT.

*{ Sing.*

**Ich muß, I am obliged, I must, I ought, &c.**

**Ich müsse, I may be obliged.**

**Du mußt, thou must, &c.**

**Du müssest, thou, &c.**

**Er, (He) muß, he, or she, &c.**

**Er, or sie müsse, &c.**

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

**Wir müssen, we are obliged.**

**Wir müssen, &c.**

**Ihr müßt, or müßt, &c.**

**Ihr müßet, &c.**

*Sing. }*

IMPERFECT.

*{ Sing.*

**Ich mußte, I was obliged.**

**Ich müßte, I might be obliged.**

**Du müßtest, thou, &c.**

**Du müßtest, thou, &c.**

**Er mußte, &c.**

**Er müßte, &c.**

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

**Wir mußten, we were obliged.**

**Wir müßten, we might be obliged.**

**Ihr müßtet, &c.**

**Ihr müßtet, &c.**

*Sing. }*

PERFECT.

*{ Sing.*

**Ich habe gemusst, I have been obliged.**

**Ich habe gemusst, I may have been obliged.**

**Du hast gemusst, &c.**

**Du habest gemusst, &c.**

<i>Sing.</i> }	CONDITIONAL ; SIMPLE.	{ <i>Plural</i>
Ich würde können, I should be able.		Wir würden können, we should be able.
Du würdest können, thou wouldst, &c.		Ihr würdet können, &c.

<i>Sing.</i> }	CONDITIONAL ; COMPOUND.	{ <i>Plural</i>
Ich würde gekonnt haben, I should have been able.		Wir würden gekonnt haben, we should have been able.
Du würdest gekonnt haben, &c.		Ihr würdet gekonnt haben, &c.

*Conjugation of the Verb \*Mögen, to be willing, to be able, to like, to be permitted.*

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Part. Pres.</i>	<i>Part. Perf.</i>
Pres. Mögen.	Mögend.	Gemocht.
Pret. Gemocht haben.		

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Sing.</i> }	PRESENT.	{ <i>Sing.</i>
Ich mag, I may.		Ich möge, I may.
Du magst, thou mayst.		Du mögest, &c.
Er, sie, or es mag, he, she, or it may.		Er, sie, or es möge, &c.

<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural</i>
Wir mögen, we may.		Wir mögen, we may.
Ihr möget, or mögt, you may.		Ihr möget, &c.
Sie mögen, they may.		Sie mögen, &c.

<i>Sing.</i> }	IMPERFECT.	{ <i>Sing.</i>
Ich möchte, I might.		Ich möchte, I might.
Du möchtest, &c.		Du möchtest, &c.

\* These verbs are defective in English, and cannot be translated throughout, unless they are used in composition. *Vide* their application, pages 114, 115, &c.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

Wir möchten, we might.  
Ihr möchtet, &c.

Wir möchten, &c.  
Ihr möchtet, &c.

*Sing. }*

PERFECT.

*{ Sing.*

\*Ich habe gemocht, &c.  
Du hast gemocht, &c.

Ich habe gemocht, &c.  
Du habest gemocht, &c.

*Sing. }*

PLUPERFECT.

*{ Sing.*

Ich hatte gemocht, &c.  
Du hättest gemocht, &c.

Ich hätte gemocht, &c.  
Du hättest gemocht, &c.

*Sing. }*

FIRST FUTURE.

*{ Sing.*

Ich werde mögen, &c.  
Du wirst mögen, &c.

Ich werde mögen, &c.  
Du werdest mögen, &c.

*Sing. }*

SECOND FUTURE.

*{ Sing.*

Ich werde gemocht haben, &c.  
Du wirst gemocht haben, &c.

Ich werde gemocht haben, &c.  
Du werdest gemocht haben, &c.

*Simp. Sing. }*

CONDITIONAL

*{ Comp. Sing.*

Ich würde mögen, &c.  
Du würdest mögen, &c.

Ich würde gemocht haben, &c.  
Du würdest gemocht haben, &c.

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

Wir würden mögen, &c.

Wir würden gemocht haben,  
&c.

Ihr würdet mögen, &c.

Ihr würdet gemocht haben,  
&c.

NO IMPERATIVE.

*Conjugation of the Verb Dürfen, to dare, to need.*

*Infinitive.*

*Part. Pres.*

Pres. Dürfen, to dare.

Dürfend, daring.

Pret. Gedurft haben, to have dared.

Part. Perf. Gedurft, dared.

\* The English of *ich habe gemocht*, is, I have liked.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Sing. }

PLUPERFECT.

{ Sing.

Ich hätte gelassen, I had let. Ich hätte gelassen, I might have let, &c.

Sing. }

FIRST FUTURE.

{ Sing.

Ich werde lassen, I shall let. Ich werde lassen, I shall let, &c.

Sing. }

SECOND FUTURE.

{ Sing.

Ich werde gelassen haben, I shall have let, &c. Ich werde gelassen haben, I shall have let, &c.

Simp. Sing. }

CONDITIONAL.

{ Comp. Sing.

Ich würde lassen, I should let. Ich würde gelassen haben, I should have let, &c.

Plural.

Plural.

Wir würden lassen, we should let, &c. Wir würden gelassen haben, we should have let, &c.

Sing. }

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

{ Plural.

Lass du, or lasse du, let thou, Lasset ihr, let you, or do or do thou let. you let.  
Lasse er, let him. Lassen sie, let them.

The following examples are intended to illustrate the application of the preceding verbs, Wollen, Müssen, &c.

1. Wollen, to will, to be willing, to intend, desire, wish, want.

## EXAMPLES.

Wollen Sie spazieren gehen? will you take a walk?

Ich will spazieren gehen, I will take a walk.

Er will fliegen, aber hat keine Flügel, he wishes to fly, but has no wings.

Wollten, or wollen Sie wohl die Güte haben? would, or will you have the kindness?

Ich wollte gerne gehen, I should wish, or like, to go, or I would willingly go.

Ich will zu Fuß gehen, I will go on foot.

Ich will zu Fuß reisen, I will travel on foot.

Ich wollte daß wir gehen sollten, I was for our going.

Wie viel Geld wollt ihr? how much money do you want?

*Observe.* Ich will, I will, infinitive wollen: this verb is used when desire, will, or inclination is implied. And werden is used to denote futurity; as

Ich will gehen, I will go.

Es wird bald regnen, it will soon rain.

Ich werde bald grau werden, I shall soon become, or grow grey.

*Observe.* Will, originally signified inclination: shall, originally signified necessity. The Germans use werden, when simple futurity is to be expressed; in which case shall and will lose their original meanings; in the first person, shall is a sign of the simple future; will is so in the second and third. In all other cases, shall and will have the original acceptance, and nearly correspond to the German wollen and sollen.

## 2. Sollen, to be obliged, &c.

Soll ich es haben? shall I have it? or am I to have it?

Du sollst das thun, thou shalt do that, thou art to do it.

Sie sollen schreiben, you shall write, you are to write.

Ich soll dahin gehen, I shall go there, (or thither).

Was soll das heißen? what does that mean?

Es soll an nichts fehlen, there shall be nothing wanting.

Ich sollte dahin gehen, I should go there.

Es soll sich zugetragen haben, it is said to have happened.

Soll ich es thun oder nicht? am, shall, or ought I to do it, or not?

Der König soll angekommen seyn, the king is said to have arrived.

Die französische Flotte soll geschlagen worden seyn, the French fleet is said to have been beaten.

Wenn er morgen sterben sollte, if he should die to-morrow.

Das sollte mir Leid thun, I should be sorry for it.

Wenn das so seyn sollte, if- that should be so.<sup>'''</sup>  
 Sollte sich das Wetter ändern, so wollen wir ausgehen,  
 should the weather change, we will go out.

---

### 3. Müssen, to be obliged, forced, &c.

Ich muß es thun, I must do it, I am to do it, I am obliged to do it.

Man muß es thun, we, they, people, one, &c. must do it, or ought to do it.

Ich muß mich waschen, I must wash myself.

Was muß ich trinken? what must I drink?

Alle Menschen müssen sterben, all men must die.

Ihr müßet nicht immer böse seyn, you must not always be angry.

Das muß so seyn und nicht anders, that must be so and not otherwise.

Sie müssen ihn fragen, you must ask him.

*Observe.* Ich muß, generally corresponds to the English *must*, and exactly to the French *il faut*, and to the Italian *bisogna*.

---

### 4. Können, to be able, to have power, to be possible, to know.

Ich kann nicht glauben, I cannot believe.

Ich kann es nicht thun, I cannot do it.

Sie können das thun wenn Sie wollen, you may do that if you like.

Er kann weder lesen noch schreiben, he can neither read nor write.

Ich kann sehr wohl sehen, I can see very well.

Können Sie ohne Brillen lesen? can you read without spectacles?

Ich konnte es nicht sehen, I could not see it.

Ich hätte es thun können, I could have done it.

Ich kann mich irren, I may be mistaken.

Es kann so seyn, it may be so.

Vielleicht kann er mir helfen, perhaps he may help me.

Ich konnte ihn nicht verstehen, I could not understand him.

Können Sie heute zu mir kommen? can you come to me to-day?

## 5. Mögen, to be willing, to be able, to like.

Ich mag das nicht, I do not like that.

Nein, ich mag es nicht, no, I do not like it.

Ich möchte gern wissen, wie viel uhr es ist, I should like to know what o'clock it is.

Ich möchte es wohl thun, I should much like to do it.

Ich möchte wohl etwas davon haben, I should like to have some of it.

Ich fürchte es möchte geschehen, I am afraid it may happen.

Es mag seyn, it may be.

Es mag seyn wie es will, be it as it will.

Ich möchte gern gehen, I would fain, or I should like to go.

Ich möchte lieber, I had rather; I would rather.

Es möchte sich ereignen, it might happen.

Es möchte regnen, it might rain.

Möge er lange leben! may he live long!

Möge es der Himmel geben! may heaven grant it!

Wer mag deine Wunder erzählen! who can relate thy wonders!

Mögen Sie Wein? do you choose wine?

Ich mag diesen Wein nicht, I do not like this wine.

Ich mag nichts mehr trinken, I do not like to drink any more.

## 6. Dürfen, to dare, to have permission, to be allowed, to be able, &amp;c.

Ich darf es nicht thun, I dare not do it.

Thue es, wenn du darfst, do it, if you dare.

Ich darf es thun, I dare do it, or I am allowed to do it.

Sie dürfen es nicht thun, you dare not do it, you are not allowed to do it.

Darf sie kommen? may she come?

Darf ich fragen? may I ask?

Wenn ich so sagen darf, if I may so express myself.

Es dürfte vielleicht wahr seyn, it might perhaps be true.

Es dürfte wohl geschehen, it might easily happen.

Du darfst es nur fordern, you need only ask for it.

## 7. Lassen, to let, to permit, to allow, &amp;c.

Lassen Sie mich gehen, let me go, or allow me to go.



Lassen Sie ihn kommen, let him come.

Das läßt sich nicht thun, that is not to be done.

Laßt sehen, or laßt uns sehen, let us see.

Lassen Sie mich etwas erzählen, allow me to tell you something.

Ich habe mir sagen lassen, I have been told, or informed.

Er fangt wieder an wo er es gelassen hat, he begins again where he left off.

Es läßt sich niemand weder hören noch sehen, there is nobody to be seen nor heard.

Sein Thun und Lassen, his acts and omissions.

*Promiscuous Exercise on the preceding Verbs.*

FIRST LESSON.

Wir können uns bewegen, wenn wir wollen; und diese Bewegung ist ein Zeichen des Lebens.

Der Mensch kann nicht alles thun, was er will; nur Gott hat die Macht, alles zu können was er will.

Wenn der Mensch alles könnte, was er wollte: so würde alles durch einander gehen.

Ich muß nicht, wenn ich nicht will.

Paris soll eine schöne Stadt seyn.

Ich kann nicht begreifen, wer er seyn mag.

Sagen Sie was Sie wollen. Wenn ich so sagen darf.

Er müsse leben und glücklich seyn.

Ich wollte gerne gehen. Wollen Sie gehen?

Ich will an einen meiner Freunde schreiben.

Ich möchte wissen, wo mein Bruder das Schreibzeug hingestellt hat.

Soll ich mit Ihnen gehen?

So viel Geld darf ich nicht wagen.

---

Bewegen, move. Wenn, when, if. Wollen, will, wish. Die Bewegung, motion. Das Zeichen, sign. Kann nicht alles thun, cannot do every thing. Nur, but, only. Die Macht, power. So würde alles durch einander gehen, every thing would be in disorder. Paris soll seyn, Paris is said to be. Ich kann nicht begreifen, I cannot imagine. Wer, who. So sagen darf, may say so. Er müsse leben, may he live. Glücklich, happy. Ich wollte gerne, I should like. An schreiben, to write. Wissen, to know. Hingestellt hat, has put. Das Schreibzeug, the inkstand. Wagen, risk. Geld, money.

SECOND LESSON.

He could, would, must, might, should, ought to have done it. *Er hätte das thun können, wollen, müssen, mögen, sollen, dürfen.*

*Exercise on the preceding Verbs.*

He could not have paid all his debts, if I had helped him. He should not have told all he knew of the matter. They should not have made laws, only to (in order to) violate them. They must have been very stupid, not to (if they have not) have understood it. You might (could) have spoken to him in a more civil manner. I should have wished to have seen it, (I had it see may.) They would not have allowed it, if they had known it before. They ought not to have given him that liberty, (ought him that liberty not given have.)

Debt, *Schuld, f.* To pay, *bezahlen.* To help, *helfen.* To tell, *sagen.* To know, *wissen.* Of, *von.* Matter, *Sache, f.* To make, *machen.* Law, *Gesetz, n.* To violate, *verlegen.* Stupid, *stumm.* To understand, *verstehen.* To speak, *sprechen.* In, *auf.* Civil, *artig.* Manner, *Beise, f.* May, *mögen.* Allowed, *erlaubt.* Before, *ehe.* Ought, *sollten.* Liberty, *Freiheit, f.*

## Regular Verbs.

### REGULAR ACTIVE VERBS.

In German as in English, there is but one conjugation of regular verbs, which has the terminations *te*, in the imperfect; and *t*, or *et*, in the participle, with *ge* before it; but *ge* is omitted before infinitives beginning with *be*, *emp*, *ent*, *er*, *ver*, *zer*, or *ge*, v. note, p. 86.

#### *Conjugation of the Regular Verb Lieben, to love.*

##### *Inf.*

##### *Part. Perf.*

*Pres.* Lieben, to love.

Liebend, loving.

*Pres. Part.* Geliebt, or geliebet haben, to have loved.

*Part. Perf.* Geliebt, loved.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Sing.* }

PRESENT TENSE.

{ *Sing.*

Ich liebe, I love, do love, or  
I am loving.

Ich liebe, I may love.

Du liebst, or liebest, thou lo-  
vest, dost love, or art loving.

Du liebest, thou mayst love.

Er, sie, or es liebt, or liebet,  
he, she, or it loves, does  
love, or is loving.

Er liebe, he may love.

*Plural.**Plural.*

Wir lieben, we love, do love,  
or are loving.

Wir lieben, we may love.

Ihr liebt, or liebet, you love.

Ihr liebet, you may love.

Sie lieben, they love.

Sie lieben, they may love.

*Sing.* }

IMPERFECT.

{ *Sing.*

Ich liebte, I loved, did love,  
or was loving.

Ich liebete, I might love.

Du liebtest, thou lovedst.

Du liebtest, thou mightst love

Er liebte, he loved.

Er liebete, he might love.

*Plural.**Plural.*

Wir liebten, we loved, did  
love, or were loving.

Wir liebten, we might love.

Ihr liebtet, you loved.

Ihr liebetet, you might love.

Sie liebten, they loved.

Sie liebten, they might love.

*Sing.* }

PERFECT.

{ *Sing.*

Ich habe geliebt, or geliebet,  
I have loved.

Ich habe geliebt, I may have  
loved.

Du hast geliebt, thou hast  
loved.

Du habest geliebt, thou mayst  
have loved.

Er hat geliebt, he has loved.

Er habe geliebt, he may have  
loved.

INDICATIVE,

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

Wir haben geliebt, we have loved.

Ihr habt geliebt, you have loved.

Sie haben geliebt, they have loved.

Wir haben geliebt, we may have loved.

Ihr habet geliebt, you may have loved.

Sie haben geliebt, they may have loved.

*Sing. }*

PLUPERFECT.

*{ Sing.*

Ich hatte geliebt, I had loved.

Du hättest geliebt, thou hadst loved.

Er hatte geliebt, he had loved.

Ich hätte geliebt, I might have loved.

Du hättest geliebt, thou mightst have loved.

Er hätte geliebt, he might have loved.

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

Wir hatten geliebt, we had loved.

Ihr hättet geliebt, you had loved.

Sie hatten geliebt, they had loved.

Wir hätten geliebt, we might have loved.

Ihr hättet geliebt, you might have loved.

Sie hätten geliebt, they might have loved.

*Sing. }*

FIRST FUTURE.

*{ Sing.*

Ich werde lieben, I shall love.

Du wirst lieben, thou wilt love.

Er wird lieben, he will love.

Ich werde lieben, I shall love.

Du werdest lieben, thou wilt love.

Er werde lieben, he will love.

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

Wir werden lieben, we shall love.

Ihr werdet lieben, you will love.

Sie werden lieben, they will love.

Wir werden lieben, we shall love.

Ihr werdet lieben, you will love.

Sie werden lieben, they will love.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Sing. }*

SECOND FUTURE.

*{ Sing.*Ich werde geliebt haben, I  
shall have loved.Du wirst geliebt haben, thou  
wilt have loved.Er wird geliebt haben, he  
will have loved.Ich werde geliebt haben, I  
shall have loved.Du werdest geliebt haben,  
thou wilt have loved.Er werde geliebt haben, he  
will have loved.*Plural.**Plural.*Wir werden geliebt haben,  
we shall have loved.Ihr werdet geliebt haben,  
you will have loved.Sie werden geliebt haben,  
they will have loved.Wir werden geliebt haben,  
we shall have loved.Ihr werdet geliebt haben,  
you will have loved.Sie werden geliebt haben,  
they will have loved.*Simp. Sing. }*

CONDITIONAL.

*{ Comp. Sing.*Ich würde lieben, I should  
love.Du würdest lieben, thou  
wouldst love.Er würde lieben, he would  
love.Ich würde geliebt haben, I  
should have loved.Du würdest geliebt haben,  
thou wouldst have loved.Er würde geliebt haben, he  
would have loved.*Plural.**Plural.*Wir würden lieben, we  
should love.Ihr würdet lieben, you  
would love.Sie würden lieben, they  
would love.Wir würden geliebt haben,  
we should have loved.Ihr würdet geliebt haben,  
you would have loved.Sie würden geliebt haben,  
they would have loved.*Sing. }*

IMPERATIVE.

*{ Plural.*

Liebe (du,) love (thou.)

Liebe er, love (he), or let  
him love.

Lasset uns lieben, let us love.

Liebet, liebt (ihr,) or Lieben

Sie, love, or do you love.

Lieben sie, love they, or let  
them love.

So, for exercise, decline Loben, to praise ; Glauben, to believe.

*Obs.* All the tenses of regular verbs, are formed from the infinitive, which always terminates in *en*; as, *lieben*, to love; *glauben*, to believe, &c.; except when this termination is preceded by *l*, or *r*, then the *e* is frequently omitted; as, *lächeln*, to smile; *hindern*, to hinder; instead of *lächeln*, *hindern*.

The following Table exhibits the terminations of the Regular Verbs.

Indicative.}				PRESENT.			{Subjunctive.		
	1 <sup>st</sup> Per.	2 <sup>nd</sup> Per.	3 <sup>rd</sup> Per.	1 <sup>st</sup> Per.	2 <sup>nd</sup> Per.	3 <sup>rd</sup> Per.			
S.	e	st, or est	t	e	est	e			
Pl.	en	t, or et	en	en	et	en			
IMPERFECT.									
	1 <sup>st</sup> .	2 <sup>nd</sup> .	3 <sup>rd</sup> .	1 <sup>st</sup> .	2 <sup>nd</sup> .	3 <sup>rd</sup> .			
S.*	te	test	te	ete	etest	ete			
Pl.	ten	tet	ten	eten	etet	eten			
IMPERATIVE.									
Singular.				Plural.					
		2 <sup>nd</sup> .	3 <sup>rd</sup> .	1 <sup>st</sup> .	2 <sup>nd</sup> .	3 <sup>rd</sup> .			
	....	e	e	en	et, or t	en			
INFINITIVE.				PARTICIPLE.					
Present, en				Present, end					
				Preterite, ge—et, or t					

\* The perfect and pluperfect tenses are formed by the corresponding tenses of the verb *haben*, and the perfect participle; but some neuter verbs take *seyn* instead of *haben*; the first future and simple conditional are formed by *werden* and the present infinitive; the second future and compound of the conditional, by *werden* and the preterite infinitive.

*Practice on the Regular Verbs.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

I esteem,	achten, to esteem.
Thou dost not labor,	arbeiten, to labor.
He banishes,	bannen, to banish.
We do not move,	bewegen, to move.
Do you build?	bauen, to build.
Do they not fear?	befürchten, to fear.

## Imperfect.

I requested,	begehren, to request.
Thou didst not beg,	betteln, to beg.
Did it gleam?	strahlen, to gleam.
We bled,	bluten, to bleed.
Did you form?	bilden, to form.
They did not borrow,	borgen, to borrow.

## Perfect.

Have I not invented?	erfinden, to invent.
Hast thou suffered want?	barben, to suffer want.
He has served,	dienen, to serve.
It has not threatened,	drohen, to threaten.
Has she failed?	fehlen, to fail.
We have questioned,	fragen, to question.
You have not felt,	fühlen, to feel.
Have they not doubled?	doppeln, to double.

## Pluperfect.

I had not ended,	endigen, to end.
Thou hadst fettered,	fesseln, to fether.
Had she borne?	dulden, to bear.
Had he not listened?	hören, to listen.
We had not believed,	glauben, to believe.
Had you rubbed?	reiben, to rub.
Had they not spelt?	buchstabieren, to spell.

First and Second Future.

Shall I not smile ?	lächeln, to smile.
Wilt thou not have improved ?	bessern, to improve.
It will not drop,	tropfen, to drop.
She will have cleansed,	reinigen, to cleanse.
We shall not have mixed,	mischen, to mix.
You will have whetted,	wegen, to whet.
Will they have lighted ?	leuchten, to light.

CONDITIONAL ; Simple and Compound.

Should I not have stretched ?	dehnen, to stretch.
Wouldst thou not lead ?	führen, to lead.
Would she not have polished ?	poliren, to polish.
We would have sharpened,	schärfen, to sharpen.
You would not have quenched,	löschen, to quench.
They would have spared,	missen, to spare.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present and Imperfect.

I may not weaken,	schwächen, to weaken
Thou mayst not inherit,	erben, to inherit.
He may conquer,	erobern, to conquer.
She might explain,	erklären, to explain.
We might not hear,	hören, to hear.
You may hunt,	jagen, to hunt.
They might hew,	hauen, to hew.

Perfect and Pluperfect.

I may not have hoped,	hoffen, to hope.
Thou mightst have buttoned,	knöpfen, to button.
He may have learnt,	lernen, to learn.
She might not have loved,	lieben, to love.
We might have denied,	läugnen, to deny.
You may have lived.	leben, to live.
They might have mentioned,	melden, to mention.



## Future and Conditional.

I shall mitigate,	milbern, to mitigate.
Thou wilt mean,	meinen, to mean.
He will not envy,	neiden, to envy.
She would profit,	nützen, to profit.
We should not plant,	pflanzen, to plant.
You will polish,	poliren, to polish.
They will prove,	prüfen, to prove.

## IMPERATIVE.

Do not rob,	rauben, to rob.
Reckon,	rechnen, to reckon.
Paint they, or let them paint,	schildern, to paint.

## Irregular Verbs.

## Conjugation of the Irregular Verb Sehen, to see.

## Infinitive.

## Part. Pres.

Pres. Sehen, to see.

Sehend, seeing; or ein Se-

Pret. Gesehen haben, to  
have seen.

hender, one who is seeing.

Part. Perf. Gesehen, seen.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## Singular. }

## PRESENT.

## { Singular.

Ich sehe, I see.

Ich sehe, I may see.

Du siehst, or siehst, thou  
seest.

Du siehst, thou mayst see.

Er sieht, he sees.

Er sehe, he may see.

## Plural.

## Plural.

Wir sehen, we see.

Wir sehen, we may see.

Ihr sehet, you see.

Ihr sehet, you may see.

Sie sehen, they see.

Sie sehen, they may see.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Sing. }*

IMPERFECT.

*{ Sing.*

Ich sah, I saw.

Ich sähe, I might see.

Du sahst, or sahst, thou  
sawest.

Du sähest, thou mightst see.

Er sah, he saw,

Er sähe, he might see.

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

Wir sahen, we saw.

Wir sähen, we might see.

Ihr sahet, you saw.

Ihr sähet, you might see.

Sie sahen, they saw.

Sie sähen, they might see.

*Sing. }*

PERFECT.

*{ Sing.*

Ich habe gesehen, I have  
seen.

Ich habe gesehen, I may have  
seen.

Du hast gesehen, thou, &c.

Du habest gesehen, thou, &c.

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

Wir haben gesehen, we have  
seen.

Wir haben gesehen, we may  
have seen.

Ihr habet, or habt gesehen, &c.

Ihr habet gesehen, &c.

*Sing. }*

PLUPERFECT.

*{ Sing.*

Ich hatte gesehen, I had  
seen.

Ich hätte gesehen, I might  
have seen.

Du hättest gesehen, thou, &c.

Du hättest gesehen, thou, &c.

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

Wir hatten gesehen, we had  
seen.

Wir hätten gesehen, we might  
have seen.

Ihr hättet gesehen, you, &c.

Ihr hättet gesehen, you, &c.

*Sing. }*

FIRST FUTURE.

*{ Sing.*

Ich werde sehen, I shall see.

Ich werde sehen, I shall see.

Du wirst sehen, thou wilt see.

Du werdest sehen, thou wilt  
see.

## INDICATIVE.

*Plural.*

Wir werden sehen, we shall see.

Ihr werdet sehen, you, &amp;c.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Plural.*

Wir werden sehen, we shall see.

Ihr werdet sehen, you will see.

*Sing. }*

## SECOND FUTURE.

*{ Sing.*

Ich werde gesehen haben, I shall have seen.

Du wirst gesehen haben, &amp;c.

Ich werde gesehen haben, I shall have seen.

Du werdest gesehen haben, &amp;c.

*Plural.*

Wir werden gesehen haben, we shall have seen.

Ihr werdet gesehen haben, &amp;c.

*Plural.*

Wir werden gesehen haben, we shall have seen.

Ihr werdet gesehen haben, &amp;c.

*Simple Sing. }*

## CONDITIONAL.

*{ Comp. Sing.*

Ich würde sehen, I should see.

Du würdest sehen, &amp;c.

Ich würde gesehen haben, I should have been.

Du würdest gesehen haben, &amp;c.

*Plural.*

Wir würden sehen, we should see.

Ihr würdet sehen, &amp;c.

*Plural.*

Wir würden gesehen haben, we should have seen.

Ihr würdet gesehen haben, &amp;c.

*Sing. }*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*{ Plural.*

Sieh, or siehe (du,) see (thou.)

Sehe er, let him see.

Lasset uns sehen, let us see.

Sehet (ihr,) or sehen Sie, see (ye, or you.)

Sehen sie, let them see.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

*The Irregular Verbs form four Divisions.*

## FIRST DIVISION,

Verbs in this division take *te* in the imperfect, and *t* in the participle; with some changes in the root; as,

<i>Inf.</i> Brennen, to burn.	<i>Part.</i> Gebrannt, burnt.
<i>Ind. Pres.</i> Ich brenne, &c.	<i>Imperf.</i> Ich brannte, &c.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i> Ich brenne, &c.	<i>Imperf.</i> Ich brennete, or
So form,	brannte, &c.
<i>Kennen</i> , to know.	<i>Senden</i> , to send.
<i>Rennen</i> , to call, or name.	<i>Wenden</i> , to turn.
<i>Rennen</i> , to run.	

*Ind.* Bringen, to bring. *Part.* Gebracht, brought.

*Ind. Pres.* Ich bringe. *Imperf.* Ich brachte.

*Sub. Imperf.* Ich brächte.

*Inf.* Denken, to think. *Part.* Gedacht, thought.

*Ind. Pres.* Ich denke. *Imperf.* Ich dachte.

*Sub. Imperf.* Ich dächte.

*Inf.* Dürfen, to dare. *Part.* Gedurft, dared.

*Ind. Pres.* Ich darf, du darfst, er darf. *Plural.* Wir dürfen, ihr dürfet, sie dürfen. *Sub. Pres.* Ich dürfe. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich durfte. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich dürfte.

*Inf.* Wissen, to know. *Part.* Gewußt, known.

*Ind. Pres.* Ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß. *Plural.* Wir wissen, ihr wisset. *Sub. Pres.* Ich wisse. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich wußte. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich wüßte.

---

SECOND DIVISION.

*First Class.*

These verbs have a in the infinitive and participle, ie in the imperfect; the vowel a changed into á, or æ in the second and third persons singular; as,

*Inf.* Blasen, to blow. *Part.* Geblasen, blown.

*Ind. Pres.* Ich blase, du bläsest, er bläset, or bläst.

*Plural.* Wir blasen, &c. *Imperf.* Ich blies. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich bliese. *Imper.* Blase. So:

*Braten*, to roast. *Fallen*, to fall. *Halten*, to hold. *Lassen* to let. *Laufen*, to run. *Rathen*, to advise. *Schlafen*, to sleep.

*Hauen*, to hew, makes hieb in the imperfect.

*Hängen*, to hang; *fangen*, to catch; take *i* instead of *e* in the imperfect. *Falten*, to fold; *salzen*, to salt; *spalten*, to split, are regular except in the participle.

### Second Class.

These verbs have *a* in the infinitive and participle; *u* in the imperfect: the vowel changed as before.

*Inf.* Graben, to dig. *Part.* Gegraben, dug.

*Ind. Pres.* Ich grabe, du gräbest, er gräbt; wir graben, &c. *Imp.* Ich grub.

*Sub. Pres.* Ich grabe. *Imperf. Sub.* Ich grübe. So:

*Baden*, to bake. *Fahren*, to ride in a carriage, to move. *Laden*, to load. *Schlagen*, to beat. *Schaffen*, to create. *Tragen*, to carry. *Wachsen*, to grow. *Waschen*, to wash.

*Mahlen*, to paint, is regular; but *mahlen*, to grind, is irregular.

### Third Class.

These verbs have *e* in the infinitive and participle, and take *a* in the imperfect, &c.; as,

*Inf.* Essen, to eat. *Part.* Gessessen, eaten.

*Ind. Pres.* Ich esse, du issest, er isset, or ißt; wir essen, ihr esset, sie essen. *Imperf.* Ich aß, du aßest, er aß; wir aßen, &c. *Sub. Pres.* Ich esse. *Imperf.* Ich aße. *Imper.* Iß. So:

*Fressen*, to devour, or eat. *Geben*, to give. *Messen*, to measure. *Treten*, to tread. *Vergessen*, to forget.

*Sehen*, to see; *lesen*, to read; take *e* instead of *i*, in the indicative present, and imperative; so, likewise, *geschehen*, to happen, in the present; but it is seldom used in the imperative. *Genesen*, to recover, is regular in the indicative present.

### THIRD DIVISION.

In this division the imperfect and participle have the same vowel.

#### First Class.

These verbs have *e* in the infinitive, and *i* in the imperfect and participle; as,

*Inf.* Sich befehlen, to apply oneself, to be diligent.

*Part.* Beßßen, applied. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich beßß mich. So,

Beßen, to bite. Erbleichen, to grow pale. Gleichen, to equal. Reissen, to tear. Schleichen, to sneak. Schmeissen, to sling, to throw, to fall violently. Streichen, to stroke. Weichen, to yield.

Some double the consonant of the root; as,

*Inf.* Reissen, to chide. *Part.* Gessissen, chidden, or chid. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich riss. So:

Gleiten, to glide. Greissen, to seize. Kneissen, to pinch; or, Kneipen, to pinch. Reiten, to ride. Pfeissen, to whistle. \*Schleissen, to grind, sharpen, cut, polish, demolish. Schreiten, to stride. Streiten, to contend.

Leiden, to suffer, and schneiden, to cut, change the *d* of the infinitive into *tt*; as, *Imperf.* Ich litt, &c. *Part.* Gelitten, suffered, &c.

Some take *ie* instead of *i*; as,

*Inf.* Bleiben, to remain. *Part.* Geblieben, remained. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich blieb. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich bleibe. So:

Gebeihen, to prosper. Leihen, to lend. Reiben, to avoid. Preisen, to praise. Reiben, to rub. Scheinen, to appear. Scheiden, to part. Schreiben, to write. Schreien, to cry. Schweigen, to be silent. Steigen, to mount. Treiben, to drive. Weissen, to show. Zeihen, to accuse of.

### Second Class.

These verbs have *ie*, or *i*, and sometimes *ü*, in the infinitive, *o* in the imperfect and participle: *ß* in the imperfect subjunctive; as,

*Inf.* Betriegen, or betrügen, to deceive. *Part.* Betrogen, deceived. *Ind. Pres.* Ich betriege, du betriegest, er betriegt, (ich betrüge, du betrügst, er betrügt.) *Ind. Imperf.* Ich betrog. *Subj. Imperf.* Ich betröge. *Imper.* Betriege, in poetry, betrüge. So:

Biegen†, to bend. *Part.* Gebogen†. Biethen, or bieten, to bid. Fliegen, to fly. Fliehen, to flee. Fliesen, to flow. Frieren,

\* Schleissen, to drag, is regular.

† Some few, which have *ie* in the infinitive, change the *ie* in the second and third persons of the present indicative into *eu* in poetry, and in a higher style of writing; as, *Ind. Pres.* du beugst, (instead of du biegtst), er beugt, (instead of er biegt.)

‡ These verbs, like most others, take the augment *ge* for the participle; as, *Inf.* Biegen, to bend. *Part.* Gebogen, bent.

to freeze. Gebieten, to command. Genießen, to enjoy. Gleichen, to glisten. Glimmen, to glimmer. Klimmen, to climb. Klieben, to cleave. Kriechen, to creep. Lügen, to lie. Niesen, to smell. Schieben, to push, shove. Schießen, to shoot. Schließen, to slip. Schließen, to shut. Sprießen, to sprout, shoot. Stieben, to rise, to fly off. Trügen, to cheat. Verlieren, to lose. Verwirren, to confuse. Wiegen, to weigh. Ziehen, to draw.

Sieden, to boil, changes the *d* into *tt* ; as,  
*Ind. Imperf.* Ich *sott*, &c. *Part.* Gesotten.

### Third Class.

These verbs have *e*, *ä*, or *ö*, in the infinitive, *i* in the second and third persons singular of the present, *o* in the imperfect and participle : *ö* in the imperfect subjunctive, *i* in the imperative ; as,

*Inf.* Fechten, to fight. *Part.* Gefochten.

*Ind. Pres.* Ich *fechte*, du *sichst*, er *sicht* ; wir *fechten*, &c.

*Imperf.* Ich *föcht*.

*Subj. Imperf.* Ich *föchte*. *Imper.* *Ficht* (or *fechte*.) So :

Dreschen, to thresh. Erlöschen, to extinguish.\* Flechten, to plait. Quellen, to spring. Scheren, to shear. Schmelzen, to melt. Schwellen, to swell. Verlöschen, to expire.

The following neither change in the present indicative, nor in the imperative.

Bewegen, to move. Erwägen, to weigh, or consider. Gären, to ferment. Heben, to heave. Melken, to milk. Pflegen, to nurse. Schwären, to fester. Schwören, to swear. Wägen, to weigh.

### FOURTH DIVISION.

In this division the infinitive, imperfect and participle, have different vowels.

### First Class.

These verbs have *e* in the infinitive, *i* in the second and third persons of the present indicative, *a* in the imperfect : *o* in the participle, *ä*, or *ü* in the imperfect subjunctive, and *i* in the imperative ; as,

*Inf.* Bergen, to conceal. *Part.* Geborgen, concealed.

*Ind. Pres.* Ich berge, du birgst, er birgt; wir bergen, &c.  
*Imperf.* Ich barg. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich bärge. *Imper.* Birg;  
 So:

Brechen, to break. Erschrecken, to frighten. Stechen, to stab, to prick. Sprechen, to speak. Treffen, to hit. Nehmen, to take; makes nimm in the imperative.

The following verbs have either \*ö, or ä in the subjunctive; as,

Gelten; to be worth. *Imperf. Subj.* Ich gölte, or gälte.  
 So:

Versten, to burst. Gebähren, to bear, or bring forth. Schelten, to scold. Stehlen, to steal.

The following verbs change the ä into ü; as,

Helfen, to help. *Sub Imperf.* Hülfe, (or hälfe.) So:  
 Sterben, to die. Verbergen, to conceal. Verderben, to spoil.  
 Werben, to sue for. Werden, to become. Werfen, to throw.

### Second Class.

These verbs have i in the infinitive, a in the imperfect indicative, ö in the imperfect subjunctive, and o in the participle; as,

*Inf.* Rinnen, to run, to drop. *Part.* Geronnen, run.  
*Ind. Imperf.* Ich rann. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich rönne, or ränne.  
 So:—

Beginnen, to begin. Besinnen, to bethink. Gewinnen, to gain. Schwimmen, to swim. Sinnen, to think, or meditate. Spinnen, to spin.

But most verbs that have the infinitive in i, have the imperfect subjunctive in ä; as,

*Inf.* Binden, to bind. *Part.* Gebunden, bound.

*Ind. Imperf.* Ich band. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich bände. So:

Dringen, to press. Empfinden, to perceive. Finden, to find. Gelingen, to succeed. Klingen, to sound. Klingen, to wrestle. Schlucken, to swallow. Schwinden, to disappear. Schwingen, to swing. Singen, to sing. Sinken, to sink. Springen, to spring. Stinken, to stink. Trinken, to drink. Winden, to wind. Zwingen, to force.

---

\* The vowels a, o, u, in the imperfect indicative, are generally changed into ä, ö, ü respectively, in the imperfect subjunctive.



**Schünden**, to slay, takes *it* instead of *ä* in the imperfect subjunctive ; as,

*Sub. Imperf.* Ich schünde, so also bingen, to bargain, but it is generally regular.

*The following Verbs come under no particular Rule.*

*Inf.* Bitten, to pray. *Part.* Gebeten, prayed.

*Ind. Imperf.* Ich bat. *Subj. Imperf.* Ich bâte.

**Erschallen**, to resound. *Part.* Erschollen, resounded.

*Ind. Imperf.* Ich erscholl. *Subj. Imperf.* Ich erschölle.

**Gehen**, to go. *Part.* Gegangen, gone.

**Heißen**, to bid. *Part.* Geheißen, bidden. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich hieß.

**Liegen**, to lie. *Part.* Gelegen, lain. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich lag. *Subj. Imperf.* Ich läge.

**Rufen**, to call. *Part.* Gerufen, called. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich rief.

**Saufen**, to drink hard, (like a beast.) *Part.* Gesoffen, drunk hard. *Ind. Pres.* Ich saufe, du säufst, er säuft ; wir saufen, &c. *Imperf.* Ich soff. *Subj. Imperf.* Ich söffe. *Imper.* Sauf.

**Saugen**, to suck. *Part.* Gesogen, sucked. *Ind. Pres.* Ich sauge, du säugst, er säugt ; wir saugen. *Imperf.* Ich sog. *Subj. Imperf.* Ich söge. *Imper.* Sauge.

**Schrauben**, to screw. *Part.* Geschrieben, screwed. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich schrob. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich schröbe.

**Sitzen**, to sit. *Part.* Gesessen, sat. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich saß. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich säße.

**Stehen**, to stand. *Part.* Gestanden, stood. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich stand. *Subj. Imperf.* Ich stände (or stünde).

**Stoßen**, to thrust. *Part.* Gestossen, thrust. *Ind. Pres.* Ich stoße, du stößest, er stößt ; wir stoßen. *Imperf.* Ich stieß. *Sub. Imperf.* Ich stieße. *Imper.* Stöß.

**Thun**, to do, or to make. *Part.* Gethan, done, or made. *Ind. Imperf.* Ich that. *Subj. Imperf.* Ich thäte.

*Obs.* In the preceding and following lists of irregular verbs, the author has frequently introduced antiquated, and, in some instances, obsolete words, as well as the new and old modes of spelling, in order that the student may be enabled to read the ancient as well as the modern authors.

# A LIST OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS IN ALPHABETICAL ORDER.

Infinitive.	PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.			Participle.
	Indicative.		Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imperative.	
*Bäcken, to bake, to be baking .. ..	ich bäcke, I bake; du bäckst, thou bakes; er bäckt, he bakes; wir bäcken, we bake .. ..	.. ..	ich back, or backst, I back .. ..	ich bäcke, might bake .. ..	backe (du), thou bake .. ..	gebäcken, baked .. ..
Bedingen, to contract .. ..	.. .. bedinge, du bedingst, er bedingt .. ..	.. ..	.. .. bedung .. ..	.. .. bedänge .. ..	bedinge .. ..	bedungen .. ..
Befehlen, to command .. ..	.. .. befehle, du befehlst, er befehlt .. ..	.. ..	.. .. befehl, or befohl .. ..	.. .. befehle, or befohle .. ..	befiehl .. ..	befohlen .. ..
Befleifsen, (sich re- flective) to study, or apply oneself .. ..	.. .. befeleise mich, du befeleisest dich, er befeleist sich .. ..	.. ..	.. .. befeis mich .. ..	.. .. befeisse mich .. ..	befieße dich .. ..	befleissen .. ..
Beginnen, to begin .. ..	.. .. beginne, du beginnst, er beginnt .. ..	.. ..	.. .. begann, or begonne .. ..	.. .. begänne, or begönne .. ..	beginne .. ..	begonnen, or begun .. ..
*Befleimmen, pinch .. ..	.. .. befleimme, &c. .. ..	.. ..	.. .. befleimm .. ..	.. .. befleümme .. ..	befleimme .. ..	befleommen .. ..
*Beißen, to bite .. ..	.. .. beiße, or ich beiße, &c. .. ..	.. ..	.. .. biß .. ..	.. .. biße .. ..	beiße, or beiße .. ..	gebissen .. ..
*Bellen, to bark .. ..	.. .. belle, du biffst, er biff .. ..	.. ..	.. .. bell .. ..	.. .. bölle .. ..	belle .. ..	gebollen .. ..
Bergen, to conceal, to save a wreck .. ..	.. .. berge, du birgst, er birgt .. ..	.. ..	.. .. barg .. ..	.. .. bürge, or bürge .. ..	birg, or birge .. ..	birge .. ..
*Bersten, to burst .. ..	.. .. berste, du berstest, or birstest, er berstet, or birstet, &c. .. ..	.. ..	.. .. barst, or barst .. ..	.. .. bürste, or bürste .. ..	birst, or berste .. ..	berstet, or berstet .. ..

\* Ob. 1. Those verbs marked with one asterisk, as \*, are regular in an active sense, and those marked with two asterisks, as \*\*, are always regular in high German.

2. Compound verbs are mostly conjugated like simple verbs; but some that are irregular, as simple verbs, are regular when compounded; vide observations on compound verbs in a subsequent part of the Grammar.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<b>PRESENT.</b>		<b>IMPERFECT.</b>			<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
	<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>			
Befinnen, (sich <i>re-</i> <i>flexive</i> ) to re- collect .. ..	ich besinne mich, du besinnest dich, &c. ..		ich besann, or besonn mich	ich besänne, or besänne mich	besinne dich	besonnen	
Besitzen, to possess .. ..	.. besitze, &c. ..		.. besaß	.. besäße	besitze	besessen	
Betrügen, or be- trügen, to cheat, .. ..	.. betrichest, du betriegst, er betriegt		.. betrog	.. betrüge	betriche, or betrüge	betrogen	
deceive, defraud .. ..	.. betrügst, du betrügst, er betrügt		..	..			
†Bewegen, to move .. ..	.. bewege, &c. ..		.. bewog	.. bewöge	bewege	bewogen	
to induce, to persuade .. ..	..		..	..			
Biegen, to bend, to .. ..	.. biege, du biegest, er biegt		.. bog	.. böge	biege, or biegegebogen	gebogen	
bow .. ..	..		..	..			
Bieten, or biethen, .. ..	.. biete, du bietest, er bietet, or, ich biethen, ..		.. bot, or both	.. böte, or böthe	biete, or ethen	geboden, or ge-	
to bid for, to offer .. ..	.. bu biethest, er biethet		..	..	ethen	bothen	
Binden, to bind .. ..	.. binde, du bindest, er bindet		.. band	.. bände	binde	gebunden	
Bitten, to beg, ask, .. ..	.. bitte, du bittest, er bittet		.. bat, or bath	.. bäte, or bäthe	bitte	gebeten, or ge-	
entreat, solicit .. ..	..		..	..		beten	
Blasen, to blow .. ..	.. blase, du blästest, er bläset, or bläst		.. blies	.. bliese	blase, or blasgeblasen	geblasen	
Bleiben, to remain .. ..	.. bleibe, &c. ....		.. blieb	.. bliebe	bleibe, or bleib	geblieben	
*Bleichen, to bleach, .. ..	.. bleiche, &c. ..		.. blüch	.. blüche	blüch	gebleichen	
to be bleached .. ..	..		..	..			

† *Obs.* *Bewegen*, to move, is irregular in a moral sense, and regular in a physical sense.

*Braten, to roast; ( <i>reg. when active.</i> )	ich brate, du bratest, er brätet, (or ich brät, du brätst, er brät)	.. brät	.. briet	or ich bratete, or ich brätete	or bratete, or brätete	brich	gebrochen
Brechen, to break	.. - - breche, du brichst, er bricht, wir brechen	.. - - brach	.. - - brähe	.. - - brähte	.. - - brähte	brenne	gebrannt
*Brennen, to burn	.. - - brenne, &c.	.. - - brenne	.. - - brennte	.. - - brennte	.. - - brennte	bringe	gebrennet
Bringen, to bring	.. - - bringe, du bringst, er bringt	.. - - brächte	.. - - brächte	.. - - brächte	.. - - brächte	bringe	gebracht
Däuchten, to appear, to seem ( <i>impers.</i> )	mir, it seems to me	.. - - dächte	.. - - dächte	.. - - dächte	.. - - dächte	(no imper.)	gedäucht
Denken, to think	ich denke, du denkst, er denkt	.. - - dachte	.. - - dachte	.. - - dachte	.. - - dachte	denke	gedacht
*Dingen, to bargain, to hire, to haggle	.. - - dinge, &c.	.. - - dinge	.. - - dinge	.. - - dinge	.. - - dinge	bringe	gebungen
Dreschen, to thresh, or thrash	.. - - dresche, du dreschest, er dreschet, drescht, or du dreschest, er dreschet	.. - - dreschte	.. - - dreschte	.. - - dreschte	.. - - dreschte	brich	gedroschen
Dringen, to throng, to urge, penetrate	.. - - dringe, du dringest, er dringet	.. - - drang	.. - - drang	.. - - drang	.. - - drang	bringe	gebrungen
Dürfen, to dare	.. - - darf, du darfst, er darf, wir dürfen	.. - - durfte	.. - - durfte	.. - - durfte	.. - - durfte	....	gebürst
Empfangen, to receive, get	Pres. Sub. ich dürfe	.. - - empfang	.. - - empfang	.. - - empfang	.. - - empfang	empfang	empfangen
Empfehlen, to commend, command	.. - - empfehle, du empfehlest, er empfiehlt	.. - - empfahl	.. - - empfahl	.. - - empfahl	.. - - empfahl	empfehl	empfohlen
Empfinden, to feel, to perceive	.. - - empfinde, &c.	.. - - empfand	.. - - empfand	.. - - empfand	.. - - empfand	empfind	empfund
Entinnen, to escape	.. - - entinne, &c.	.. - - entran	.. - - entran	.. - - entran	.. - - entran	entrinne	entronnen
Erbleichen, to turn pale, to expire	.. - - erbleiche, &c.	.. - - erblich	.. - - erblich	.. - - erblich	.. - - erblich	erbleiche	erbläßen

Infinitive.	PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.		Imperative.	Participle.
	Indicative.		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
Erstehen, or erstehen, ich ersteh, &c.	..	..	ich ersteh, erstehre	ich erstehre	ersteh	erstanden or erstohren.
• Erstehen, to ex-	- - - - -	- - - - -	- - - - -	- - - - -	ersteh	erstanden
tinguish, or be-	erlösch, or erlösch	..	..	..	..	..
come extinct ..	..	..	..	..	..	..
• Erschallen, (imper-	..	..	..	..	..	..
sonal) to resound	• Erschallen, to sound, is regular	..	..	..	..	..
† Erschrecken, to be	ich erschrecke, du erschreckst, er erschreckt, wir erschrecken	..	ich erschrecke, du erschreckst, er erschreckt, wir erschrecken	ich erschrecke, du erschreckst, er erschreckt, wir erschrecken	erschrecke, or erschreck	erschrocken
terrified, or fright-	..	..	..	..	..	..
ened ..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Erwägen, to consid-	- - - - -	- - - - -	- - - - -	- - - - -	erwäge	erwogen
er, or weigh ..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Essen, to eat ..	- - - - -	- - - - -	- - - - -	- - - - -	..	gegessen
† Fahren, to ride in	- - - - -	- - - - -	- - - - -	- - - - -	..	..
a carriage, to go	..	..	..	..	..	..
fallen, to fall, drop	- - - - -	- - - - -	- - - - -	- - - - -	..	..
fallen, to fold ..	..	..	..	..	..	..

† Obs. 1. Erschrecken, to frighten, or terrify, is regular.

† 2. The compound willfahren, to grant, to agree, is regular; but the other compounds of fahren, are irregular.

Gangen, to catch ..	ich fange, du fängst, er fängt ..	... = fing, or fang	= finge, fienge	or fange	gefangen
Gedanken to sight, or ..	- fassen, du fassst, er sieht, or du sehest, et- fessst.	... = fing, or fang	- - - fänge	sechte, or sich gefochten	
Fische, to find ..	- finden, du findest, er findet, or sindt ..	... = fand	- - - fände	finde, or sind gefunden	
es fischen, to plait ..	- fischen, du fischst, er fische, or du fischst ..	... = fische	- - - fische	fische, or fische gefischten	
twist, fold ..	... = facht.				
fliegen, to fly (active ..)	- fliegen, du fliegst, er fliegt ..	... = flog	- - - flöge	fliege (fleg)	gefliegen
swings) ..	(Poet. du fliegst, er fliegt) ..	...	...	...	...
fliehen, to flee, to ..	- fliehen, du fliehst, er flieht ..	... = flohe or	- - - flöhe	or fliehe, or fliehe geflohen	
run away ..	(Poet. du fliehst, er fliehet) ..	... = floch	- - - flöche	(fleich)	
fließen, to flow, run ..	- fließen, du fließest, er fließt ..	... = floss	- - - flösse	or fließe, or fließe geflossen	
(of liquids) ..	(Poet. du fließest, er fließt) ..	...	...	...	...
† fragen, to ask ..	- fragen, du fragest, er fragt ..	... = fragte, or frag	- - - fragte	or frage	gefragten
fr essen, eat, devour ..	- fressen, du frisst, er frisset, or frist ..	... = fraß	- - - fräße	friß	gefressen
frözen, to freeze ..	- frözen, du frözeest, er fröret, or du ..	... = froz	- - - fröze	fröze	gefroren
frözen, to freeze ..	fröze, er frözet ..	...	...	...	...
gähren, to ferment ..	- gähren, du gährst, or du gierst, eases gahr	... = gähr	- - - gähre	gähre	gegohren
gähren, to bring ..	gähret ..	...	...	...	...
farth ..	- gebären, du gebärst, (or gebierest), erich gebär	...	...	ich gebäre, or ge-geboren	
Geben, to give ..	gebärt, (or gebiert) ..	...	...	gebäre	hier
	- geben, du gibst, er giebt, or bu ..	... = gab	- - - gäbe	gib, or gib	gegeben
	gibst, er gibt ..	...	...	...	...

† Obs. The best authors make fragen, regular, and write du fragst, er fragt, &c.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<b>PRESENT.</b>		<b>IMPERFECT.</b>		<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
	<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>		
Gebieten, or gebieten, du gebietest, er gebietest, (Poet. du gebeust, er gebeut)	..	..	ich gebot, or ich geboth	ich geböte, or geböthe	gebiete, or geböthe	geböten, or geböthen
*Geben, to give, or to present, &c.	..	..	..	..	gebe, or geböthe	gebend, or gebend
Gefallen, to please	..	..	..	..	gefalle, or geböthe	gefalle, or geböthe
Gehen, to go, to walk	..	..	..	..	gehe, or geböthe	gehend, or gebend
Gelingen, (impers.) to succeed, or prosper	..	..	..	..	gelingt, or geböthe	gelingend, or gebend
Gelten, to be worth, to cost, to be valid	..	..	..	..	gilt, or geböthe	geltend, or gebend
Genesen, to recover (from illness)	..	..	..	..	gene, or geböthe	genend, or gebend
Genießen, to enjoy	..	..	..	..	genieße, or geböthe	genießend, or gebend
Gerathen, to meet with, to hit upon	..	..	..	..	geräthe, or geböthe	gerathend, or gebend

† *Obs.* *Poet.* stands for *poetically*. The author has introduced the poetical forms of those verbs, which are not to be found in small dictionaries.

Geseheßen, to happen	ich gesehe, bu gesehest, er gesehet, es geschah or bu gesehest, es geseht	.. ..	ich geseh	es gesehe	gesehen
Geseßen, to confess,	.. ..	.. ..	ich geseh	geseh	gesehen
own .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..
Gewinnen, to gain,	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	gewinne	gewonnen
to win .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..
Gießen, to pour, to	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	gieße, or	gegossen
spill .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	göße	.. ..
Gleichen, to resemble	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	gleich	geglichen
Gleiten, to glide	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	gleite	gegitten
Glimmen, to shine	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	glitte	geglimmen
to glimmer .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	glumm	.. ..
Gönnen, to be pleas-	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	gönne	gegönneten, or
ed with, to favor	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	gönnte	gegönnt
Graben, to dig	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	grabe, or	graben
Greifen, to seize,	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	greife, or	gegriffen
grasp, lay hold of	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	griffe	.. ..
haben, to have	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	habe	gehabt
halten, to hold	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	halte, or	gehalten
hangen, to hang	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	hänge	gehangen
hauen, to hew, or	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	hau	gehauen
cut .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	hau	.. ..
heben, to heave, to	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	hebe, or	gehoben
lift, to raise .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	hübe	.. ..

+ Söngen, to hang up, suspend, preserves the diphthong, and is regular. To hang, on the gallows, is hengen, which is also regular.



Infinitive.	PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.		Imperative.	Participle.
	Indicative.		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
heißen, to bid, name,	ich heiße, du heissest, er heisst	..	ich hieß	ich hieße	heisse, or heissest	heissend
to be named, call	..	..	..	..	..	..
heissen, to help	..	..	..	..	..	..
Pr. Sub. ich helfe, du helfest, er helfe	..	..	..	..	..	..
Reissen, chide, scold	..	..	..	..	..	..
Reissen, to know, to	..	..	..	..	..	..
be acquainted with	..	..	..	..	..	..
Reissen, to cleave	..	..	..	..	..	..
Reissen, to climb	..	..	..	..	..	..
Reissen, to sound	..	..	..	..	..	..
Reissen, to pinch	..	..	..	..	..	..
Reissen, to pinch	..	..	..	..	..	..
Reissen, to come	..	..	..	..	..	..
Reissen, to be able	..	..	..	..	..	..
Reissen, to creep	..	..	..	..	..	..
Reissen, to chuse	..	..	..	..	..	..
Reissen, to load	..	..	..	..	..	..
Reissen, to let, per-	..	..	..	..	..	..
mit, allow, leave,	..	..	..	..	..	..
release	..	..	..	..	..	..



PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.			Imperative.	Participle.
Infinitive.	Indicative.	ich nannte	Subjunctive.			
*Stennen, to name, call .. .. .	ich nenne, du nennst, er nennt ..	ich nannte	ich nennete	nenne, or nenn	genannt	
pfreisen, to whistle	.. - - - pfeise, &c.	.. - - - pfiff	.. - - - pfisse	pfeise, or pfeiß	gepfiffen	
† pflegen, to cherish	.. - - - pflege, du pflegst, er pflicht	.. - - - pflog, or pflog	.. - - - pflege, or pflege	pflege	gepflogen	
wait upon	.. - - - pflege, &c.	.. - - - pfleg, or pfleg	.. - - - pflege, or pflege	pfleise, or pfeise	gepfiesen	
pfreisen, to extol, to praise .. .. .	.. - - - preise, &c.	.. - - - preiße, or preiße	.. - - - preiße	preiße, or preis	gepfiesen	
Quellen, to spring forth, to gush, ( <i>of fluids</i> ) .. .. .	.. - - - quelle du quillst, er quillt <i>Obs. Quellen is used with seyn.</i>	.. - - - quoll	.. - - - quölle	quelle, or quill	gequollen	
**Rächen, to avenge	.. - - - räche, &c.	.. - - - rach	.. - - - räche	räche	gerochen	
Rathen, to advise ..	.. - - - rath, du rathst, or rathest, er rathet, or er rath .. .. .	.. - - - rath	.. - - - riethe	rath, or rath	gerathen	
reiben, to rub ..	.. - - - reibe, du reibst, er reibt	.. - - - rieb	.. - - - riehe	reibe, or reib	gerieben	
reißen, to tear ..	.. - - - reiße, du reißeß, er reißt	.. - - - riß	.. - - - riße	reiße, or reiß	gerissen	
reiten, to ride on horseback .. .. .	.. - - - reite, &c.	.. - - - ritt	.. - - - ritte	reite, or reit	geritten	
†Stennen, to run fast, to rush .. .. .	.. - - - renne, &c.	.. - - - rannte, or rannte	.. - - - rennete	renne	gerannt	
Riechen, to smell ..	.. - - - rieche, &c.	.. - - - roch	.. - - - riehe	rieche, or riech	gerochen	

† pflegen, when it means, *to be wont, or accustomed to*, is regular.  
† Stennen, *to run through*, as an active verb, is regular.

† pflegen, when it means, *to be wont, or accustomed to*, is regular.

† Stennen, *to run through*, as an active verb, is regular.

†ringen, to wrestle	ich ringe, &c.	..	..	ich range	ich range	ringe
Ginnen, to run,	to -- rinne, &c.	..	..	.. -- rann, ronn,	-- ränner,	or rinne, or rinn
drop, (of fluids)				es rannte	rönn	geronnen
Rufen, to call, to cry	-- rufe, &c.	..	..	ich rief	-- rief	gerufen
out	..					
†Salzen, to salt	-- -- salze, &c.	..	..	.. -- salzte	-- -- salzete	gesalzen
Essen, to drink	-- -- laufe, du lauffst, er lauft	..	..	... -- soff	-- -- soffe	gesoffen
hard, to tipple	or du lauffst, er lauft.					
Augen, to suck	-- -- sauge, du saugst, er saugt	..	..	.. -- sog	-- -- söge	gesaugen
*Schaffen, to create	-- -- schaffe, du schaffst, &c.	..	..	.. -- schuf	-- -- schüfte	geschaffen
Scheiden, to separate,	-- -- scheid, &c.	..	..	.. -- schied	-- -- schiede	scheidet, or scheid
to part, to divide						
Scheinen, to appear,	-- -- scheine, &c.	..	..	.. -- schien	-- -- schiene	scheine, or
to shine, to seem						schein
Schelten, to scold, to	-- -- schelte, du schiltst, er schilt, wir schelten	..	..	-- -- schalt	-- -- schälte	schilt
chide, revile						
Scheren, to shear, or	-- -- schere, du scherst, or schierst, er schert,	..	..	-- -- schor	-- -- schöre	schere, or scher
shave	or schiert	..	..	..		geschoren
Schieben, to push, to	-- -- schiebe, du schiebst, er schiebt	..	..	.. -- schob	-- -- schöbe	schiebe, or
shove, to thrust						schieb
Schießen, to shoot,	-- -- schieße, du schießest, er schießt,	..	..	.. -- schoss	-- -- schösse	schieße, or
to move swiftly	(Poet. du schieußt, er schieußt.)					schieß

+ *ringen, to ring*, is regular; and *öffnen, to procure, or get*, is also regular.

† Salzen is regular, except in the participle; however, in an active sense, the participle is regular; as, Die Kochinn hat die Suppe zu stark gesalzt, the cook has salted the soup too much.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.		<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
	<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>		
① schinden, to flay, to skin, to exact ..	..	..	.. ich schund	ich schünde	schinde, or schind	geschunden
② schlafen, to sleep ..	..	..	.. - - schlief	- - schliefe	schlafe, or schlafe	geschlafen
+ ③ schlagen, to beat, to strike, to knock ..	..	..	.. - - schlug	- - schlage	schlage, or schlag	geschlagen
④ schleichen, to sneak ..	..	..	.. - - schlich	- - schliche	schleiche	geschlichen
⑤ schleifen, to grind, to cut, to polish, sharpen ..	..	..	.. - - schliß	- - schließe	schleife, or schleif	geschliffen
⑥ schleiffen, to split, slit, cleave, fray ..	..	..	.. - - schloß	- - schliesse	schleisse, or schleiß	geschloffen
⑦ schließen, to shut, to lock up, to close ..	..	..	.. - - schloß	- - schliesse	schliesse, or schliesse	geschloffen
⑧ drehen, to twist, to wind, sup up, sling ..	..	..	.. - - dreh	- - drehe	(Poet. schreibe.)	gedreht
⑨ schleppen, to throw, fling, fall violently ..	..	..	.. - - schloß	- - schliesse	schlinge	geschlungen
			.. - - schloß	- - schliesse	schmeiße	geschmissen

+ Rathschlagen, and Rathschlagen, to deliberate, to consult, to advise, are regular.  
 || schleifen, when it means, to drag, destroy, efface, raze, demolish, is regular. ;

+ <b>schmelzen</b> , to melt, ich schmelze, du schmeldest, or schmelzest, er schmelzt, or schmelzet, <i>ich schmelze</i>	ich schmelze	schmelze, or schmelze	geschmolzen
<b>dissolve</b> , decay	..	..	geschmolzen
<b>schmelzen</b> , to snort, ..	..	..	geschmolzen
to snuff .. ..	..	..	geschmolzen
<b>schmelzen</b> , to cut	..	..	geschmolzen
<b>schmelzen</b> , to screw	..	..	geschmolzen
<b>schmelzen</b> , to write	..	..	geschmolzen
<b>schmelzen</b> , to cry, ..	..	..	geschmolzen
to scream	..	..	geschmolzen
<b>schmelzen</b> , to stride	..	..	geschmolzen
<b>schmelzen</b> , to fester, es schmelzet	..	..	geschmolzen
to suppurate	..	..	geschmolzen
<b>schmelzen</b> , to be silent, or keep silence	..	..	geschmolzen
<b>schmelzen</b> , to swell	..	..	geschmolzen
<b>schmelzen</b> , to swim	..	..	geschmolzen
<b>schmelzen</b> , to vanish	..	..	geschmolzen
<b>schmelzen</b> , to swing	..	..	geschmolzen
<b>schmelzen</b> , to swear	..	..	geschmolzen
<b>sehen</b> , to see	..	..	gesehen
<b>senden</b> , to send	..	..	geschickt

† Schmelzen, as an active.verb, is regular; as, Die Sonne schmelzet das Wachs, the sun melts wax.

It **Ōñnieben**, the diminutive of **Ōñnuben**, makes **ŷñnob**, &c. **Wit** der **Wafe ŷñnieben**, to sniff.

||| **Senden** is also regular, and makes the imperfect *sendete*, and participle *sendet*.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	PRESENT.		I PERFECT.		<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
	<i>Indicative.</i>		<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>		
Sehn, to be ..	ich bin, du bist, er ist ..	..	ich war	ich wäre	sey	gesehen
† Sieben, to boil ..	-- siebe, &c. ..	..	-- sollt	-- sölte	stehet	gekochen
Singen, to sing ..	-- singe, &c. ..	..	-- sang	-- sänge	singe, or sing	gesungen
Sinken, to sink ..	-- sinke, &c. ..	..	-- sank	-- sänke	sinke	gesunken
Sinnen, to think, to meditate, muse	-- sinne, &c. (This verb is mostly used in compounds, as besinnen.)	..	-- sann	-- sänne	sinne, or sinn	gesonnen
Essen, to sit, rest	-- esse, &c. ..	..	-- saß	-- säße	sieße, or sit	gessen
Essen, to be obliged	-- soll, du sollst, er soll ..	..	-- sollte	-- sölte	—	gefollt
Speisen, or speien, to spit, to vomit ..	-- speie, &c. ..	..	-- spie	-- spie	speie, or spey	gespien, or
Spinnen, to spin, twist ..	-- spinne, &c. ..	..	-- spann	-- spanne	spinne, spinn	gespinn
Spalten, to split, cleave, divide	-- spalte, &c. ..	..	-- spalt	-- spalte	spalte, or	gespalten, or
Sprechen, to speak	-- spreche, du sprichst, er spricht ..	..	-- sprach	-- spräche	sprech	gesprochen
Sprießen, to sprout	-- sprieße, du spriehest, er sprießt ..	..	-- sproß	-- spröße	sprieße	gesprossen
	(Poet. du spreuest, er spreust.)					
Springen, to spring	-- springe, &c. ..	..	-- sprang	-- spränge	springe	gesprungen
leap, skip, jump						
† Stechen, to sting, prick, stab, pierce	-- steche, du stichst, er sticht ..	..	-- stach	-- stäche	stich	gestochen
	(Sub. ich steche, du stehest, er steche.)					

† Some modern writers make *Sieben*, to boil, regular.

† *Obs.* *Stechen*, to stick, or hold; and *einstecken*, to put up, *sheathe*, *pocket*, are regular.

ſtehen, to ſtand ..	ich ſtehe, du ſteheſt, or ſtehſt; er ſtehet, or ſteht ſteht ..	ich ſtände ..	ſtehe, er ſteh	geſtanden
ſtehlen, to ſteal ..	.. ſtehle, du ſtehlſt, er ſtiehl ..	.. ſtähle ..	ſtiehl	geſtohlen
ſteigen, to mount, ..	.. ſteige, du ſteigſt, er ſteigt ..	.. ſtiege ..	ſteige, or ſteig	geſtiegen
to aſcend, to riſe ..	.. ſterbe, du ſtirbſt, er ſtirbt ..	.. ſtürbe ..	ſtirb	geſtorben
ſterben, to die ..	.. ſtiebe, &c.!	.. ſtöbe ..	ſtieb, or ſtiebe	geſtieben
† ſtieben, to fly off, ..	.. ſtänke, &c.	.. ſtänke (vul. ſtünke.)	ſtänke	geſtunken
ſtinken, to ſtink ..	.. ſtoße, du ſtoßeſt, er ſtoßt, ſtößt	.. ſtieße ..	ſtoße, or ſtoß	geſtoßen
ſtoßen, to push, ..	.. ſtreiche, &c.	.. ſtriße ..	ſtreiche, or	geſtrichen
thruſt, hit ..	.. ſtreite, &c.	.. ſtritte ..	ſtreite, or ſtreit	geſtritten
ſtreichen, to ſtroke, ..	.. thue, du thuſt, er thut	.. thäte ..	thue, or thu	gethan
ſtreichen, to ſtrike	<i>Pres. Sub.</i> Ich thue, du thuſt, er thue	.. that		
ſtreiten, to ſtrive, to ..	.. trage, du trágſt, er trägt. ..	.. trug	trage, or trag	getragen
contend, quarrel	<i>Pres. Sub.</i> Ich trage, du trágſt.			
thun, to do ..	.. treffe, du triffſt, or du treffeſt, er trifft	.. traf	treiſſ	getroffen
tragen, to carry, ..	.. treibe, du treibſt, er treibt ..	.. trieb	treibe, treib	getrieben
bear, wear, ſup- port ..	.. trete, du trittſt, er tritt, wir treten	.. trat	tritt	getreten,
treffen, to hit ..				
treiben, to drive, ..				
push, thruſt ..				
treten, to tread, ſtep ..				

† As an impersonal, es ſtiebet, it drizzles. † ſtieben, as an active verb, is regular.





gerathen, to leave behind, to be- queath .. ..	.. (ich) verlaſſen, du verlässeſt, er verläßt	.. (ich) verlor	(ich) verliere	verlaß	verlaſſen
gerathen, to lose, to be deprived of .. ..	- - verliere, du verlierſt, er verliert (Poet. du verleiureſt, er verleurt.)	.. - - verlor	- - verliere	verliere (Poet. verleurt.)	verloren
gerathen, to extin- guish, to become extinguished .. ..	- - verleiſche, du verleiſcheſt, er verleiſcht	.. - - verleiſch	- - verleiſche	verleiſche	verloſchen
gerathen, to avoid .. ..	- - vermeide, &c. .. ..	.. - - vermeide	- - vermeide	vermeide	vermieiden
gerathen, to avoid .. ..	- - verſchlinge, &c. .. ..	.. - - verſchling	- - verſchlinge	verſchlinge	verſchlungen
gerathen, to devour .. ..	- - verſchwinde, &c. .. ..	.. - - verſchwind	- - verſchwinde	verſchwinde	verſchwunden
gerathen, to dis- appear .. ..	- - verwirre, du verwirreſt, &c. ..	.. - - verwirre, or (ich) verwirr	- - verwirrete, or verwirrte	verwirre, or verwirrt	verwirret, or verwirren
gerathen, to per- plex, confound, entangle .. ..	- - vergeiße, &c. .. ..	.. - - vergeiße	- - vergeiße	vergeiße	vergeſſen
gerathen, to forgive .. ..	- - wachſe, du wachſeſt, or wächſt, er wächſt, et wächſet	.. - - wachſe	- - wächſe	wachſe, wächſe	wachſen, gewachſen
gerathen, to grow, .. ..	- - wiege, du wiegeſt, er wiegt, or (ich) wäge, - - mog du wägeſt, er wägt	.. - - wiege	- - wiege	wäge	gewogen
gerathen, or wägen, .. ..	- - waſche, du waſcheſt, er waſcht, or waſcht, et waſcht, &c. ..	.. - - waſch	- - waſche	waſche, wächſe	gewaſchen
gerathen, to wash .. ..	- - weiche, &c. .. ..	.. - - weich	- - weiche	weiche	gewichen
gerathen, to yield, .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..
to back, retreat, .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..
recoil .. ..	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..	.. ..

† Weichen, to reſſen, and its derivatives; as, einweichen, to ſoak, are regular.



Obs. The following Verbs are regular if they are used as Actives, and irregular if they are used as Neuters.

Infinitive.	PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.		Imperative.	Participle.
	Indicative.		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
Regular Active	ich erschrecke, I frighten	..	ich erschreckte	ich erschreckete	erschrecke	erschreckt
Irreg. Neuter	.. erschrecke, I am frightened	..	.. erschraß	.. erschraße	erschrick	erschrocken
Reg. Active	.. scheide, I separate	..	.. scheide	.. scheide	scheide	geschiedet
Irreg. Neuter	.. scheide, I depart	..	.. schied	.. schiebe	schiebe	geschieden
Reg. Active	.. schmelze, I melt	..	.. schmelzte	.. schmelzete	schmelze	geschmolzen
Irreg. Neuter	.. schmelze, I am melted, or I melt	..	.. schmolz	.. schmolze	schmilz	geschmolzen
Reg. Active	.. schweige, I silence	..	.. schweigte	.. schweigte	schweige	geschwiegen
Irreg. Neuter	.. schweige, I am silent	..	.. schwieg	.. schwiege	schweige	geschwiegen
Reg. Active	.. verderbe, I spoil	..	.. verderbte	.. verderbete	verderbe	verderbet
Irreg. Neuter	.. verderbe, I perish	..	.. verdarb	.. verdarbe	verdirb	verdorben
Reg. Active	.. weiche, I soften	..	.. weichte	.. weichete	weiche	geweicht
Irreg. Neuter	.. weiche, I give way, or yield	..	.. wich	.. wiche	weiche	gewichen

The following are also to be distinguished.

Esäugen, to suck, irreg.	..	Esäugen, to suckle, regular.
Eschwimmen, to swim, ir.	..	Eschwimmen, to wash away, reg.
Esinken, to sink, ir.	..	Esinken, to sink, to let down, reg.
Espringen, to spring, ir.	..	Espringen, to sprinkle, reg.
Esünken, to drink, ir.	..	Esünken, to give drink, reg.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.			Imperative.	Participle.
Infinitive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.				
*Brieffen, to drop, (werffen)	ich werffe, du werffst, (werffst) er triefft, es triefft	es triefft	es trieffe	trieff, or treuff	getrieffen	
Tragen, or trügen	.. .. ..	ich trag	ich trage	trage, or trüge	getragen	
*Briechen, to break, (brechen)	ich breche, du brichst, (brichst) er bricht, es bricht	.. .. ..	.. .. ..	brich, or brich	gebrachen	
Berbergen, to conceal	.. .. ..	.. .. ..	.. .. ..	berge	berogen	
Beruben, or berubigen, to forbid	.. .. ..	.. .. ..	.. .. ..	berube	beroben	
Berubigen, to make peace, to spoil	.. .. ..	.. .. ..	.. .. ..	berubige	berubigen	
Berubigen, to ruin, destroy	.. .. ..	.. .. ..	.. .. ..	berubige	berubigen	
Berubigen, to offend, displease, vex	.. .. ..	.. .. ..	.. .. ..	berubige	berubigen	
Berubigen, to forget	.. .. ..	.. .. ..	.. .. ..	berubige	berubigen	
Berubigen, to equal, agree, reconcile	.. .. ..	.. .. ..	.. .. ..	berubige	berubigen	
*Berubigen, to conceal, hide	.. .. ..	.. .. ..	.. .. ..	berubige	berubigen	

Obs. The following Verbs are regular if they are used as Actives, and irregular if they are used as Neuters.

	PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.		Imperative.	Participle.
	Indicative.		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
<i>Regular Active</i>	ich erschrecke, I frighten	..	ich erschrecke	ich erschreckete	erschreke	erschreckt
<i>Irreg. Neuter</i>	.. erschrecke, I am frightened	..	.. erschrak	.. erschrecke	erschrick	erschrocken
<i>Reg. Active</i>	schiede, I separate	..	.. schiede	.. schiedete	schiede	geschiedet
<i>Irreg. Neuter</i>	.. schiede, I depart	..	.. schied	.. schiede	schiede	geschieden
<i>Reg. Active</i>	.. schmelze, I melt	..	.. schmelze	.. schmelzete	schmelze	geschmolzet
<i>Irreg. Neuter</i>	.. schmelze, I am melted, or I melt	..	.. schmolz	.. schmelze	schmelz	geschmolzen
<i>Reg. Active</i>	.. schweige, I silence	..	.. schweige	.. schweigte	schweige	geschwieget
<i>Irreg. Neuter</i>	.. schweige, I am silent	..	.. schwieg	.. schweige	schweige	geschwiegen
<i>Reg. Active</i>	.. verderbe, I spoil	..	.. verderbe	.. verderbete	verderbe	verderbet
<i>Irreg. Neuter</i>	.. verderbe, I perish	..	.. verdarb	.. verderbe	verdirb	verdorben
<i>Reg. Active</i>	.. weiche, I soften	..	.. weiche	.. weichte	weiche	geweicht
<i>Irreg. Neuter</i>	.. weiche, I give way, or yield	..	.. wich	.. weiche	weiche	gewichen

The following are also to be distinguished.

Augen, to suck, <i>irreg.</i>	..	Augen, to suckle, <i>regular.</i>
schwimmen, to swim, <i>ir.</i>	..	schwimmen, to wash away, <i>reg.</i>
sinken, to sink, <i>ir.</i>	..	sinken, to sink, to let down, <i>reg.</i>
springen, to spring, <i>ir.</i>	..	springen, to sprinkle, <i>reg.</i>
trinken, to drink, <i>ir.</i>	..	trinken, to give drink, <i>reg.</i>

*Promiscuous practice on the Irregular Verbs, with the infinitive mood given.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD, PRESENT TENSE.

I know, wissen	Does it see? sehen
Do I dare? dürfen	It does not eat, essen
I must not, müssen	Does it not happen? geschehen
Can I not? können	We give, geben
Thouallest, fallen	Do we step? treten
Dost thou catch? fangen	We do not forget, vergessen
Thou dost not hold, halten	You read, lesen
Dost thou not hang? hängen	Do you measure? messen
He must, müssen	You do not brew, brauen
Can he? können	Do you not carry? tragen
He does not let, lassen	They see, sehen
Does he not sleep? schlafen	Do they remain? bleiben
She advises, raten	They do not seize, greifen
Does she go? fahren	They do not go? gehen
She does not dig, graben	Do they not speak? sprechen
Does she not strike? schlagen	
It grows, wachsen	

## IMPERFECT.

I might, mögen	Did he not take? nehmen
Did I eat? essen	He commanded, befehlen
I did not dig, graben	Did she speak? sprechen
Did I not step? treten	She did not write, schreiben
Thou remainedst, bleiben	Did she not praise? preisen
Didst thou lend? leihen	It bit, beißen
Thou didst not avoid, meiden	Did it glide? gleiten
Didst thou not fight? fechten	He did not drive, treiben
He moved, bewegen	Did we not drink? trinken
Did he heave, or lift? heben	You know, wissen
He did not conceal, bergen	They did not eat, essen

## PERFECT.

I have begun, beginnen	Have you not broken? brechen
Hast thou spoken? sprechen	Have they not broken? brechen
Has he not deceived? betriegen	They have not recommended, empfehlen
She has not fled, fliehen	Have they not written? schreiben
It has not flowed, fließen	
We have not shorn, scheren	

PLUPERFECT.

I had not stolen, <i>stehlen</i>	He had helped, <i>helfen</i>
Hadst thou commanded? <i>befehlen</i>	We had prayed, or begged, <i>bitten</i>
He had valued, <i>gelten</i>	You had called, <i>heißen</i>
She had not given, <i>geben</i>	Had they not thrust? <i>stoßen</i>
Had it not begun? <i>beginnen</i>	They had bitten, <i>beißen</i>

FIRST AND SECOND FUTURE.

I shall lose, <i>verlieren</i>	It will boil, <i>sieden</i>
I shall have lost, —	It will have boiled, —
Wilt thou shoot? <i>schießen</i>	We shall see, <i>sehen</i>
Wilt thou have shot? —	We shall have seen, —
He will win, <i>gewinnen</i>	You will not grow, <i>wachsen</i>
Will he not have won? —	You will not have grown, —
She will spin, <i>spinnen</i>	They will rub, <i>reiben</i>
Will she not have spun? —	Will they not have rubbed? —

CONDITIONAL ; SIMPLE AND COMPOUND.

I should not seize, <i>greifen</i>	Should we sue for? <i>werben</i>
I should not have seized, —	We should not have sued for it, —
Wouldst thou bend? <i>biegen</i>	You would throw, <i>werfen</i>
Wouldst thou have bent? —	You would have thrown, —
He would beat, <i>schlagen</i>	They would perceive, <i>empfinden</i>
He would have beaten, —	Would they not have perceived? —
She would drink, <i>trinken</i>	
She would have drank, —	
It would not sink, <i>sinken</i>	
Would it not have sunk? —	

IMPERATIVE.

Read ( <i>thou</i> ), <i>lesen</i>	Let him not give, <i>geben</i>
Give, <i>geben</i>	Let us go, <i>gehen</i>
Take, <i>nehmen</i>	Speak, or do you speak, <i>sprechen</i>
Do not step, <i>treten</i>	Let them enjoy, <i>genießen</i>
Eat, or do you eat, <i>essen</i>	Do not speak, <i>sprechen</i>
Do not forget, <i>vergessen</i>	
Let him come, <i>kommen</i>	



## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, PRESENT TENSE.

I may fall, fallen	He must not,
I may not be able, können	He may be willing, wollen
Thou mayest not, mögen	We may beat, schlagen
Thou must, müssen	They may not bear, tragen

## IMPERFECT.

I might dig, graben	It might not sting, stechen
I might not die, sterben	We might not lose, verlieren
Thou mightest break, brechen	You might not creep, kriechen
Thou mightest not command, befehlen	They might not confuse, verwirren
He might conceal, bergen	They might not spoil, verderben
She might not help, helfen	
It might eat, essen	

**Passive Verbs.**

PASSIVE VERBS, regular and irregular, are formed from the actives, and are conjugated throughout in all their tenses, with the auxiliary werden, (Englished, *to be*;) and the participle; as, *ich werde geliebt*, I am loved; *ich werde gesehen*, I am seen.

*Conjugation of the Regular Passive Verb Geliebt werden, to be loved.*

<i>Inf.</i>	<i>No Part. Pres.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Geliebt werden, to be loved.		Geliebt worden, been loved.
<i>Perf.</i> Geliebt worden seyn,	to have been loved.	

## INDICATIVE; PRESENT.

*Singular.*

*Ich* werde geliebt, I am loved.  
*Du* wirst geliebt, thou art loved.  
*Er, sie, or es* wird geliebt, he, she, or it is loved.

*Plural.*

Wir werden geliebt, we are loved.  
 Ihr werdet geliebt, you are loved.  
 Sie werden geliebt, they are loved.

IMPERFECT.—*Singular.*

Ich wurde, or ward geliebt, I was loved.  
 Du wurdest geliebt, thou wast loved.  
 Er wurde geliebt, he was loved.

*Plural.*

Wir wurden geliebt, we were loved.  
 Ihr wurdet geliebt, you were loved.  
 Sie wurden geliebt, they were loved.

PERFECT.—*Singular.*

Ich bin geliebt worden, I have been loved.  
 Du bist geliebt worden, thou hast been loved.  
 Er ist geliebt worden, he has been loved.

*Plural.*

Wir sind geliebt worden, we have been loved.  
 Ihr seyd geliebt worden, you have been loved.  
 Sie sind geliebt worden, they have been loved.

PLUPERFECT.—*Singular.*

Ich war geliebt worden, I had been loved.  
 Du warst geliebt worden, thou hadst been loved.  
 Er war geliebt worden, he had been loved.

*Plural.*

Wir waren geliebt worden, we had been loved.  
 Ihr waret geliebt worden, you had been loved.  
 Sie waren geliebt worden, they had been loved.

FIRST FUTURE.—*Singular.*

Ich werde geliebt werden, I shall be loved.  
 Du wirst geliebt werden, thou wilt be loved.  
 Er wird geliebt werden, he will be loved.

PLUPERFECT.—*Singular.*

Ich wäre geliebt worden, I might have been loved.  
 Du wärest geliebt worden, thou mightst have been loved.  
 Er wäre geliebt worden, he might have been loved.

*Plural.*

Wir wären geliebt worden, we might have been loved.  
 Ihr wäret geliebt worden, you might have been loved.  
 Sie wären geliebt worden, they might have been loved.

FIRST FUTURE.—*Singular.*

Ich werde geliebt werden, I shall be loved.  
 Du werdest geliebt werden, thou wilt be loved.  
 Er werde geliebt werden, he will be loved.

*Plural.*

Wir werden geliebt werden, we shall be loved.  
 Ihr werdet geliebt werden, you will be loved.  
 Sie werden geliebt werden, they will be loved.

SECOND FUTURE.—*Singular.*

Ich werde geliebt worden seyn, I shall have been loved.  
 Du werdest geliebt worden seyn, thou wilt have been loved.  
 Er werde geliebt worden seyn, he will have been loved.

*Plural.*

Wir werden geliebt worden seyn, we shall have been loved.  
 Ihr werdet geliebt worden seyn, you will have been loved.  
 Sie werden geliebt worden seyn, they will have been loved.

*Conjugation of the Irregular Passive Verb sehen, to see.**Inf.**Participle Pret.*

*Pres.* Gesehen werden, to be seen.      Gesehen worden, been seen.

*Pret.* Gesehen worden seyn, to have been seen.      Ein Gesehener, one who has been seen.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Sing.* }

PRESENT.

*{ Sing.*

Ich werde gesehen, I am seen

Ich werde gesehen, I may be seen.

Du wirst gesehen, thou art seen, &c.

Du werdest gesehen, thou mayst, &c.

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

Wir werden gesehen, we are seen, &c.

Wir werden gesehen, we may be seen, &c.

IMPERFECT.

Ich wurde gesehen, I was seen, &c.

Ich würde gesehen, I might be seen, &c.

PERFECT.

Ich bin gesehen worden, I have been seen, &c.

Ich sey gesehen worden, I may have been seen, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Ich war gesehen worden, I had been seen, &c.

Ich wäre gesehen worden, I might have been seen, &c.

FIRST FUTURE.

Ich werde gesehen werden, I shall be seen, &c.

Ich werde gesehen werden, I shall be seen, &c.

SECOND FUTURE.

Ich werde gesehen worden seyn, I shall have been seen, &c.

Ich werde gesehen worden seyn, I shall have been seen, &c.

*Sing.* }

CONDITIONAL, SIMPLE.

*{ Plural.*

Ich würde gesehen werden, I should be seen, &c.

Wir würden gesehen werden, we should be seen, &c.

*Sing.* } CONDITIONAL, COMPOUND. { *Plural.*

Ich würde gesehen worden    Wir würden gesehen worden  
 seyn, I should have been    seyn, we should have been  
 seen, &c.    seen, &c.

*Sing.* } IMPERATIVE. { *Plural.*

Werde du gesehen, be thou    Werdet ihr gesehen, be you  
 seen.    seen ; or, werden Sie ge-  
   sehen, be you seen.  
 Werde er gesehen, let him be    Werden sie gesehen, let them  
 seen.    be seen.

*Exercise on the Passive Verbs, Regular and Irregular.*

INDICATIVE PRESENT.

Am I not praised ?	Loben, to praise.
Is it not lost ?	*Verlieren, to lose.
Are they not rubbed ?	*Reiben, to rub.
They are not loved.	Lieben, to love.

IMPERFECT.

Was I not beaten ?	*Schlagen, to beat.
We were not taught,	Lehren, to teach.
Were you not hired ?	Mieten, to hire.
They were read,	*Lesen, to read.

PERFECT.

I have been chosen,	wählen, to choose.
Thou hast been blamed,	tadeln, to blame.
He has been bitten,	*beißen, to bite.
We have been carried,	*tragen, to carry.
You have not been punished,	strafen, to punish.
Have they been laden ?	*laden, to load.

*Obs.* Those verbs which are irregular, are marked with an asterisk.\*

PLUPERFECT.

Had I not been advised?	*rathen, to advise.
Thou hadst been created,	*schaffen, to create.
Had it been measured?	*messen, to measure
We had been hindered,	hindern, to hinder.
They had not been given,	*geben, to give.

FUTURES.

I shall be weakened,	schwächen, to weaken.
Shall we not be seized?	*greifen, to seize.
Will they not be washed?	*waschen, to wash.
You will have been seen,	*sehen, to see
Will they not have been advised?	*rathen, to advise.

CONDITIONALS.

Should I not be shunned?	*meiden, to shun.
He would not be revenged,	rächen, to revenge.
Would it not be stolen?	*stehlen, to steal.
Should we not have been caught?	*fangen, to catch.
You would not have been hidden,	*bergen, to hide.
They would not have been begun,	*beginnen, to begin.

*Obs.* As far as regards the formation of their tenses, all verbs which do not admit of a passive form, are considered **neuter**, and are conjugated in the same manner as verbs active; except that in the perfect and pluperfect tenses; some are conjugated with *seyn*, instead of *haben*.

## Neuter Verbs.

*Conjugation of the Regular Neuter Verb Leben, to live, with the Auxiliary Verb Haben.*

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Part. Pres.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Leben, to live.	Lebend, living.
	Ein Lebender, one who lives
<i>Pret.</i> Gekelt haben, to have lived.	<i>Part. Perf.</i> Gekelt, [lived.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Sing.* }

PRESENT.

{ *Sing.*

Ich lebe, I live.

Ich lebe, I may live.

Du lebst (lebest), thou livest.

Du lebest, thou mayst live.

Er, sie, or es lebt, he, she, or  
it lives.

Er lebe, he may live.

*Plural.**Plural.*

Wir leben, we live.

Wir leben, we may live.

Ihr lebet, or lebt, you live.

Ihr lebet, you may live.

Sie leben, they live.

Sie leben, they may live.

*Sing.* }

IMPERFECT.

{ *Sing.*

Ich lebte, I lived.

Ich lebete, I might live.

Du lebest, thou livedst.

Du lebestest, thou mightst live

Er lebte, he lived.

Er lebete, he might live.

*Plural.**Plural.*

Wir lebten, we lived, &amp;c.

Wir lebeten, we might live,  
&c.*Sing.* }

PERFECT.

{ *Sing.*Ich habe gelebt, I have lived,  
or I have been living.Ich habe gelebt, I may have  
lived; or been living.

Du hast gelebt, thou, &amp;c.

Du habest gelebt, thou, &amp;c.

*Sing.* }

PLUPERFECT.

{ *Sing.*Ich hatte gelebt, I had lived,  
or been living.Ich hätte gelebt, I might  
have lived; or been living.

Du hättest gelebt, thou, &amp;c.

Du hättest gelebt, thou, &amp;c.

*Sing.* }

FIRST FUTURE.

{ *Sing.*

Ich werde leben, I shall live.

Ich werde leben, I shall live.

Du wirst leben, thou, &amp;c.

Du werdest leben, thou, &amp;c.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Sing. }*

SECOND FUTURE.

*{ Sing.*

*Ich werde gelebt haben, I shall have lived, or been living.*  
*Du wirst gelebt haben, &c.*

*Ich werde gelebt haben, I shall have lived.*  
*Du werdest gelebt haben, &c.*

SIMPLE.

COMPOUND.

*Sing. }*

CONDITIONAL.

*{ Sing.*

*Ich würde leben, I should live.*

*Ich würde gelebt haben, I should have lived, or been living.*

*Du würdest leben, thou, &c.*

*Du würdest gelebt haben, &c.*

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

*Wir würden leben, we should live.*

*Wir würden gelebt haben, we should have lived.*

*Ihr würdet leben, you, &c.*

*Ihr würdet gelebt haben, &c.*

*So, for exercise, decline reden, to speak; beten, to pray.*

II. *Conjugation of the Irregular Verb Kommen, to come, with the Auxiliary Seyn.*

*Infinitive.*

*Part. Pres.*

*Pres. Kommen, to come.*

*Kommend, coming.*

*Pret. Gefommen seyn, to be come.*

*Part. Perf. Gefommen, come.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Sing. }*

PRESENT.

*{ Sing.*

*Ich komme, I come.*

*Ich komme, I may come.*

*Du kommst, or kommst, thou comest.*

*Du kommest, thou mayst come.*

*Er kommt, or kommt, he comes.*

*Er komme, he may come.*



## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Plural.**Plural.*

**Wir kommen, we come, &c.**    **Wir können, we may come, &c.**

*Sing. }*

## IMPERFECT.

{*Sing.*

**Ich kam, I came.**

**Du kamst, thou camest.**

**Er kam, he came.**

**Ich käme, I might come.**

**Du kämest, thou mightst come**

**Er käme, he might come.**

*Plural.**Plural.*

**Wir kamen, we came, &c.**

**Wir kämen, we might come, &c.**

*Sing. }*

## PERFECT.

{*Sing.*

**Ich bin gekommen, I am, or have come.**

**Du bist gekommen, thou, &c.**

**Ich sey gekommen, I may be come.**

**Du seyst gekommen, thou, &c.**

*Plural.**Plural.*

**Wir sind gekommen, we are come, &c.**

**Wir seyn gekommen, we may be come, &c.**

*Sing. }*

## PLUPERFECT.

{*Sing.*

**Ich war gekommen, I was come, &c.**

**Ich wäre gekommen, I might be come, &c.**

*Sing. }*

## FIRST FUTURE.

{*Sing.*

**Ich werde kommen, I shall come, &c.**

**Ich werde kommen, I shall come, &c.**

*Sing. }*

## SECOND FUTURE.

{*Sing.*

**Ich werde gekommen seyn, I shall be come, &c.**

**Ich werde gekommen seyn, I shall be come, &c.**

## SIMPLE.

## COMPOUND.

*Sing. }*

## CONDITIONAL.

{*Sing.*

**Ich würde kommen, I should come, &c.**

**Ich würde gekommen seyn, I should be come, &c.**

*Plural.*

**Wir würden kommen, we** ~~Wir würden gekommen sein,~~  
 should come, &c. we should be come, &c.

*Plural*

Neuter verbs, in German, are distinguished from those in English by some taking the auxiliaries, *haben, to have,* and others ~~sein, to be, in the perfect and pluperfect tenses.~~

In the following Exercise is given a List of those Verbs, which take *haben,* and those which take *sein.*

*Exercise on Neuter Verbs taking haben.*

I have thirsted,  
 Have I been zealous?  
 I have not been angry,  
 Have I not trembled?  
 Thou hast quaked,  
 Thou hast not waked?  
 Hast thou been giddy?  
 Hast thou not been dirty?  
 It has thundered,  
 He has not murmured,  
 Has she inquired?  
 Has she not been peevish?  
 We have labored,  
 Have we not slept?  
 Have you not suffered?  
 You have not lived,  
 They have not blossomed,  
 Had I not starved?  
 Hast thou pined?  
 Thou hadst not rested,  
 It had been worth,  
 Had she lain?  
 He had not stood,  
 Had he not sat?  
 It had not frozen,

dürsten, to thirst.  
 eifern, to be zealous.  
 zürnen, to be angry.  
 zittern, to tremble.  
 heben, to quake.  
 wachen, to wake.  
 schwindeln, to be giddy.  
 sudeln, to be dirty.  
 donnern, to thunder.  
 brummen, to murmur.  
 forschen, to inquire.  
 argern, to be peevish.  
 arbeiten, to labor.  
 schlafen, to sleep.  
 leiden, to suffer.  
 leben, to live.  
 blühen, to blossom.  
 darben, to starve.  
 schmachten, to pine.  
 ruhen, to rest.  
 taugen, to be worth.  
 liegen, to lie.  
 stehen, to stand.  
 sitzen, to sit.  
 frieren, to freeze.

We had not dreamt,	träumen, to dream.
They had been called,	heißen, to be called.
They had not grown old,	altern, to grow old.
Had they hungered?	hungern, to hunger.

*Exercise on the Neuter Verbs taking Seyn.*

I have staid,	bleiben, to stay.
Have I not staid?	.....
I have not staid,	.....
Hast thou run?	rennen, to run.
Thou hast not climbed,	klimmen, to climb.
Thou hast travelled,	reisen, to travel.
He has stumbled,	stolpern, to stumble.
Has he sailed?	segeln, to sail.
He is not come,	kommen, to come.
Is he not gone?	gehen, to go.
Has she followed?	folgen, to follow.
It has not burst,	bersten, to burst.
We have proceeded,	fortfahren, to proceed.
Have we run?	laufen, to run.
We have not wandered,	wandern, to wander.
Have we not slidden?	gleiten, to slide.
You have swum,	schwimmen, to swim.
Have you swum?	.....
You have not crept,	kriechen, to creep.
Have you not embarked?	einschiffen, to embark.
They have ridden,	reiten, to ride.
Have they ridden?	.....
They have not ridden,	.....
Have they not ridden?	.....
I had walked,	gehen, to walk.
Had I drawn near?	näher rücken, to draw near.
I had not fled,	fliehen, to flee.
Had I not fallen?	fallen, to fall.
Thou hadst slipped,	schlüpfen, to slip.
Hadst thou sunk?	sinken, to sink.
Thou hadst not penetrated,	bringen, to penetrate.
He had departed,	scheiden, to depart.
Had he not departed?	.....

It had darted,	schießen, to dart.
Had it not slipped ?	schlüpfen, to slip.
We had not pressed,	bringen, to press.
You had not recovered,	genesen, to recover.
They had not slunk.	schleichen, to slink.

*Observations on the Neuter Verbs.*

The use of the auxiliaries, in German, before the participle, depends upon the signification of the verb.

In English, the auxiliary *to have* is not only put before every verb which expresses a direct action, but also before such as express motion, or the continuation of a state: and *to be*, only in cases where an immediate state of rest is implied. Consequently those verbs which take *haben* in German, mostly take *have* in English; but many which take *seyn* in German, are Englished by *have*. Upon this general rule are founded the following special rules:

*I. Neuters take Haben, to have.*

(a) Which express physical actions, or when employed actively; as

*Sittern*, to tremble.

*Bellen*, to bark.

*Donnern*, to thunder.

*Schallen*, to sound, Ex.

*Ich habe gezittert*, I have trembled.

*Es hat gedonnert*, it has thundered, &c.

(But *erschallen*, to resound, takes *seyn*.)

*Ich habe einen Schimmel geritten*, I have rode a grey horse.

(b) Which denote the completion of an action or a state; as,

*Ausblühen*, to finish blowing.

*Ausbrennen*, to burn out.

*Ausstehen*, to endure, Ex.

*Der Baum hat ausgeblühet*, the tree has finished blowing.

*Das Feuer hat ausgebrannt*, the fire has burnt out.

*Ich habe ausgestanden*, I have endured, or stood out, &c.

(c.) Which denote a continued state, whether of motion, or of rest; as,

*Liegen*, to lie.

*Sitzen*, to sit.

*Ruhen*, to rest.

*Träumen*, to dream.

*Schlafen*, to sleep, &c. Ex.

*Ich habe geschlafen*, I have slept.

*Er hat geruhet*, he has rested, &c.

Several neuter verbs are translated by *have*, and a *participle*, or *have been*, and an *adjective* similar in signification to the verb ; as,

Dürsten, to thirst, or to be thirsty.

Hungern, to hunger, or to be hungry, &c. Ex.

Ich habe gedürstet, I have thirsted, or have been thirsty.

Ich habe gehungert, I have hungered, or have been hungry, &c.

## II. Neuter verbs take *seyn*, in German.

(a) Which denote a falling into any state, as,

Abarten, to degenerate, or deviate.

Ausarten, to degenerate.

Beegnen, to meet with.

Bersten, to burst.

Entschlafen, to expire.

Erblaffen, to turn pale.

Erkranken, to fall in.

Erröthen, to blush.

Fallen, to fall.

Genesen, to recover.

Geschehen, to happen.

Gerathen, to fall upon.

Scheitern, to wreck.

Sinken, to sink.

Sterben, to die.

Stürzen, to plunge.

Verhungern, to starve, &c.

Although the above verbs take *seyn*, they are mostly Englished by the verb *have*, but sometimes by *to be*, Ex.

Der Sohn ist von den Tugenden des Vaters abgeartet, the son *has* deviated from the virtues of the fathers.

Sie sind geborsten, they *are* burst, or *have* burst.

Er ist gestorben, he *has* died, or *is* dead.

Sie sind ihm begegnet, they *have* met him, or met with him.

Es ist geschehen, it *has* happened.

Sie sind gefallen, they *are* fallen, or *have* fallen.

(b) Which denote a change of place ; as :

Aufstehen, to rise.

Ankommen, to arrive.

Dringen, to press forth.

Dringen, to press, *takes haben*.

Fahren, to ride in a carriage.

Folgen, to follow.

Gehen, to go.

Gelangen, to attain.

Kommen, to come.

Laufen, to run.

Reiten, to ride.

Einsteigen, to embark.

Schreiten, to stride.

Schwimmen, to swim, &c.

These verbs, like the preceding, are Englished by *have*, and sometimes by *be*, Ex.

Ich bin gefolgt, I *have* followed.

Sie sind gelangt, they *have* attained.

Er ist gegangen, he *is* gone, or *has* gone.

Sie sind gelaufen, they *have* run.

(c) To the above may be added the following :

Steiben, to remain.

Beharren, to persevere.

Bemühen, or befeissen, to endeavour.

Gefinnen, to be disposed.

Gelingen, to succeed, Ex.

Ich bin geblieben, I have remained.

Ich bin bemühet, I have endeavoured.

### III. Some Neuter Verbs in German take both *haben*, and *seyn*, according to their signification.

(1) Some take *haben*, to denote the completion of an action, or a state, and *seyn* to denote the condition of a thing, Ex.

Das Feuer hat ausgebrannt, the fire *has* burnt out.

Die Stadt ist ausgebrannt, the city *is* burnt down.

Die Kohlen haben aufgedampft, the coals *have* smoked out.

Die Feuchtigkeit ist aufgedampft, the damp *is* evaporated.

(2) Verbs expressive of motion take *seyn*, when the place or the manner of the motion is referred to ; but all neuter verbs take *haben*, when the simple action is designated, or whenever they are used as reflexive or reciprocal verbs.

#### EXAMPLES.

##### *With Seyn.*

Ich bin den ganzen Tag geritten, I *have* been riding the whole day.

Der Feind ist in die Stadt gedrungen, the enemy *has* penetrated into the city.

Wir sind in die Stadt geeilet, We *have* hastened into the city.

Wir sind fortgefahren, we *have* gone forward, or proceeded.

Der Vogel ist in das Feld geflattert, the bird *has* fluttered into the field.

Er ist ihm gefolgt, he *has* followed him.

Die Erde ist gefroren, the earth *is* frozen.

##### *With Haben.*

Ich habe das Pferd geritten, I *have* ridden that horse.

Er hat in mich gedrungen, he *has* pressed upon me.

Wir haben mit der Sache geeilet, We *have* hastened with the affair.

Wir haben fortgefahren zu arbeiten, we *have* continued to labour.

Er hat lange geflattert, it *has* been fluttering a long time.

Er hat meine Lehren gefolgt, he *has* followed my precepts.

Es hat die ganze Nacht gefroren, it *has* frozen the whole night.

- Ich** bin vor ihm gekniet, *I have* knelt before him.      **Er** hat eine ganze Stunde gekniet, he *has* been kneeling a whole hour.
- Wir** sind nach Leipzig geritten, we *have* ridden to Leipzig.      **Wir** haben uns müde geritten, we *have* tired ourselves with riding.
- Die** Flamme ist in die Höhe gestiegen, the flame *has* ascended.      **Der** Blitz hat in den Baum geschlagen, the lightning *has* struck the tree.
- Das** Schiff ist vorbei gesegelt, the ship *has* sailed past.      **Die** Vögel haben gesungen, the birds *have* warbled.
- Ich** bin die ganze Nacht aufgesessen, I *have* sat up the whole night.      **Ich** habe nicht eine einzige Stunde geschlafen, I *have* not slept a single hour.
- Ich** bin in das Haus gegangen, I *have* gone into the house.      **Ich** habe mich müde gegangen, I *have* tired myself with walking.

(3) Some verbs expressive of motion require *seyn*, when taken in the proper sense, and *haben*, in the figurative sense; as,

*Proper Sense.*

- Das** Blut ist gesprungen, the blood *has* flowed.  
**Wir** sind gelaufen, we *have* run.  
**Wir** sind nach dem Ziele gerronnen, we *have* run towards the goal.  
**Die** Thränen sind herabgeflossen, the tears *have* flowed down.

*Figurative Sense.*

- Die** Fontäne hat gesprungen, the fountain *has* played.  
**Das** Faß hat gelaufen, the cask *has* run.  
**Die** Augen haben geronnen, the eyes *have* run.  
**Die** Röhre hat geflossen, the pipe *has* run.

As it may sometimes be found difficult to distinguish (*by the preceding definitions*) those verbs which take *haben*, from those which take *seyn*, a list of both is subjoined.

NEUTER VERBS WITH *Haben*.

The following neuters are to be conjugated with the auxiliary verb *Haben*.

*I. Regular Verbs.*

*Infinitive.*

- Ächzen**, to groan.  
**Ältern**, to grow old.  
**Angeln**, to angle.

*Perfect Indicative.*

- Ich** habe geächzet, I have groaned  
 . . . . . geäthert.  
 . . . . . geangelt.

Ankern, to anchor.	Ich habe geankert.
Athmen, to breathe.	..... geathmet.
(Sich) balgen, to fight.	..... gebalget.
Beben, to quake.	..... gebebet.
Beten, to pray.	..... gebetet.
Betteln, to beg alms.	..... gebettelt.
Blinzeln, to blink.	..... geblinzelt.
Blühen, to bloom.	..... geblühet.
Brummen, to grumble.	..... gebrummt.
Bürgen, to bail.	..... gebürget.
Büßen, to suffer for.	..... gebüßet.
Dauern, to last, to endure.	..... gebauert.
Donnern, to thunder.	..... gedonnert.
Dürsten, to be thirsty, or to thirst.	..... gedürstet.
Eifern, to be zealous.	..... geeifert.
Eilen, to hasten.	..... geeilet.
Eitern, to suppurate.	..... geeitert.
Entsagen, to renounce.	..... entsagt.
Erben, to be one's heir.	..... geerbet.
Faulen, to putrefy.	..... gefaulet.
Fehlen, to fail.	..... gefehlt.
Flecken, to stain.	..... gefleckt.
Fluchen, to curse.	..... geflucht.
Forschen, to enquire.	..... geforschet.
Funkeln, to glimmer.	..... gefunkelt.
Gähnen, to yawn.	..... gegähnet.
Gaukeln, to juggle.	..... gegaukelt.
Geizen, to covet.	..... gegeizet.
Handeln, to trade.	..... gehandelt.
Harren, to wait for.	..... geharret.
Handthieren, to trade, to bustle.	..... gehandthieret.
Hausiren, to hawk about.	..... gehausiret.
Herrschen, to govern.	..... geherrschet.
Hinken, to limp.	..... gehinket.
Horchen, to listen.	..... gehorchet.
Hungern, to hunger.	..... gehungert.
Hüpfen, to leap.	..... gehüpft.
Husten, to cough.	..... gehustet.
Irrren, to err.	..... geirret.
Jauchzen, to shout.	..... gejauchzet.
Kalben, to calve.	..... gefalbet.
Kämpfen, to combat.	..... gekämpft.
Kargen, to be penurious.	..... gekarget.
Keimen, to shoot out, or bud.	..... gekeimet.
Kirren, to creak, or coo.	..... gekirret.
Klaffen, to clap, cleave.	..... geklaffet.



Klagen, to complain.	Ich habe geklagt.
Klatschen, to clap.	..... geklatschet.
Kleben, to cleave, or stick.	..... geklebt.
Klügeln, to refine.	..... geklügelt.
Knacken, to crack.	..... geknackt.
Knarren, to creak.	..... geknarrt.
Knicksen, to haggie, to act nig- gardly.	..... geknickt.
Knien, to kneel.	..... gekniet.
Krollern, to be unruly, to roll.	..... gekrollert.
Krähen, to crow.	..... gekrächet.
Krahmen, to trade.	..... gekrahmet.
Kranken, to be ill.	..... gekranket.
Krebsen, to catch crabs.	..... gekrebst.
Kriegen, to obtain.	..... gekriegt.
Lachen, to laugh.	..... gelacht.
Landen, to land.	..... gelandet.
Lärmen, to make a noise.	..... gelärmet.
Lauren, to watch.	..... gelauert.
Lauten, or Lauten, to sound.	..... gelautet, or gelaunt.
Leben, to live.	..... gelebet.
Mangeln, to want.	..... gemangelt.
Meinen, to mean.	..... gemeinet.
Murmeln, to grumble.	..... gemurmelt.
Orgeln, to play on the organ.	..... georgelt.
Rafen, to be mad.	..... geraset.
Rasten, to rest.	..... gerastet.
Rauchen, to smoke.	..... geraucht.
Räumen, to remove.	..... geräumt.
Räuspern, to hawk, to clear the throat.	..... geräuspert.
Rauschen, to rush.	..... gerauscht.
Rechnen, to reckon.	..... gerechnet.
Rechten, to go to law.	..... gerichtet.
Reden, to speak.	..... geredet.
Reifen, to ripen.	..... gereift.
Reimen, to rhyme.	..... gereimt.
Rudern, to row.	..... gerudert.
Säumen, to tarry.	..... gesäumt.
Sausen, to whiz.	..... gesauset.
Schaden, to hurt.	..... geschadet.
Schaffen, to procure.	..... geschafft.
Sich schämen, to be ashamed.	..... geschämt.
Schaudern, to shiver.	..... geschauert.
Scherzen, to joke.	..... geschert.
Schimmeln, to mould.	..... geschimmelt.
Schlucken, to swallow.	..... geschluckt.

Schwächen, to languish.	Ich habe geschwächt.
Schlagen, to smack.	..... geschlagen.
Schmähen, to scold.	..... geschmähet.
Schmausen, to feast.	..... geschmauset.
Schmutzen, to soil, to dirty.	..... geschmutzet.
Schnäbeln, to bill.	..... geschnäbelt.
Schnarchen, to snore.	..... geschnarchet.
Schnattern, to gabble.	..... geschnattert.
Schwärmen, to swarm.	..... geschwärmet.
Schwindeln, to grow giddy.	..... geschwindelt.
Schwitzen, to sweat.	..... geschwizet.
Segeln, to sail.	..... gesegelt.
Seufzen, to sigh.	..... ge-seufzet.
Sorgen, to care.	..... gesorget.
Spazieren, to take a walk.	..... spazieret.
Spielen, to play.	..... gespielt.
Steuern, to steer a ship.	..... gesteuert.
Studiren, to study.	..... studirt.
Stürmen, to storm.	..... gestürmet.
Stußen, to butt at.	..... gestuget.
Subeln, to dirty.	..... gesubelt.
Summen, to hum.	..... gesummet.
Sündigen, to sin.	..... gesündigt.
Tappen, to grope.	..... getappet.
Thronen, to be enthroned.	..... gethronet.
Toben, to rage.	..... getobet.
Tönen, to sound.	..... getönet.
Trachten, to endeavour.	..... getrachtet.
Trauern, to mourn.	..... getrauert.
Triumphiren, to triumph.	..... triumphiret.
Trödeln, to sell old things.	..... getröbelt.
Wachen, to wake, or to be awake.	..... gewachet.
Weinen, to cry, to whine.	..... geweinet.
Willfahren, to comply.	..... gewillfahret.
Zagen, to despair, to despond.	..... gezaget.
Zanken, to quarrel.	..... gezanet.
Zielen, to aim.	..... gezielet.
Zittern, to tremble.	..... gezittert.
Zoteln, to stagger.	..... gezottelt.
Zürnen, to be angry.	..... gezürnet.

---

*The following are the Irregular Verbs which take Haben.*

Kechten, to fight.	Ich habe gekocht, I have fought
Gefallen, to please.	.... gefallen.

Gleichen, to resemble.	Ich habe geglichen.
Reifen, to scold.	..... gekiffen.
Klingen, to sound.	..... geklungen.
Leiden, to suffer.	..... gelitten.
Liegen, to lie.	..... gelegen.
Reiten, to ride.	..... geritten.
Ringen, to wrestle.	..... gerungen.
Saufen, to drink hard.	..... gesoffen.
Scheinen, to appear.	..... geschienen.
Schlafen, to sleep.	..... geschlafen.
Schleifen, to cleave.	..... geschliffen.
Schnauben, to snort.	..... geschnoben.
Schreien, to cry.	..... geschrien.
Schweigen, to be silent.	..... geschwiegen.
Schwimmen, to swim.	..... geschwommen.
Schwinden, to be reduced, to dwindle away.	..... geschwunden.
Schwören, to swear.	..... geschworen.
Sinnen, to think, to meditate.	..... gesonnen.
Sitzen, to sit.	..... gesessen.
Streiten, to fight, to contend.	..... gestritten.
Verbrechen, to commit a crime.	..... verbrochen.

NEUTER VERBS WITH *Seyn*.

The following require the Auxiliary Verb *Seyn*;

*Regular Verbs.*

Arten, to resemble.	Ich bin geartet, I have resembled
Beegnen, to meet.	.... begegnet.
Beharren, to continue.	.... beharret.
Ergrimmen, to grow angry.	.... ergrimmet.
Erfalten, to grow cold.	.... erkaltet.
Erstaunen, to be astonished.	.... erstaunet.
Erstarren, to be chilled.	.... erstarret.
Flattern, to flit, to flutter.	.... geflattert.
Folgen, to follow.	.... gefolget.
Gelangen, to get, to attain.	.... gelanget.
Gewohnen, to be accustomed.	.... gewohnet.
Klettern, to climb.	.... geklettert.
Reisen, to travel.	.... gereiset.
Segeln, to sail.	.... gesegelt.
Stolpern, to stumble.	.... gestolpert.
Stranden, to strand.	.... gestrandet.
Strauscheln, to trip.	.... gestrauschet.

Stuhen, to start.	Ich bin gestuſet.
Traben, to trot.	.... getrabet.
Veraltern, to grow old.	.... veraltert.
Verarmen, to grow poor.	.... verarmet.
Verblinden, to grow blind.	.... verblindet.
Verkrummen, to grow crooked.	.... verkrummet.
Verlahmen, to grow lame.	.... verlahmet.
Verſäuern, to grow sour, to sour.	.... verſauert.
Verſtummeln, to grow dumb.	.... verſtummet.
Verweſen, to decay.	.... verweſet.
Verwildern, to grow wild.	.... verwildert.
Verzagen, to deſpond.	.... verzaget.
Wandeln, to walk.	.... gewandelt.
Wandern, to wander, travel.	.... gewandert.

*Irregular Neuter Verbs taking Seyn.*

Abfallen, to fall down.	Ich bin abgefallen.
Befleißen, to be ſtudious.	.... beſiſſen.
Berſten, to burſt.	.... geborſten.
Bleiben, to remain.	.... geblieben.
Erfrieren, to freeze to death.	.... erfroren.
Erſchallen, to reſound.	.... erſchollen.
Erſchrecken, to be terrified.	.... erſchrocken.
Fahren, to go in a coach.	.... gefahren.
Fallen, to fall.	.... gefallen.
Fliegen, to fly.	.... geflogen.
Fliehen, to flee.	.... geflohen.
Fließen, to flow.	.... gefloſſen.
Frieren, to freeze.	.... gefroren.
Gedeihen, to proſper.	.... gediehen.
Gehen, to go.	.... gegangen.
Genesen, to recover.	.... genesen.
Gleiten, to ſlide, to ſlip.	.... geglitten.
Klimmen, to climb.	.... geklimmen.
Kommen, to come.	.... gekommen.
Kriechen, to creep.	.... gekrochen.
Laufen, to run.	.... gelaufen.
Reiten, to ride.	.... geritten.
Rennen, to run.	.... gerannt.
Rinnen, to leak, to run.	.... geronnen.
Scheiden, to depart from.	.... geſchieden.
Schleichen, to sneak.	.... geſchlichen.
Schreiten, to ſtride.	.... geſchritten.

Schwellen, to swell.	Ich bin geschwellen.
Schwimmen, to swim.	.... geschwommen.
Schwinden, to shrink.	.... geschwunden.
Sitzen, to sit.	.... gesessen.
Springen, to jump.	.... gesprungen.
Stehen, to stand.	.... gestanden.
Steigen, to mount.	.... gestiegen.
Sterben, to die.	.... gestorben.
Verbleichen, to grow pale.	.... verblichen.
Verlöschen, to extinguish.	.... verloschen.
Verschwinden, to disappear.	.... verschwunden.
Wachsen, to grow.	.... gewachsen.
Weichen, to yield.	.... gewichen.
Werden, to become.	.... geworden.

N.B.—Those verbs which occur in both lists, are sometimes conjugated with *haben*, and sometimes with *seyn*. [*Vide the observations from page 169 to 172.*]

## Compound Verbs.

Simple Verbs being either regular, or irregular, their compounds are the same.

Compound verbs are compounded either with separable, or inseparable prepositions.

The separable prepositions are separated from the verbs in the simple tenses; but are joined to them in the infinitive and participle, as in the following example:

*Conjugation of the separable Compound Verb Aufhalten, to detain, or stop.*

*Infinitive.*

*Part. Pres.*

<i>Pres.</i> Aufhalten, to detain.	Aufhaltend, detaining.
<i>Pret.</i> Aufgehalten haben, to have detained.	Ein Aufhaltender, one who detains.
<i>Part. Perf.</i> Aufgehalten, detained.	

## ACTIVE.

## INDICATIVE.

*Sing. }*

## PRESENT.

**Ich halte auf**, I detain, am  
detaining, or do detain.

**Du hältst auf**, thou de-  
tainest.

**Er, sie, or es hält auf**, he,  
she, or it detains.

*Plural.*

**Wir halten auf**, we detain.

**Ihr haltet auf**, you detain.

**Sie halten auf**, they detain.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*{ Sing.*

**Ich halte auf**, I may detain.

**Du haltest auf**, thou mayst  
detain.

**Er, sie, or es halte auf**, he,  
she, or it may detain.

*Plural.*

**Wir halten auf**, we may de-  
tain.

**Ihr haltet auf**, you may de-  
tain.

**Sie halten auf**, they may  
detain.

*Sing. }*

## IMPERFECT.

*{ Sing.*

**Ich hielt auf**, I detained.

**Du hieltest auf**, thou de-  
tainedst.

**Er hielt auf**, he detained.

**Ich hielte auf**, I might detain

**Du hieltest auf**, thou mightst  
detain.

**Er hielte auf**, he, &c.

*Plural.*

**Wir hielten auf**, we detained.

**Ihr hiettet auf**, you detained.

**Sie hielten auf**, they detained.

*Plural.*

**Wir hielten auf**, we might,  
&c.

**Ihr hiettet auf**, you might,  
&c.

**Sie hielten auf**, they, &c.

*Sing. }*

## PERFECT.

*{ Sing.*

**Ich habe aufgehalten**, I have  
detained, &c.

**Ich habe aufgehalten**, I may  
have detained, &c.

*Plural.*

**Wir haben aufgehalten**, we  
have detained, &c.

*Plural.*

**Wir haben aufgehalten**, we  
may have detained, &c.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Sing. }*

PLUPERFECT.

{ *Sing.*Ich hatte aufgehalten, I had  
detained, &c.Ich hätte aufgehalten, I  
might have detained, &c.*Plural.**Plural.*Wir hatten aufgehalten, we  
had detained, &c.Wir hätten aufgehalten, we  
might have detained, &c.*Sing. }*

FIRST FUTURE.

{ *Sing.*Ich werde aufhalten, I shall  
detain.Ich werde aufhalten, I shall  
detain.

Du wirst aufhalten, &amp;c.

Du werdest aufhalten, &amp;c.

*Plural.**Plural.*Wir werden aufhalten, we  
shall detain.Wir werden aufhalten, we  
shall detain.

Ihr werdet aufhalten, &amp;c.

Ihr werdet aufhalten, you,  
&c.*Sing. }*

SECOND FUTURE.

{ *Sing.*Ich werde aufgehalten haben,  
I shall have detained.Ich werde aufgehalten haben,  
I shall have detained.Du wirst aufgehalten haben,  
&c.Du werdest aufgehalten ha-  
ben, &c.*Plural.**Plural.*Wir werden aufgehalten ha-  
ben, we shall have de-  
tained, &c.Wir werden aufgehalten ha-  
ben, we shall have de-  
tained, &c.*Simp. Sing. }*

CONDITIONAL.

{ *Comp. Sing.*Ich würde aufhalten, I  
should detain, &c.Ich würde aufgehalten haben,  
I should have detained, &c.*Plural.**Plural.*Wir würden aufhalten, we  
should detain, &c.Wir würden aufgehalten ha-  
ben, we should have de-  
tained, &c.

<i>Sing.</i> }	IMPERATIVE MOOD.	<i>{ Plural.</i>
Halte (du) auf, detain (thou.)	Halte (ihr) auf, detain (you).	
Halte er auf, let him detain.	Halten Sie auf, detain, or do you detain.	
	Halten sie auf, let them detain.	

So conjugate :

Aufnehmen, to take up.	Aussprechen, to pronounce.
Weggeben, to give away.	Vorkommen, to come before.
Abholen, to fetch.	Einbringen, to bring in.

*Exercise on the separable Compound Verbs.*

INDICATIVE ; PRESENT.

I take off,	abnehmen, to take off.
Thou acceptest,	annehmen, to accept.
It devolves,	anheimfallen, or heimfallen, to devolve.
We give up,	aufgeben, to give up.
You except,	ausnehmen, to except.
They assist,	beistehen, to stand by, assist.

IMPERFECT.

I presented,	darreichen, to present.
Thou didst run off,	davon laufen, to run off.
He took in,	einnehmen, to take in.
We pursued,	fortsetzen, to pursue.
You sent home,	heimschicken, to send home.
They came hither,	herkommen, to come hither.

PERFECT.

I *have run down,	herablaufen, to run down.
Thou *hast come near,	herankommen, to come near.
He *has come up,	heraufkommen, to come up.
We *have come out,	herauskommen, to come out.
You have brought near,	herbeibringen, to bring near.
They *have come in,	hereinkommen, to come in.

*Obs.* Where the mark \* is used, translate have by *seyn* ; as, I have run down, *ich bin herabgelaufen*.



## PLUPERFECT.

I had produced,	hervorbringen, to produce.
Thou *hadst gone off,	hingehen, to go off.
She *had gone down,	hinabgehen, to go down.
We *had mounted upwards,	hinaufsteigen, to mount up.
You *had gone out,	hinaufgehen, to go out.
They *had gone over,	hinübergehen, to go over.

## FIRST AND SECOND FUTURE.

I shall leap down,	hinunterspringen, to leap down.
Thou wilt bring with thee,	mitbringen, to bring with.
He will imitate,	nachahmen, to imitate.
We shall *have fallen down,	niederfallen, to fall down.
You will apply,	anwenden, to apply.
They will prescribe,	vorgeben, to prescribe.

## CONDITIONALS; SIMPLE AND COMPOUND.

*I should have walked forward,	vorangehen, to walk forward.
Thou wouldst presuppose,	voraussetzen, to presuppose.
*He would have passed by,	vorübergehen, to pass by.
*We should have agreed,	übereinkommen, to agree.
You would have taken away.	wegnehmen, to take away.
They would restore,	wiedergeben, to restore.

## IMPERATIVE.

Look (thou) to,	zusehen, to look to.
Keep (you) back,	zurückhalten, to keep back.

## INFINITIVE.

To keep back,	zurückhalten, to keep back.
To have kept back,	.....

## PARTICIPLES.

Composing,	zusammensetzen, to compose.
Composed,	.....



The inseparable particles in compound verbs, are always joined to the verbs, and the ge of the participles, is dropped.

*Conjugation of the inseparable compound verb Behalten, to retain.*

*Inf.*

*Part. Pres.*

*Pres.* Behalten, to retain.

Behaltend, retaining.

*Perf.* Behalten haben, to have retained.

Ein Behaltender, one who retains.

*Perf. Part.* Behalten, retained.

**INDICATIVE.**

**SUBJUNCTIVE.**

*Sing. }*

**PRESENT.**

*{ Sing.*

Ich behalte, I retain.

Ich behalte, I may retain.

Du behältst, thou retainest.

Du behältest, thou mayst, &c.

Er behält, he retains.

Er behalte, he may, &c.

*Plural.*

*Plural.*

Wir behalten, we retain.

Wir behalten, we may retain.

Ihr behaltet, you retain.

Ihr behaltet, you may retain.

Sie behalten, they retain.

Sie behalten, they may retain.

*Sing. }*

**IMPERFECT.**

*{ Sing.*

Ich behielt, I retained.

Ich behielte, I might retain.

Du behieltest, thou, &c.

Du behieltest, thou, &c.

*Sing. }*

**PERFECT.**

*{ Sing.*

Ich habe behalten, I have retained.

Ich habe behalten, I may have retained.

Du hast behalten, thou, &c.

Du habest behalten, thou, &c.

*Sing. }*

**PLUPERFECT.**

*{ Sing.*

Ich hatte behalten, I had retained.

Ich hätte behalten, I might have retained.

Du hättest behalten, thou, &c.

Du hättest behalten, thou, &c.

<i>Sing.</i>	FIRST FUTURE.	<i>{ Sing.</i>
<b>Ich werde behalten, I shall retain.</b>		<b>Ich werde behalten, I shall retain.</b>
<b>Du wirst behalten, &amp;c.</b>		<b>Du werdest behalten, &amp;c.</b>

<i>Sing.</i>	SECOND FUTURE.	<i>{ Sing.</i>
<b>Ich werde behalten haben, I shall have retained, &amp;c.</b>		<b>Ich werde behalten haben, I shall have retained, &amp;c.</b>

## CONDITIONAL ; SIMPLE.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<b>Ich würde behalten, I should retain, &amp;c.</b>	<b>Wir würden behalten, we should retain, &amp;c.</b>

## CONDITIONAL ; COMPOUND.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<b>Ich würde behalten haben, I should have retained, &amp;c.</b>	<b>Wir würden behalten haben, we should have retained, &amp;c.</b>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<b>Behalte (du), retain (thou).</b>	<b>Laßt uns behalten, let us retain.</b>
<b>Behalte er, retain he, or let him retain.</b>	<b>Behaltet ihr, or Behalten Sie, retain ye, or you.</b>
	<b>Behalten sie, retain they, or let them retain.</b>

*Exercise on the inseparable compound Verbs.*

## INDICATIVE ; PRESENT.

<b>I remark,</b>	<b>bemerken, to remark.</b>
<b>Thou backbitest,</b>	<b>afterreden, to backbite.</b>
<b>He escapes,</b>	<b>entgehen, to escape.</b>
<b>Do we not acquire?</b>	<b>erwerben, to acquire.</b>
<b>Do you not light upon?</b>	<b>gerathen, to light upon.</b>
<b>They leave behind,</b>	<b>hinterlassen, to leave behind.</b>

## IMPERFECT.

Did I mistrust?	mißtrauen, to mistrust.
Did he conceal?	verbergen, to conceal.
We concerted,	verabreden, to concert.
You neglected,	vernachlässigen, to neglect.
They dishonoured,	verunehren, to dishonour.

## PERFECT.

I have withstood,	widerstehen, to withstand.
Hast thou distracted?	zerrütten, to distract.
Has he backbitten?	afterreden, to backbite.
We have not remarked,	bemerkten, to remark.
You *have not escaped,	entgehen, to escape.
They have acquired,	erwerben, to acquire.

## PLUPERFECT.

I had not left behind,	hinterlassen, to leave behind.
Hadst thou distrusted?	mißtrauen, to distrust.
He had concealed,	verbergen, to conceal.
We had concerted,	verabreden, to concert.
Had you neglected?	vernachlässigen, to neglect.
They had not dishonoured.	verunehren, to dishonour.

## FIRST AND SECOND FUTURE.

I shall withstand,	widerstehen, to withstand.
Thou wilt distract,	zerrütten, to distract.
Will he have backbitten?	afterreden, to backbite.
Shall we not have remarked?	bemerkten, to remark.
*You will not have escaped,	entgehen, to escape.
They will have acquired,	erwerben, to acquire.

## CONDITIONAL; SIMPLE AND COMPOUND.

I should withstand,	widerstehen, to withstand.
Would he acquire?	erwerben, to acquire.
I should have left behind,	hinterlassen, to leave behind.

---

\* Translate *have* by *seyn*.

*empfinden*, to feel, to be endowed with inward feeling, from *finden*, to find.

*Er* denotes 1st. elevating, answering to the particle *auf*, up ; as, *erheben*, to elevate, or lift up ; *erbauen*, to build up ; *erziehen*, to bring up ; *erwachsen*, to grow up.

2nd. Obtaining by means of exertion ; as, *erfechten*, to obtain by fighting ; *erschmeicheln*, to wheedle ; *erfischen*, to fish out ; *erfahren*, to learn by experience ; thus, *Er hat einen Sieg erfochten*, he has obtained a victory by fighting ; *Er hat seine Gunst erschmeichelt*, he has wheedled himself into favour. So likewise in regard to mental exertions ; as, *erfinden*, to devise ; *erdenken*, to contrive ; *erfinden*, to invent ; as, *Er hat etwas Neues erfunden*, he has devised something new ; *Sie haben einen Anschlag erdacht*, they have contrived a scheme.

3rd. Taking out, bringing out, coming out, answering to the particle *aus*, out ; *erwählen*, to elect, or choose out of ; *ernennen*, to nominate ; *ergießen*, to flow out ; *erlassen*, to issue ; *erschöpfen*, to exhaust ; *erbrechen*, to break open, or break out from.

4th. Effecting a change of state ; as, *erweitern*, to enlarge, from *weit*, wide, or large ; *erwärmen*, to warm, from *warm*, warm ; *ergrauen*, to grow grey, from *grau*, grey ; *erhärten*, to harden, from *hart*, hard ; *erbleichen*, to turn, or to grow pale, from *bleich*, pale ; *erblinden*, to grow blind, from *blind*, blind ; *erfalten*, to grow cold, from *kalt*, cold ; *erröthen*, to redden, or blush, from *roth*, red ; *erarmen*, to impoverish, from *arm*, poor ; *erklären*, to explain, or clear up, from *klar*, clear ; *erfrieren*, to freeze, from *frieren*, to freeze ; *erzürnen*, to be angry, from *Born*, anger ; *ersterben*, to expire, from *sterben*, to die.

*Ge* signifies the continuation of an action, or a state ; as, *brauchen*, to use, *gebrauchen*, to employ ; *denken*, to think, *gedenken*, to think of, or bear in mind ; *frieren*, to freeze, *gefrieren*, to congeal ; *bulden*, to bear, *sich gebulden*, to endure, or have patience with ; *reuen*, to repent, *sich gereuen*, to repent of.

*Ver* denotes 1st. removal, answering to the particle *away* ; as, *verjagen*, to drive away ; *verschenten*, to give away ; *verrücken*, to move away ; *verpflanzen*, to transplant ; *versetzen*, to transpose ; *verwechseln*, to change ; *verkaufen*, to sell ; *vertrinken*, to drink away, to spend by drinking ; *verspielen*, to game away ; *verlieren*, to lose ; *verarbeiten*, to work up ; *verblühen*, to fade away ; *verrauchen*, to evaporate ; *verschmachten*, to pine away ; *verbluten*, to bleed to death ; *verwelken*, to wither away.

2nd. Putting out of order, or doing wrong, answering

generally to *mis*; as, *verlegen*, to mislay; *verführen*, to seduce; *verschreiben*, to write wrong; *verbrehen*, to pervert; *versältschen*, to falsify; *versalzen*, to oversalt; *vergeffen*, to forget; *verschieben*, to dislocate; *vernachlässigen*, to neglect, *verrechnen*, to miscalculate.

3d. Putting in the way of, obstructing; as, *verbieten*, to forbid; *versagen*, to deny; *verbitten*, to refuse; *verwehren*, to prohibit; *verhindern*, to prevent; *verschließen*, to lock up; *verbämmen*, to dam up; *versiegeln*, to seal up; *versperren*, to bar up, or out; *vermauern*, to wall up.

4th. Increasing the quality; as, *veralten*, to grow obsolete, from *alt*, old; *verlängern*, to lengthen, from *lang*, long; *verkürzen*, to shorten, from *kurz*, short; *verarmen*, to impoverish, from *arm*, poor; *veredeln*, to ennoble, from *edel*, noble; *vergöttern*, to deify, from *Gott*, God; *verbrüdern*, to fraternize, from *Bruder*, brother; *verschwägern*, to be affined, from *Schwager*, a brother-in-law. Sometimes it adds force to the primitive; as, *verehren*, to venerate, from *ehren*, to honour; *verspotten*, to mock, from *spotten*, to joke with; *verlachen*, to deride, from *lachen*, to laugh; *verleihen*, to lend out, from *leihen*, to lend, &c.

*zer* denotes a thorough separation of the parts; as, *zerbrechen*, to break in pieces; *zerschmettern*, to dash in pieces; *zerrütten*, to shake in pieces; *zerstreuen*, to dissipate; *zerstören*, to destroy; *zerschneiden*, to hack or cut in pieces.

Verbs compounded with *miß*, which answers to the English *mis* and *dis*; take the augment *ge* and the preposition *zu* before the participle and infinitive, when employed either in an active, or a transitive sense; as, *mißbilligen*, to disapprove, *gemißbilliget*, disapproved, *zu mißbilligen*, to disapprove; *mißbrauchen*, to misuse, *gemißbraucht*, misused, but some take the *ge* in the middle; as, *mißarten*, to degenerate, *mißgeartet*, degenerated; *mißleiten*, to mislead, *mißgeleitet*, misled; *mißtreten*, to slip; *mißgetreten*, slipped; but in *mißbegreifen*, to misconceive; *ge* is left out in the participle; as, *mißbegriffen*, misconceived.

Some few neuters drop the participial augment *ge*; as, *mißfallen*, to displease, *es hat mir mißfallen*, it has displeased me; *mißlingen*, to fail; *es ist mißlungen*, it has failed; *mißrathen*, to miscarry, *es ist mißrathen*, it has miscarried; *mißverstehen*, to misunderstand; *man hat es mißverstanden*, it has been misunderstood.

3rd. Some prepositions are both separable and inseparable, namely, *durch*, through; *um*, about; *über*, over; *unter*, under; and *wieder*, again. They are separable in the intransitive, and

**inseparable in the transitive sense ; as, durchbrechen, to break through, or make one's way through ; er bricht durch, (separable) he breaks through ; durchgebrochen, broken through ; etwas durchbrechen, to break through any thing ; er durchbricht eine Mauer, (inseparable) he breaks through a wall ; durchbrochen, broken through ; umlaufen, to go, or run round ; er läuft um, (separable) he runs round ; er hat umgelaufen, he has run round ; etwas umlaufen, to run round a thing ; er umläuft, (inseparable) he runs about ; umlaufen, run round ; übersezen, to leap, or pass over ; er setzt über, (separable) he leaps over ; übergesetzt, passed over ; übersezen, to translate ; er übersetzt aus dem Deutschen, (inseparable) he translates from German ; übersetzt, translated ; we say, er brach hier durch, he broke through here, or without mentioning any place, er brach durch, he broke through ; but die Sonne durchbricht die Wolken, the sun breaks through the clouds ; er hat den Wald durchbrochen, he has broken through the wood ; er ist umgelaufen, he has gone a round ; er umläuft die Stadt, he goes the circuit of the city : but der Reiter setzt über, the horseman leaps over ; but der Schüler übersetzt Sprachen, the scholar translates languages ; Wieder, in composition, is separable in the proper sense, but inseparable in the figurative sense ; as, wieder holen, to fetch back (separable) ; ich habe es wieder geholt, I have fetched it back, but wiederholen, to repeat ; (inseparable) ; ich habe die Worte wiederholt, I have repeated the words. In the above verbs the accent is laid upon the particle when it is separable, but upon the verb when it is inseparable : this remark applies as a rule to all other such verbs.**

**4th. Verbs compounded with nouns, or adverbs, are mostly inseparable ; but take the augment ge in the participle ; as,**

*Infinitive.*

Rathschlagen, to consult.  
Antworten, to answer.

*Pres. Ind.*

Ich rathschlage, I consult.  
Ich antworte, I answer.

*Participle.*

Gerathschlaget, consulted.  
Geantwortet, answered.

So the following :

Argwohnen, to suspect.  
Frohlocken, to exult.  
Frühstücken, to breakfast.  
Fuchschwänzen, to fawn.

Handhaben, to handle.  
Heirathen, to marry.  
Hohnlachen, to laugh to scorn.  
Liebäugeln, to ogle.

Züßeln, to caress.

Rathmassen, to conjecture.

Quacksalbern, to quack.

Radbreden, to break on the wheel.

Rechtfertigen, to justify.

Tagewerken, to work by the day

Urtheilen, to judge.

Urkunden, to testify.

Weissagen, to prophecy.

Wetteifern, to emulate.

Willfahren, to gratify.

Those compounded with *voll* drop the augment *ge*; as, *vollenden*, to finish: *Perf.* ich vollende, I finished; *Part.* vollendet, finished; so, *vollbringen*, to bring about; *vollziehen*, to execute; *vollstrecken*, to accomplish; *vollführen*, to consummate; but *voll* may be separated from some verbs; as, *voll gießen*, to pour full; *voll machen*, to make full. Some other verbs, which are not genuine compounds, are mostly separated; as, *Dank sagen*, to give thanks; *Haus halten*, to keep house; ich sage Dank, I give thanks; Dank gesagt, thanks given; ich halte Haus, I keep house; Haus gehalten, keep house; so likewise *freisprechen*, to acquit; *lostreifen*, to tear asunder; *gleichkommen*, to equal; *wahrsagen*, to prognosticate.

---

*List of the principal Particles with which Compound Verbs are formed.*

1. The following particles are not to be separated from the verbs.

after	as,	afterleben,	to backbite.
be		bedenken,	.. reflect, consider
emp		empfangen,	.. receive.
ent		entstehen,	.. arise.
er		erfinden,	.. invent.
ge		gelingen,	.. prosper.
hinter		hinterbleiben,	.. remain behind.
miß		mißfallen,	.. displease.
ver		verzehren,	.. consume.
verab		verabfolgen,	.. deliver.
vernach		vernachlässigen,	.. neglect.
verun		verunehren,	.. dishonour.
voll		vollbringen,	.. complete.
über		übergeben,	.. surrender.
ur		urtheilen,	.. judge
zer		zerstören,	.. destroy.



2. The following are the principal particles, which, in some tenses of the conjugation, are to be separated from the verbs.

ab	an	anheim
auf	aus	bei, dabei
davon	dafür	davor
darunter	dawider	dazwischen
durch	ein	einher
fort	für	gleich
heim	hin	her
herab	herauf	heraus
herbei	herdurch	herein
hernach	herüber	herum
herunter	hervor	herzu
hinab	hinan	hinauf
hinaus	hinüber	hinzu
innen	mit	nach
nieder	ob	über
überein	unter	voll
vor	voran	voraus
vorüber	vorbei	weg
wieder	zu	zuwider

The above particles have a meaning of themselves, independent of the verbs with which they are connected; some of their meanings may be seen in the following examples :

Abschreiben, to copy,	from	schreiben, to write, ab, from.
Ausschreiben, to extract,		schreiben, to write, aus, out of, or from.
Unterschreiben, to sign,		schreiben, to write, unter, under.
Aufbauen, to erect,		bauen, to build, auf, up.
Nachgehen, to go after,		gehen, to go, nach, after.
Mitnehmen, to take along with,		nehmen, to take, mit, with.
Nieberrennen, to run down,		rennen, to run, nieder, down.
Herbringen, to bring hither, (or here,)		bringen, to bring, her, hither.
Hervorbringen, to bring forth,		bringen, to bring, hervor, forth.
Hinhelpfen, to forward,		helfen, to help, hin, forth.
Hinüberkommen, to come over,		kommen, to come, hinüber, over.
Unterfinken, to go to the bottom,		finken, to sink, unter, under.
Ueberfließen, to overflow,		fließen, to flow, über, over.
Vorreden, to speak before,		reden, to speak, vor, before.

Vorangehen, to go before, from	gehen, to go, voran, before.
Vorbeigehen, to pass by,	gehen, to go, vorbei, by.
Begnehmen, to take away,	nehmen, to take, weg, away.
Wiederkommen, to come again,	kommen, to come, wieder, again.
Zubeißen, to bite at,	beißen, to bite, zu, at.

## Reflective Verbs.

Reflective verbs are formed with the pronouns *mir, dich, sich, uns, euch, sich*, answering to the English pronouns, *myself, thyself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves*; they are conjugated like active verbs, and are either regular, or irregular.

*Conjugation of the Reflective Verb sich lieben, to love one's-self.*

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Sing. }*

PERFECT.

{ *Sing.*

Ich liebe mich, I love myself.

Ich liebe mich, I may love myself.

Du liebst dich, thou lovest thyself.

Du liebest dich, thou mayst love thyself.

Er liebt sich, he loves himself.

Er liebe sich, he may love himself.

Sie liebt sich, she loves herself.

Sie liebe sich, she may love herself.

*Plural.**Plural.*

Wir lieben uns, we love ourselves.

Wir lieben uns, we may love ourselves.

Ihr liebet euch, you love yourselves.

Ihr liebet euch, you may love yourselves.

Sie lieben sich, they love themselves.

Sie lieben sich, they may love themselves.

*Sing. }*

IMPERFECT.

{ *Sing.*

Ich liebte mich, I loved myself.

Ich liebete mich, I might love myself.

Du liebtest dich, thou, &amp;c.

Du liebetest dich, thou, &amp;c.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Plural.**Plural.*

Wir liebten uns, we loved  
ourselves.

Ihr liebtet euch, you, &c.

Wir liebeten uns, we might  
love ourselves.

Ihr liebetet euch, you, &c.

*Sing. }*

## PERFECT.

*{ Sing.*

Ich habe mich geliebt, I have  
loved myself.

Du hast dich geliebt, &c.

Ich habe mich geliebt, I may  
have loved myself.

Du habest dich geliebt, &c.

*Plural.**Plural.*

Wir haben uns geliebt, we  
have loved ourselves.

Ihr habt euch geliebt, &c.

Wir haben uns geliebt, we  
may have loved ourselves.

Ihr habet euch geliebt, &c.

*Sing. }*

## PLUPERFECT.

*{ Sing.*

Ich hatte mich geliebt, I had  
loved myself.

Du hättest dich geliebt, &c.

Ich hätte mich geliebt, I  
might have loved myself.

Du hättest dich geliebt, &c.

*Plural.**Plural.*

Wir hatten uns geliebt, we  
had loved ourselves.

Ihr hättet euch geliebt, &c.

Wir hätten uns geliebt, we  
might have loved ourselves.

Ihr hättet euch geliebt, &c.

*Sing. }*

## FIRST FUTURE.

*{ Sing.*

Ich werde mich lieben, I shall  
love myself.

Du wirst dich lieben, &c.

Ich werde mich lieben, I shall  
love myself.

Du werdest dich lieben, &c.

*Plural.**Plural.*

Wir werden uns lieben, we  
shall love ourselves.

Ihr werdet euch lieben, &c.

Wir werden uns lieben, we  
shall love ourselves.

Ihr werdet euch lieben, &c.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Sing.* }

SECOND FUTURE.

{ *Sing.*

Ich werde mich geliebt haben,  
I shall have loved myself.  
Du wirst dich geliebt haben,  
thou, &c.

Ich werde mich geliebt haben,  
I shall have loved myself.  
Du werdest dich geliebt haben,  
thou, &c.

*Plural.**Plural.*

Wir werden uns geliebt haben,  
we shall have loved ourselves.

Wir werden uns geliebt haben,  
we shall have loved ourselves.

Ihr werdet euch geliebt haben,  
&c.

Ihr werdet euch geliebt haben,  
&c.

*Simp. Sing.* }

CONDITIONAL,

{ *Comp. Sing.*

Ich würde mich lieben, I  
should love myself.  
Du würdest dich lieben, thou,  
&c.

Ich würde mich geliebt haben,  
I should have loved myself  
Du würdest dich geliebt haben,  
&c.

*Plural.**Plural.*

Wir würden uns lieben, we  
should love ourselves.

Wir würden uns geliebt haben,  
we should have loved ourselves.

Ihr würdet euch lieben, &c.

Ihr würdet euch geliebt haben,  
you, &c.

*Sing.* }

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

{ *Plural.*

Liebe dich, love thyself.

Liebt, or liebet euch, love yourselves.

Liebe er sich, let him love himself.

Lieben sie sich, let them love themselves.

*Exercise on the Reflective Verbs.*

## INDICATIVE.—Present.

I am ashamed,	sich schämen, to be ashamed.
Thou art conceited,	sich einbilden, to be conceited
He blames himself,	sich tadeln, to blame one's self
We unite together,	sich vereinigen, to unite.
You forget yourselves,	sich vergessen, to forget.
They assume to themselves,	sich anmaßen, to assume.

## Imperfect.

We rejoiced,	sich freuen, to rejoice.
He betook himself.	sich begeben, to betake one's self.
We got leisure.	sich abmüßigen, to get leisure
You prepared yourselves,	sich anschicken, to prepare.
They helped themselves.	sich helfen, to help.

## Perfect.

I have been vexed,	sich ärgern, to be vexed.
Thou hast been mistaken,	sich irren, to be mistaken.
He has been shy,	sich scheuen, to be shy.
It has appeared,	sich äußern, to appear.
We have recovered our- selves,	sich erholen, to recover one's self.
You have been mortified, or hurt,	sich kränken, to be mortified.
They have complained,	sich beklagen, to complain.

## Pluperfect.

I had found myself,	sich befinden, to find one's self
Thou hadst rejoiced,	sich freuen, to rejoice.
He had been vexed,	sich ärgern, to be vexed.
She had hesitated, or be- thought herself,	sich bedenken, to hesitate.
We had been cautious,	sich hüten, to be cautious.
You had been afraid,	sich fürchten, to be afraid.
They had applied themselves,	sich befeßigen, to apply one's self.

## Imperative.

Do not offend,	sich vergehen, to offend, to fail in one's duty.
Grieve not,	sich grämen, to grieve.
Do not complain,	sich beklagen, to complain.
Do not burn yourself,	sich verbrennen, to burn.
Be not afraid,	sich fürchten, to be afraid.

*Observations on the Reflective Verbs.*

1. Reflective verbs are always active, and require the auxiliary *haben* in the compound tenses; although the verbs be otherwise neuter, and require *seyn*; as, *ich habe mich müde geritten*, I have ridden myself weary, or I have wearied myself with riding; but *reiten*, otherwise requires *seyn*; as, *ich bin geritten*, I have ridden.

2. There are many reflective verbs in German, which are not so in English; as, *sich erbarmen*, to pity; *sich grämen*, to grieve; and many others, as in the above practice. Some are only employed in the reflective form; as,

sich begeben, to repair to.	sich bedanken, to thank.
sich bemächtigen, to get possession of.	sich grämen, to be grieved.
sich freuen, to rejoice.	sich brüsten, or rühmen, to boast one's self, &c.
sich ärgern, to be vexed.	

Some are employed in both forms; as,

*Irren*, to err, or *sich irren*, to be mistaken.  
*Zanken*, to quarrel, or *sich zanken*, to embroil one's-self.  
*Scheuen*, to shun, or *sich scheuen*, to be shy.

3. Most reflective verbs take the pronoun in the accusative; as, *Ich erbarme mich*, I pity; *Ich besinne mich*, I reflect; but some few admit the pronoun in the dative; as, *ich maße mir nicht an*, I do not assume; *ich bilde mir nicht ein*, I do not fancy; *ich getraue mir*, I am confident.

4. When the reflective pronoun is in the accusative plural, the proper reflective verbs admit of *sich* only; as, *sie entschließen sich*, they resolve; but those verbs which may be used reciprocally, or otherwise, admit either *sich*, or *einander*; as, *sie schlagen sich*, or *einander*, they beat one another; *sie lieben sich*, or *sie lieben einander wie Kinder*, they love one another like

children ; Sie sind sich alle gleich, they are all alike, or they are all like each other ; wir sehen alle einander gleich, we all resemble each other. Here the German differs from the English, in making no distinction between sich and einander, they beat themselves, and they beat one another, have distinct meanings in English, though both may be translated into German by either phrase ; but you cannot say in German, Sie schämen einander, because schämen, to be ashamed, is not a transitive verb, but beschämen is transitive.

### Impersonal Verbs.

The impersonal verbs are regular or irregular, and take the pronoun es, in the third person singular only ; as in the following examples.

#### *Conjugation of the Regular Verb Regnen, to rain.\**

##### INDICATIVE.

##### SUBJUNCTIVE.

##### PRESENT.

Es regnet, it rains.

Es regne, it may rain.

##### IMPERFECT.

Es regnete, it rained.

Es regnete, it might rain.

##### PERFECT.

Es hat geregnet, it has rained. Es habe geregnet, it may have rained.

##### PLUPERFECT.

Es hatte geregnet, it had rained. Es hätte geregnet, it might have rained.

##### FIRST FUTURE.

Es wird regnen, it will rain. Es werde regnen, it will rain.

---

\* Regnen, to rain, is conjugated like the regular verb lieben, to love, in the third person singular.

SECOND FUTURE.

**Es** wird geregnet haben, it will have rained.      **Es** werde geregnet haben, it will have rained.

*Simple.* }      CONDITIONAL.      { *Compound.*

**Es** würde regnen, it would rain.      **Es** würde geregnet haben, it would have rained.

*Obs.* There is no imperative.

The following verbs may be conjugated in a similar manner.

Donnern, to thunder.

Blitzen, to lighten.

Schneien, to snow.

Thauen, to thaw, &c

Hageln, or schließen, to hail.

*Conjugation of the Irregular Verb Frieren, to freeze.*

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

**Es** friert, it freezes.

**Es** friere, it may freeze.

IMPERFECT.

**Es** fror, it froze.

**Es** fröre, it might freeze.

PERFECT.

**Es** hat gefroren, it has frozen.

**Es** habe gefroren, it may have frozen.

PLUPERFECT.

**Es** hatte gefroren, it had frozen.

**Es** hätte gefroren, it might have frozen.

FIRST FUTURE.

**Es** wird frieren, it will freeze.

**Es** werde frieren, it will freeze

SECOND FUTURE.

**Es** wird gefroren haben, it will have frozen.

**Es** werde gefroren haben, it will have frozen.



<i>Simple.</i> }	CONDITIONAL.	{ <i>Compound.</i>
Es würde frieren, it would freeze.	Es würde gefroren haben, it would have frozen.	
<i>Obs.</i> There is no imperative.		

Some verbs are reflective, as well as impersonal, as in the following example.

*Conjugation of the Impersonal Reflective Verb sich ärgern, to be vexed.*

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Singular.</i> }	PRESENT.	{ <i>Singular.</i>	
Es ärgert mich, I am vexed, or it vexes me, &c.	Es ärgere mich, I may be vexed, or it may vex me.		
Es ärgert dich, thou art vexed, or it vexes thee.	Es ärgere dich, thou mayst be vexed, or it may vex thee.		
Es ärgert ihn, or sie, he, or she is vexed, or it vexed him, or her.	Es ärgere ihn, he may be vexed, or it may vex him.		
<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Es ärgert uns, we are vexed, or it vexes us.	Es ärgere uns, we may be vexed, or it may vex us.		
Es ärgert euch, you are vexed, or it vexes you.	Es ärgere euch, you may be vexed, or it may vex you.		
Es ärgert sie, they are vexed, or it vexes them.	Es ärgere sie, they may be vexed, or it may vex them.		
<i>Sing.</i> }	IMPERFECT.	{ <i>Sing.</i>	
Es ärgerte mich, I was vexed, or it vexed me, &c.	Es ärgerte mich, I might be vexed, or it might vex me, &c.		
<i>Sing.</i> }	PERFECT.	{ <i>Sing.</i>	
Es hat mich geärgert, I have been vexed, or it has vexed me, &c.	Es habe mich geärgert, I may have been vexed, or it may have vexed me, &c.		

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Sing.* }

PLUPERFECT.

*{ Sing.*

Es hatte mich geärgert, I had  
been vexed, or it had vex-  
ed me, &c.

Es hätte mich geärgert, I  
might have been vexed, or  
it might have vexed me, &c

*Sing.* }

FIRST FUTURE.

*{ Sing.*

Es wird mich ärgern, I shall  
be vexed, or it will vex  
me, &c.

Es werde mich ärgern, I shall  
be vexed, or it will vex me,  
&c.

*Sing.* }

SECOND FUTURE.

*{ Sing.*

Es wird mich geärgert ha-  
ben, I shall have been  
vexed, or it will have vex-  
ed me, &c.

Es werde mich geärgert ha-  
ben, I shall have been  
vexed, or it might have  
vexed me, &c.

*Simp. Sing.* }

CONDITIONAL.

*{ Comp. Sing.*

Es würde mich ärgern, I  
should be vexed, or it  
would vex me.

Es würde mich geärgert ha-  
ben, I should have been  
vexed, or it would have  
vexed me.

*Obs.* This verb has no imperative, or participle.

*Exercise on the Impersonals.*

PRESENT.

I am hungry,  
It freezes,  
We are thirsty,  
They are sleepy,

sich hungern, to be hungry.  
frieren, to freeze.  
sich dursten, to be thirsty.  
sich schläfern, to be sleepy.

## IMPERFECT.

It rained,	regnen, to rain.
It thawed,	thauen, to thaw.
We were grieved,	sich grämen, to grieve.
You were grieved,	.....
They were chagrined,	(sich) verbrießen, to be chagrined.

## PERFECT.

I have been giddy,	(sich) schwindeln, to be giddy.
Thou hast been hungry,	(sich) hungern, to be hungry.
It has hailed,	hageln, to hail.
We have been glad,	sich freuen, to be glad.
You have been grieved,	sich grämen, to be grieved.

## FUTURE.

It will be a hoarfrost,	reifen, to be a hoarfrost.
We shall be hungry,	(sich) hungern, to be hungry.
You will be thirsty,	(sich) dursten, to be thirsty.
They will be vexed,	sich ärgern, to be vexed.

## CONDITIONAL.

I should be surprised,	sich wundern, to be surprised.
You would be chagrined,	sich verbrießen, to be chagrined.
It would behove,	(sich) gebühren, to behove.

*Observations on the Impersonals.*

1. The proper impersonals are those verbs which express the operations of nature, or states of the weather, as :

Es regnet, it rains.	Es frieret, it freezes.
Es schneiet, it snows.	Es thauet, it thaws.
Es hagelt, it hails.	Es wittert, (es stürmet) it storms
Es donnert, it thunders.	Es wehet, it blows.
Es blizet, it lightens.	Es taget, it dawns.
Es schauert, it showers.	Es währet, (es dauert) it lasts.
Es ist warm, it is warm.	Es ist trocken, it is dry.
Es ist heiß, it is very warm.	Es ist windig, it is windy.

**Es ist licht,** it is light.  
**Es ist kalt,** it is cold.  
**Es ist dunkel,** it is dark.  
**Es ist naß,** it is wet.  
**Es ist neblig,** it is foggy.  
**Es ist regnig,** it is rainy.  
**Es ist schlechtes Wetter,** it is dirty, or bad weather.

**Es ist frostig,** it is frosty.  
**Es ist stürmisch,** it is stormy.  
**Es ist wölktig,** it is cloudy.  
**Es ist tothig,** it is dirty.  
**Es ist klar,** it is clear.  
**Es ist schönes Wetter,** it is fine weather.

2. The following verbs govern a dative case of the personal pronouns ; (*viz.*) *mir, dir, ihm, (ihr,) uns, euch, ihnen ; as,*

**Es beliebt, or es gefällt mir, dir, ihm, &c.** it pleases me, thee, him, &c.

**Es mangelt mir,** it is wanting to me, or I want.

**Es gebührt mir,** it becomes me

**Es mißfällt mir,** it displeases me.

**Es eßelt mir,** I am disgusted, or it disgusts me.

**Es mißlingt mir,** I do not succeed in it.

**Es fehlt mir,** I want.

**Es träumt mir,** I dream, (*it dreams to me.*)

**Es kommt mir vor,** it seems, or appears to me.

**Es ziemt, or es geziemt mir,** it becomes me.

**Es ist mir warm,** I am warm.

**Es scheint mir,** it seems to me.

**Es ist mir kalt,** I am cold.

**Es ist mir Angst,** I am afraid.

**Es bekommt mir,** it agrees with me.

**Es ist mir wohl,** I am well.

3. The following govern the accusative case of the pronouns ; *viz. mich, dich, ihn, or sich, (ihr,) uns, euch, sie, or sich ; as,*

**Es hungert mich, dich, &c.** I am hungry, thou art hungry, &c.

**Es jammert mich,** it grieves me.

**Es durftet mich,** I am thirsty.

**Es betrübt mich,** it afflicts me.

**Es schläfert mich,** I am sleepy.

**Es dauert mich,** it grieves me.

**Es reuet mich,** I repent, or it repents me.

**Es mahnet mich,** it puts me in mind of, or it reminds me.

**Es freuet mich, or es erfreuet mich,** I rejoice, or it rejoices me.

**Es wunderet mich,** it surprises me.

**Es frieret mich,** I am cold.

**Es verlanget mich,** it makes me long.

**Es verbriest mich, or es verbräst mich,** it vexes me.

When the pronoun is put first, *es* is omitted ; *as,*

**Mich hungert,** I am hungry.

**Mir beliebt,** I am pleased.

**Mich durftet,** I am thirsty.

**Mir fehlt,** I want, &c.

4. The following admit of both a dative and accusative of the pronoun.

**Es dünkt mir, (mich,) or es dünkt mir, (mich),** it seems to me.

**Mir, (mich) dünkt, or mir (mich) dünkt,** I think, or methinks.

**Es hilft mir, (mich),** it helps me.



## PERFECT.

Es ist gewesen, there has, Es hat gegeben, there has,  
or have been. or have been.

## FUTURE.

Es wird seyn, there will be. Es wird geben, there will be.

## CONDITIONAL.

Es würde seyn, there would Es würde geben, there would  
be. be.

And so on through the subjunctive.

Sometimes es is employed with the passive verb : as, es wird gesagt, it is said : but in this connexion the indefinite pronoun man is more commonly used, answering to the English *one, we, people, men*, or the passive verb *to be*, &c. ; as, man glaubt, it is believed, we believe, they, people, men believe ; man hat geläugnet, it has been denied ; man wird hoffen, we shall hope.

*Recapitulatory Exercises upon the Verbs.*

## FIRST LESSON.

Deutschland ist kaum seit zwei tausend Jahren bekannt worden.

Die alten Deutschen waren rohe Barbaren, nicht viel besser als die wilden Amerikaner.

Wälder und Sümpfe verbreiteten sich im Lande. Die Wälder waren mit Unkraut und Gesträuch verwachsen. Die Flüsse traten aus und überschwemmten das Land.

Die Einwohner schwammen über die Flüsse weil sie von Brücken nichts wußten. Keine Städte waren zu sehen.

Kaum traf man ein Paar Wohnungen nahe bei einander an, nur Köln und noch ein Paar Städte lagen am Rheine.

Sie baueten sehr wenige Häuser und keine solche wie wir gebauet haben.

Kaum, scarcely. Bekannt, known. Seit, ago. Alt, ancient. Deutscher, German. Rohe, rude. Barbar, barbarian. Wild, wild. \*Wald, wood, or forest. \*Sumpf, marsh. Sich verbreiten, to spread. \*Land, country. Verwachsen, to overgrow. Unkraut, weed. Gesträuch, broom. \*Fluß, river. Auftreten, to break its banks. Ueberschwemmen, to overflow. Einwohner,

inhabitant. Schwimmen, to swim. Weil, because. Brücke, bridge. Zu sehen, to be seen. Antreffen, to meet with. Paar, couple, or two. Wohnung, habitation. Nahe bei, near to. Köln, Cologne. Noch ein Paar, a few other. Liegen, to lie. Am, (for an dem,) on the. Bauen, to build. Wenig, few. Solcher, such.

## SECOND LESSON.

Sie lagen und schliefen aber unter den Bäumen, oder machten sich unterirdische Höhlen.

Weder die Männer noch Frauen waren prächtig gekleidet. Diese trugen keine von den schönen Kleidern, welche die Damen seit dreihundert Jahren getragen haben.

Wir haben die Mittel gefunden, alles schön zu machen.

Wir haben die Schafe geschoren und davon Wolle bekommen.

Die Würme, welche wir aufgezogen, haben uns Seide gesponnen.

Aus diesen beiden haben wir Tuch und Seide gewebt.

Die Deutschen Weiber spinnen und webten die Kleidung, welche die ganze Familie trug, aber das Gewebe war freilich nicht gut gearbeitet.

Sie lasen nichts weil sie keine Bücher hatten, sie dachten, sprachen und schrieben sehr wenig, weil sie sehr wenig sahen und hörten.

Wir haben hingegen viel gesehen, gehört, geschrieben, gesprochen und gedacht.

Schlafen, to sleep. Unterirdisch, subterranean. Höhle, cavern. Weder, neither. Noch, nor. Prächtig, elegantly. Kleiden, to clothe. Tragen, to wear. Schön, fine. Strich, cloth. Dame, lady. Finden, to find. Mittel, means. Scheren, to shear. Bekommen, to get. Wolle, wool. Aufziehen, to bring up. Spinnen, to spin. Seide, silk. Weben, to weave. Kleidung, clothing. Ganz, whole. Tragen, to wear. Gewebe, weaving. Freilich, indeed, certainly. Arbeiten, to work. Hören, to hear. Hingegen, on the contrary.

## Adverbs, Nebenwörter.

The following is an alphabetical list of those adverbs which most frequently occur in writing and conversation:

## ADVERBS OF PLACE.

Most of these adverbs of place answer to some one of the following questions: *Wo? where? Wohin? whither? what way? Woher? whence? where?*

<b>Abwesend</b> , absent.	<b>Daraus</b> , out of, from it, or them, thereof.
<b>Allenthalben</b> , every where, in all places.	<b>Darin</b> , therein, in, within.
<b>Allerorten</b> , every where, in every place.	<b>Daselbst</b> , there, in that very place.
<b>Allerseits</b> , on every side.	<b>Diesseits</b> , on this side.
<b>Allermwärts</b> , allermwegen, every where, throughout.	<b>Dort</b> , there, yonder.
<b>Allhier</b> , or <b>hier</b> , here.	<b>Dorthier</b> , thence, from yonder.
<b>Anderswo</b> , elsewhere, or somewhere else.	<b>Dorthin</b> , thither, that way.
<b>Anderswärts</b> , in another place.	<b>Draußen</b> , without, out.
<b>Anderswoher</b> , from another place.	<b>Drinne</b> , drin, within.
<b>Anderswohin</b> , to another place.	<b>Droben</b> , above, up stairs, aloft, on high.
<b>Anwesend</b> , present.	<b>Ein und aus</b> , in and out.
<b>Außen</b> , externally, outward.	<b>Fern</b> , ferne, far, distant, remote.
<b>Außen</b> , without, out.	<b>Fort</b> , forth, further on.
<b>Außerhalb</b> , without, on the outside, abroad.	<b>Hierher</b> , or <b>hierher</b> , hither, here, this way.
<b>Außerlich</b> , externally.	<b>Hier</b> , here, into this place.
<b>Da</b> , there.	<b>Hier und da</b> , here, and there.
<b>Dabei</b> , just by, thereby, hereby.	<b>Hinter</b> , behind, after.
<b>Daher</b> , hence, thence, from there.	<b>Hin und her</b> , to and from.
<b>Dahin</b> , thither, thereto.	<b>Innen</b> , within.
<b>Dahinter</b> , behind.	<b>Inwendig</b> , internally, within, inwardly.
<b>Dahinwärts</b> , there to, that way.	<b>Irgend</b> , or <b>irgend</b> , somewhere, anywhere about.
<b>Daneben</b> , just by.	<b>Irgend wo</b> , somewhere, in some place.
<b>Darauf</b> , thereon, upon it, whereon, at.	<b>Nah</b> , or <b>nahe</b> , near, nigh, close to.
	<b>Nähe bei</b> , or <b>bei nahe</b> , near, very near, hard by.
	<b>Nirgend</b> , or <b>nirgend</b> , nowhere, in no place.



Nirgendwo, in no place whatever.	Weit ab, far off.
Oben, above, on high, aloft.	Wo, where, in what place.
Von hinnen, hence, from, here, from this place.	Woher, whence, from what place.
Von wannen, whence, from what place	Wohin, whither, to what place, which way.
Vorn, before, in front.	Wohinwärts, whereto, to what place.

## ADVERBS OF TIME.

Allerwegen, every where.	Morgen, to-morrow.
Allerwege, always.	Nacher, nachmals, afterwards.
Allezeit, at all times, always.	Nachmittags, in the after- noon.
Alsdann, alsdenn, *dann, denn, then, at that time.	Neulich, newly, lately.
Bald, soon, quickly.	Nie, niemals, never.
Beizeiten, betimes, in good time.	Nimmer, nimmermehr, never more.
Bis her, hitherto, till now.	Noch, still, yet.
Bisweilen, zuweilen, zuzei- ten, sometimes, now and then, at intervals.	Noch nicht, not yet.
Damals, then, at that time.	Schon, already.
Eben nun, just now.	Seit, seither, since, hither- to, till now.
Ehemals, or vormalß, for- merly, heretofore.	Spät, late, backward.
Einst, einstens, once.	Stets, always, continually, ever, perpetually.
Einstmals, at some time.	Unlängst, not long since, lately, not long ago.
Früh, early, fast.	Uebermorgen, the day after to-morrow.
Gestern, yesterday.	Vorgestern, the day before yesterday.
Heute, to-day.	Vorlängst, long ago, long since.
Immer, ever, always.	Vormittags, in the forenoon.
Je, jemals, ever, always.	Wann? Wenn? when, at what time?
Jetzt, nun, now.	Wieder, wiederum, again, anew, afresh.
Lange, or schon lange, long, long since, long ago.	
Lebens, leht hin, lehtlich, lately, lastly.	
Mittags, at noon.	

\* Some writers distinguish the adverb *bann*, *then*, from the conjunction *denn*, *for*, by spelling the former *bann*, also to distinguish *wann*, *when*, from *wenn*, *if*.

AFFIRMATIVE AND NEGATIVE.

<b>Allerdings</b> , really, entirely, surely, quite.	<b>Nein</b> , no.
<b>Durchaus</b> , thoroughly.	<b>Schlechterdings</b> , absolutely, peremptorily, obstinately.
<b>Gar nicht</b> , not at all.	<b>Unfehlbar</b> , doubtless, infallible, perfect.
<b>Gewiß</b> , certainly.	<b>Unglaublich</b> , incredible.
<b>Glaublich</b> , credibly.	<b>Bermuthlich</b> , probably, likely, apparently.
<b>Immermehr</b> , ever, at any time.	<b>Vielleicht</b> , perhaps, possibly.
<b>Ja</b> , yes.	<b>Wahrlich</b> , truly, indeed, verily.
<b>Ja freilich</b> , or ja wohl, yes, to be sure, surely.	<b>Wirklich</b> , really, truly, actually, positively.
<b>Kaum</b> , hardly, scarcely.	
<b>Keinesweges</b> , mit nichten, by no means, in no wise, not in the least, not at all.	

ADVERBS OF VARIOUS USE.

<b>Als</b> , wie, as, like.	<b>Sacht</b> , softly, gently.
<b>Alzu</b> , too.	<b>Sämmtlich</b> , all together.
<b>Anders</b> , otherwise, differently.	<b>Schlecht</b> , bad, badly, ill.
<b>Beinahe</b> , nearly, almost.	<b>Sehr</b> , very, much, greatly.
<b>Besonders</b> , particularly.	<b>So</b> , so, <b>So bald</b> , as soon as.
<b>Böse</b> , bad, badly, every.	<b>Sonderlich</b> , particularly, especially.
<b>Darum</b> , therefore.	<b>Theils</b> , partly.
<b>Endlich</b> , lastly, finally.	<b>Uebel</b> , bad, ill, evil.
<b>Ganz</b> , ganzlich, entirely, wholly, whole, completely.	<b>Ueberaus</b> , exceedingly, beyond measure.
<b>Gar</b> , entirely, enough.	<b>Ungefähr</b> , casually, by chance, accidentally.
<b>Genug</b> , enough, sufficiently.	<b>Ungemein</b> , uncommonly, rarely.
<b>Gleich</b> , like, equally.	<b>Unrecht</b> , unjustly, wrong, wrongfully.
<b>Hauptsächlich</b> , chiefly.	<b>Vielmahl</b> , many times, often.
<b>Kurz</b> , in short.	<b>Vielmehr</b> , rather, much more.
<b>Meist</b> , mostly, most.	<b>Vollends</b> , entirely, wholly, quite, fully.
<b>Mit Fleiß</b> , on purpose.	<b>Wollig</b> , fully, entirely.
<b>Obenhin</b> , superficially, slightly, cursorily.	
<b>Rechts</b> , rightly.	
<b>Reblich</b> , sincerely, honestly, frankly.	

Warum? why? wherefore? for what reason?	Ja, closed.
Wie? how? wie viel? how much?	Zugleich, at once, together.
	Zum Theil, in part, partly.
Wohl, gut, well.	Zusammen, together, jointly.

## OBSERVATIONS ON THE ADVERBS.

1. The following substantives, denoting parts of the natural day, are changed into adverbs in the following manner:

<i>Substantives.</i>	<i>Adverbs.</i>
Der Tag, the day;	Tags, des Tags, in the day-time.
Die Nacht, the night;	Nachts, des Nachts, in the night.
Der Morgen, the morning;	Morgens, des Morgens, in the morning.
Der Abend, the evening;	Abends, des Abends, in the evening.
Der Vormittag, the forenoon;	Vormittags, des Vormittags, in the forenoon.
Der Nachmittag, the afternoon;	Nachmittags, des Nachmittags, in the afternoon.
Der Mittag, noon;	Mittags, des Mittags, at noon.
Die Mitternacht, midnight;	Mitternachts, des Mitternachts, at midnight.
Der Augenblick, the moment;	Augenblicks, des Augenblicks, in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye.

So some other words become adverbs, by means of an additional s; as, bereits, already, from bereit, ready; stets, constantly, from stet, constant; besonders, particularly, from besonder, particular; anders, otherwise, from ander, other; rechts, to the right hand, from recht, right; links, to the left, from link, left, &c. Numerals become adverbs, by adding ens, or tens; as, erstens, in the first

place, or firstly; *weitens*, secondly; *drittens*, thirdly, &c. And the following words; *bestens*, in the best manner; *meistens*, mostly; *ehestens*, with the first opportunity; *höchstens*, at the most; *übrigens*, as for the rest, in the mean time.

2. Many adjectives and nouns may be changed into adverbs by adding the syllable *lich*, and changing the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*; as, *klar*, clear, *klärlich*, clearly; *Gott*, God, *göttlich*, godly; *gut*, good, *gütlich*, goodly, &c.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs are invariable, except that some admit the degrees of comparison; as,

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
<i>Gut</i> , or <i>wohl</i> , well;	<i>besser</i> , better;	<i>am</i> , ( <i>zum</i> ) <i>besten</i> , best.
<i>Uebel</i> , ill;	<i>schlimmer</i> , worse;	..... <i>schlimsten</i> , worst
<i>Viel</i> , much;	<i>mehr</i> , more;	..... <i>meisten</i> , most.
<i>Wenig</i> , little, few.	<i>weniger</i> , less;	..... <i>wenigsten</i> , least.
<i>Nähe</i> , near;	<i>näher</i> , nearer;	..... <i>nächsten</i> , nearest
<i>Hoch</i> , high;	<i>höher</i> , higher;	..... <i>höchsten</i> , highest
<i>Bald</i> , or <i>ehe</i> , soon;	<i>eker</i> , sooner;	..... <i>ehesten</i> , soonest.
<i>Gern</i> , readily, or willingly;	<i>lieber</i> , more readily, or rather.	..... <i>liebsten</i> , most readily, best, or most willingly.

*Observe.* The syllable *un* changes the adverbs from affirmatives to negatives, in the same manner as *in*, or *un* in English; as, *möglich*, possible; *unmöglich*, impossible; *vermögend*, able; *unvermögend*, unable.

**Prepositions, Wörter.**

Of Prepositions, observe their *government*, *composition*, and *abbreviation*.

## THEIR GOVERNMENT.

Some prepositions govern a genitive, some a dative, some either a genitive, or dative, some an accusative, and some either a dative, or an accusative.

---

1. *Prepositions governing the Genitive.*

Anstatt, or statt, instead.

Anstatt des Vaters, instead of the father.

Außerhalb, out of.

Außerhalb des Hauses, out of the house.

Diesseits, on this side.

Diesseits des Flusses, on this side of the river.

Halben, (or halber, *when* no article or pronoun is used before the noun) on account of, for the sake of, for.

Ich thue es der Freundschaft halben, I do it for the sake of friendship. Deiner Laster halben, on account of your vices. Alters halben, on account of age, or for age.

Innerhalb, in, within.

Innerhalb des Hauses, in, or within the house.

Innerhalb der Mauer, within the wall.

Jenseit, or jenseits, beyond, on the other side of.

Jenseit des Rheines, beyond, or on the other side of the Rhine. Jenseits der Berge, beyond, or on the other side of the hills or mountains.

Kraft, by virtue of, on account of, according to.

Kraft meines Amtes, by virtue, or on account of my office. Kraft meines Versprechens, according to my promise. Kraft der Gesetze, according to law.

Laut, according to, conformably.

Laut des königlichen Befehles, according to the king's commands.

**Mittelft**, *better* vermittelt, by means of, by the help of.

**Mittelft** einer Leiter auf das Dach steigen, to mount upon the roof by means of a ladder. **Bermittelft** deines Beistandes, by means of your assistance.

**Oberhalb**, in the upper, or higher part, above.

**Oberhalb** der Stadt, in the upper part of the town.

**Ungeachtet**, notwithstanding. (*Sometimes precedes, and sometimes follows the noun.*)

**Ungeachtet** aller Hindernisse, notwithstanding all impediments. **Seines Fleißes ungeachtet**, notwithstanding his industry.

**Unterhalb**, in the lower part, below, under.

**Unterhalb** der Stadt, des Rheins, in the lower part of the town, of the Rhine.

**Unweit**, not far from.

**Unweit** des Dorfes, not far from the village.

**Bermöge**, by reason or virtue of, by dint of, by means of.

**Bermöge** seiner Geburt, by reason of his birth.

**Bermöge** der Uebung, by dint of practice. **Bermöge** des Fleißes, by means of diligence.

**Während**, during.

**Während** der Zeit, during the time. **Während** des Krieges, during the war.

**Wegen**, on account of, because of. (*It may stand before or after the noun.*)

**Ich** that es meines Vaters wegen, I did it because of, or on account of my father. **Wegen** seines Fleißes, on account of his diligence.

---

## 2. Prepositions which govern the Dative.

**Aus**, out of.

**Aus** dem Bette, out of bed.

**Außer**, out of, without, besides.

**Außer Ordnung**, out of, or without order. **Außer der Stadt**, out of the city or town. **Außer dem Hause**, out of the house. **Außer mir**, besides me.

**Bei**, by, near, with, about.

**Bei der Hand**, by the hand. **Bei dem Hause**, near the house. **Er wohnt bei mir**, he lives with me. **Ich habe kein Geld bei mir**, I have no money about me.

**Entgegen**, against, towards.

**Dem Winde entgegen**, against the wind.

**Entgegen gehen**, to go to meet, (*stands after its case*).

**Wir wollen unserm Freunde entgegen gehen**, we will go to meet our friend.

**Gegen-über**, opposite to, (*may be separated*).

**Dem Hause gegenüber**, opposite to the house. **Gegen mir über**, opposite to me.

**Mit**, with.

**Mit ihm**, with him. **Mit dem Vater**, with the father.

**Nach**, 1st. after, behind. 2nd. to, or towards, with names of places, and verbs expressive of motion. 3rd. according to, following.

**Nach mir**, after, or behind me. **Wann gehen Sie nach der Stadt?** when do you go to town? **Seiner Geburt nach**, according to his birth. **Dem Strome nach**, following the stream.

**Nebst**, or **sammt**, together with.

**Nebst**, or **sammt dem Vater**, together with the father.

**Seit**, since.

**Seit der Zeit**, since the time.

**Von**, from, of, by.

**Von mir**, from me, of me. **Das Buch ist von ihm geschrieben**, that book is written by him.

**Vor**, before

**Vor mir**, before me.

**Zu**, to, at, by, on, in.

**Zu mir**, to me. **Zu London**, at, or in London.

**Zu Hause**, at home. **Zu Wasser**, by water. **Zu Fuße**, on foot.

**Zunächst**, next to.

**Er saß mir zunächst**, he sat next to me.

**Zuwider**, contrary to, against.

**Mir zuwider**, against me.

3. *Prepositions governing the Accusative.*

**Durch**, through.

**Durch den Wald**, through the wood. **Durch dich**, through you.

**Für**, for.

**Für mich**, for me. **Für den Preis**, for the price.

\* **Gegen**, against, opposite to.

**Gegen den Wind**, against the wind. **Gegen mich**, against me, or opposite to me.

**Gen**, when it means towards, is applied to **Himmel** only ;  
as,

**Gen Himmel**, towards heaven.

**Gen**, by, is used as a nautical phrase ; as,

**Nord gen Ost**, north by east.

† **Dhne**, **Sonder**, without.

**Dhne**, or **Sonder mich**, without me.

**Um**, about.

**Um die Stadt**, about the city. **Um mich**, about me.

\* **Gegen** is also used with the dative, but then it signifies *towards* ; as, **gegen mir**, *ihm*, towards me, him.

† **Dhne** sometimes governs the *genitive*.



**Wider**, against, in opposition to.

**Wider mich, euch, ihn, sie, es, sie**, against me, you, him, her, it, them.

---

4. *Prepositions governing the Genitive, or Dative ; and the Genitive, or Accusative,*

**Ohne**, without (*with the accusative*).

**Ohne mich**, without me.

After the substantive with the *genitive*.

**Zweifels ohne**, without doubt.

**Zufolge**, according to, before the substantive with the *genitive*.

**Zufolge ihres Befehls**, according to your command.

After the substantive with the *dative*.

**Ihrem Befehl zufolge**, according to your command.

**Längs**, along, (generally with the *dative*, sometimes with the *genitive*.)

**Längs dem Wege**, along the way. **Längs des Weges**, along the way.

---

5. *Prepositions governing the Dative or Accusative.*

If they signify being in a place, either in motion or at rest, the *dative* is used ; but when motion *to* a place is expressed, the *accusative* is used.

**An**, at, in, on ; *dative*.

**An einem Orte**, in, or at a place. **Er ist an allen Orten**, he is at, or in every place.

**An**, to ; *accusative*.

**Er gehet an alle Orte**, he goes to every place.

**Auf**, in, upon ; *dative*.

**Er ist auf dem Felde**, he is in the field. **Das Buch liegt auf dem Tische**, the book lies upon the table.

---

**Auf**, into, on ; *accusative*.

Er gehet auf das Feld, he goes into the field. Lege das Buch auf den Tisch, lay the book on the table.

**Hinter**, behind ; *dative*.

Er ist hinter mir, he is behind me.

**Hinter**, behind ; *accusative*.

Er stellt sich hinter mich, he places himself behind me.

**In**, in ; *dative*.

Er ist in dem Zimmer, he is in the room.

**In**, into ; *accusative*.

Er gehet in das Zimmer, he goes into the room.

**Neben**, next to ; *dative*.

Er wohnt neben meinem Hause, he lives next to my house.

**Neben**, next to ; *accusative*.

Er ziehet neben mein Haus, he removes next to my house.

**Ueber**, over, above ; *dative*.

Er wohnt über mir, he lives over, or above me.

**Ueber**, over ; *accusative*.

Er springet über mich, he jumps over me.

**Unter**, among, below, under ; *dative*.

Er ist unter den Leuten, he is among the people.

Er ist unter mir, he is below me. Es liegt unter dem Tische, it lies under the table.

**Unter**, among, under, below ; *accusative*.

Er gehet unter die Leute, he goes among the people.

Er demüthiget sich unter mich, he humbles himself below me. Ich werfe es unter den Tisch, I throw it under the table.

**Vor**, before ; *dative*.

Vor der Zeit, before the time. Vor mir stand ein Baum, before me stood a tree.

Vor, before ; *accusative*.

Vor die Thür, before the door. Er gehet vor den Richter zu treten, he is going to appear before the judge.

Zwischen, between ; *dative*.

Ich bin zwischen zweien Freunden, I am between two friends. Zwischen dir und mir, between you and me.

Zwischen, between ; *accusative*.

Sie kam zwischen zwei Kinder, she came between two children. Er kam zwischen dich und mich, he came between you and me.

#### THEIR COMPOSITION.

Some prepositions are often compounded with *hie*, *hier*, *da*, *wo*, and form adverbs ; if the preposition begin with a vowel, or n, then r is added to the adverbs *da* and *wo*.

1st. With *da*, *dar*, instead of *der*, *dieser*, *derselbe*.

Dabei, by it, with it, thereby.	Darunter, under it, or that.
Daran, on it, or that, thereon.	Dafür, for that.
Darauf, upon it, or that, thereupon.	Dagegen, against it, or that.
Daraus, from thence, it, that, whereupon.	Damit, with that, or it, by it, therewith.
Darein, thereinto, into it, or that.	Daneben, near that, or it, next to it. (r is omitted from daneben.)
Darin, therein, in it, within.	Davon, of that, or it, thereof, therefrom.
Darnach, after it, thereafter.	Dawider, against that, or it.
Darum, for it, or that ; therefore.	Dazu, for that, or it, thereto.
Darüber, on that account, at it.	Davor, before that, or it.
	Dazwischen, between that, or it, there, between, &c.

2nd. With *hier*, the same prepositions as before.

Hieran, on this, or it.      Hierauf, upon this, or it, &c.

3rd. With *wo*, *wo*, instead of *welcher*, *was*.

<i>Woran</i> , on which, whereon.	<i>Worin</i> , in which, wherein.
<i>Worauf</i> , upon which, where- upon.	<i>Womit</i> , with which, where- with.
<i>Wodurch</i> , by, or through which.	<i>Worneben</i> , next to which, where next.
<i>Warum</i> , for which, why, wherefore.	<i>Worüber</i> , upon which, where- upon.
<i>Wogegen</i> , against which.	<i>Wofür</i> , for which, wherefore.
<i>Wovor</i> , before which.	<i>Worunter</i> , under which,
<i>Wozu</i> , to which, whereto.	among which, &c.

4th. With *her* and *hin* as adverbs.

<i>Hierab</i> , <i>hinab</i> , <i>herunter</i> , down.	<i>Herauf</i> , up. <i>Heraus</i> , out, &c.
---	---

5th. Some are separated ; as,

<i>Um-her</i> , round about.	<i>Hinter-her</i> , <i>hinter-drein</i> , be- hind. ( <i>Vide Rule V.</i>
<i>Um-willen</i> , for the sake of.	<i>Syntax.</i> )
<i>Um Gottes willen</i> , for God's sake.	<i>Ich ging hinter dem Manne</i> <i>her</i> , I walked after the man, I followed the man.

ABBREVIATIONS.

The definite article and preposition are frequently contracted into one word ; as, *am*, for *an dem*. Ex. *am Tage*, for *an dem Tage*, in the day.

*Examples.*

<i>Am</i> ,	for an dem,	as, <i>am Fenster</i> , at the, or at a
.. .	or an einem,	window.
<i>Anß</i> ,	.. an daß,	.. <i>anß Licht</i> , in the light.
<i>Auß</i> ,	.. auf daß,	.. <i>auß Haus</i> , upon the house
<i>Beim</i> , or ( <i>beym</i> ),	.. bei dem, or ( <i>bey dem</i> ),	.. <i>beim</i> , or ( <i>beym</i> ) Vater, by the father.
<i>Durchß</i> ,	.. durch daß,	.. <i>durchß Feuer</i> , through the fire.
<i>Fürß</i> ,	.. für daß,	.. <i>fürß Geld</i> , for the money.

Im,	.. in dem,	.. im Himmel, in heaven.
Ins,	.. in daß,	.. ins Wasser, in the water.
Vom,	.. von dem,	.. vom Uebel, from evil.
Vors,	.. vor daß,	.. vors Fenster, before the window.
Vorm,	.. vor dem,	.. vorm Thor, before the door.
Ueberm,	.. über dem,	.. überm Feuer, upon the fire.
Übers,	.. über daß,	.. übers Meer, over the sea.
Unterm,	.. unter dem,	.. unterm Kopfe, under the head.
Zum,	.. zu dem,	.. zum Könige, to the king.
	.. zu einem,	.. zum Feinde, to, or for an enemy.
Zur,	.. zu der,	.. zur Ehre, for the honour.
	.. zu einer,	.. zur Hochzeit, to, or for a wedding.

### Conjunctions. Bindewörter.

Observe. Some conjunctions regulate the place of the verb.

1st. The following conjunctions join words and sentences, without changing the position of the verb.

Und, and.

Die vier Elemente sind Feuer, Luft, Erde und Wasser, the four elements are fire, air, earth, and water.

Auch, also, too.

Wir sind froh und sie auch, we are glad, and they also. Ich glaube es auch, I think so too. Haben Sie auch gehört? have you also heard?

Aber, allein, sondern,\* but.

Wir sind betrübt, aber der Herr tröstet uns, we are afflicted, but the Lord comforts us.

\* Sondern by itself is an opposite negative, or disjunctive. But sondern auch, is positive.

Aber, allein, sondern, but.

Wir fragen, allein (aber) niemand antwortet, we ask, but nobody answers. Ich habe es nicht nur gesehen, sondern auch gehört, I have not only seen it, but heard it also.

Doch, dennoch, noch, yet, still, however.

Sie sind noch zu jung, they are yet too young. Er bleibt dennoch, or doch mein Freund, he, however, or still remains my friend.

Denn, for, because.

Sie wissen es denn ich sagte es ihnen, they know it, for, or because I told (it to) them.

Entweder, either; oder, or.

Entweder sie sind falsche Freunde, oder offenbare Feinde, either they are false friends, or open enemies.

Weder, neither; noch, nor.

Sie sind weder hungrig noch durstig, they are neither hungry nor thirsty.

Zwar, however, indeed.

Sie haben es zwar, aber nicht mit Recht, they have it indeed, but not with justice.

2nd. The following conjunctions, when taken relatively, throw the verb to the end of the sentence; but their use will be best understood by examples, as they are not always used as relatives.

*Als, as, when, than, like, but.	Da, when.
Bevor, before.	Da, indem, as since,
Bis, till.	whilst.
Auf daß, damit, in order that.	Daß, that.
Demnach, whereas.	Wo, so, if.
Ehe, before.	Wofern, so fern, dafern, if.
Im fall, in case.	Wo nicht, if not.
In so fern, in so much, if.	Ungeachtet, notwithstanding.

---

\* Als has sometimes a comparative signification:

Nachdem, after, after that.	Wiewohl,	} through, although.
Weil, dieweil, because, though.	Obwohl,	
Wenn, wann, if, when, when- ever.	Obgleich,	
Ob, whether, if.	Ob schon,	
Als ob, as if.	Benngleich,	

3rd. The following conjunctions throw the verb to the end of the sentence, if used relatively; but otherwise the verb is put before the nominative.

Darum, therefore.	Warum, wherefore, why.
Daher, hence.	Woher, whence.
Deshalben, } therefore,	Weshalben, } wherefore,
Deswegen, } for which	Weswegen, } for which
Um deswillen, } reason.	Um deswillen, } reason.

4th. The following conjunctions require others after them, the latter of which throw the nominative behind the verbs.

Entweder, either.	requires oder, or.
Weder, neither.	..... noch, nor.
Weil, because.	..... so.
Da, when.	..... so.
Je, the.	..... desto, the.
Je, the.	..... je, the.
So wohl, as well. }	..... als, as.
So bald, as soon. }	
Indar, indeed.	

Aber, allein, but. Doch, dennoch, or jedoch, how-  
ever, yet. Gleichwohl, although, yet, for all  
that, notwithstanding. Hingegen, on the con-  
trary. Nichts desto weniger, nevertheless.

Wenn, if.	requires *so.
Wie, gleichwie, as.	..... so.

\* Observe, the word *so* is sometimes a conjunction, some-  
times an adverb, and sometimes a relative pronoun. **Examples**  
1st. As a conjunction, *so* wohl als, as well as, *so* bald als, as soon  
as. 2nd. As an adverb, *Es* ist *so*, wie ich gesagt habe, it is so, as  
I said; *Wie* *so*, how so. 3rd. As a relative pronoun, *Das* Buch,  
*so* (welches) ich gekauft habe, the book which I have bought.

Als, as.	requires fa.
So, so	..... so.
Nicht, not.	..... sondern, but.
Nicht allein, }	..... { sondern, but.
Nicht nur, } not only.	..... { sondern auch, but
	also.
Obgleich,	..... So, so.
Ob schon,	..... So doch, dennoch,
Obwohl,	however, never-
Wenn schon, } although.	theless.
Wenn auch, }	..... So, nichts desto we-
Wiewohl,	niger, neverthe-
	less.

As the application of conjunctions may be better learned by examples than by rules, the following sentences are subjoined to exemplify their use.

Als wir zu Abend gegessen hatten, (so)\* gingen wir spazieren.

So roth als eine Rose.

Er ist reicher als ich.

Er handelt als ein rechtschaffener Mann.

Als er den Aufruhr in der Stadt bemerkte.

Er ist zwar mein Feind nicht, aber doch nicht mein Freund.

Als ich in London ankam.

Da der König in London ankam.

Vom Morgen bis zum Abend.

Da ich den Mann ehre und liebe, welcher so edel gedacht.

When we had supped we took a walk, or having supped, &c.

As red as a rose.

He is richer than I.

He acts like an honest man.

When he perceived the tumult in the city.

He is not my enemy indeed, but yet he is not my friend.

When I arrived in London.

When the king arrived in London.

From morning till evening.

Since I honour and love the man, who thought so nobly.

\* Obs. So is often omitted, but understood, after als, and da.



Wenn er das Buch lesen will.

If he will read that book.

Das ist der Grund, daher weiß ich es.

That is the ground, thence, or for that reason, I know it.

Er mußte es nicht, darum habe ich es ihm gesagt.

He did not know it, therefore I have told (it) him.

Bevor ich den Wald erreicht hatte.

Before I had reached the wood.

Als ich diesen Morgen an dem Fenster stand, da sah ich die Soldaten in die Stadt kommen.

When, or as I stood at the window this morning, or standing at the window this morning, I saw the soldiers coming into town.

Indem, oder weil ich an dem Fenster stand, sah ich &c.

Whilst I was standing at the window, I saw, &c.

Wie ich an dem Fenster stand, &c.

As I happened to stand, or as I stood at the window, &c.

Da ich an dem Fenster stand, &c.

When, or as I stood at the window, &c.

Wiewohl er sehr krank ist, so ist doch noch Hoffnung vorhanden, daß er wieder aufkommen werde, oder wird.

Although he is still very ill, yet there is still room to hope that he will recover.

Ich vermache dir nicht allein mein Haus, sondern auch Habe und Gut.

I leave to thee not only my house, but also my goods and chattels.

Ich erwartete Ihre Ankunft nicht, und desto größer ist meine Freude.

I did not expect your arrival, and the greater is my joy.

Je ruhiger das Leben ist, desto geschickter ist es zum Nachdenken.

The more quiet life is, the more fit it is for reflection.

Entweder bist du toll, oder du wirst es werden.

Either thou art mad, or thou wilt become so.

Er scheuet weder Gott noch Menschen, weder Tod noch Leben.

He fears neither God nor man, neither death nor life.

Ob ihr gleich gelehrt seyd,  
so ist gleichwohl noch viel,  
das ihr nicht wisset.

Ob wir gleich reich sind,  
so können wir doch nicht  
allen Leuten helfen.

Ob ich wohl gerne helfen  
wollte, nichts desto weniger  
ist es mir wegen meiner  
Armuth unmöglich.

Ob er gleich mein Better  
ist, so kommt er doch nicht zu  
mir.

Er hat es entweder gethan,  
oder wird es noch thun.

Sie hat mir unrecht ge-  
than, dennoch will ich ihr  
vergeben.

Mein Rath war zu seinem  
Besten, dennoch befolgte er  
ihn nicht.

So lange er sich in den  
Schranken der Bescheiden-  
heit hielt, war ich sein auf-  
richtigster Freund.

Ob er gleich alt ist, so hat  
er doch den völligen Gebrauch  
seiner Geisteskräfte.

Ein Kind muß nicht nur  
den Vater, sondern auch die  
Mutter ehren.

So bald als es vier ge-  
schlagen hat.

Nachdem wir Alles wohl  
untersucht hatten.

Ehe die Glocke ausgeschla-  
gen hat.

Je mehr ich trinke, je mehr  
habe ich Durst.

Although you are learned,  
yet there is still much that  
you do not know.

Although we are rich, yet  
we cannot help every body.

Although I would very  
willingly help, it is neverthe-  
less impossible, on account  
of my poverty.

Although he is my cousin,  
yet he does not come to (see)  
me.

Either he has done it, or  
he will do it yet.

She has wronged me, yet  
I will forgive her.

My advice was for his  
good, yet he did not follow  
it.

Whilst he kept himself  
within the bounds of mo-  
desty, I was his most sincere  
friend.

Although he is old, he still  
has the perfect use of his  
mental faculties.

A child must not only ho-  
nour his father, but also his  
mother.

As soon as it has struck  
four.

After having well exa-  
mined every thing.

Before the clock has done  
striking.

The more I drink, the more  
thirsty I am.

## Interjections, Empfindungswörter.

"When the mind is overpowered by passion, or violence of feeling, unconnected words and broken sentences are uttered ; but every such word or sentence is an interjection, and has its meaning by completing the sentence, with those words which are unexpressed."\*

The following is a list of some of the interjections used in German :

### INTERJECTIONS.

Ah! ah! oh! O! alas!

Ah, ich Unglücklicher, Ah, unhappy me!

Ah wehe! alas! woe!

Ah und wehe über dich! woe unto you!

Ah! ah!

Ah, das ist schön! Ah! that is beautiful.

Ei! or Ey! eh! heigh! heigho!

Ei, ei! was machen Sie da! Heigh! heigh! what are you doing there?

Halt! stop! halt!

Halt den Dieb! Stop thief!

He! or Heh! hei! holloa! huzza! heigh!

He! Junge, gehe her! Hey! or, holloa! boy, come here.

*Obs.* For laughter, the Germans express themselves like the English, by He! He! He! or Ha! Ha! Ha! &c.

Heh! heh da! Heh! sa! Well! heigh! huzza! well done! cheer up!

Heh! wer seyd ihr? Well! who are you?

---

\* The above definition of an interjection was copied from Mr. Booth's scientific "*Introduction to an Analytical Dictionary of the English Language.*"

**Holla! holloa! hold!**

Holla! wer ist da! Holloa! who is there?

Holla! halt da! Holloa! stop there.

**Hui! Ho! Quick! make haste! heigh!**

Hui! hui! fliehet aus dem Mitternacht Land! Ho!  
ho! come forth! and flee from the land of the  
north! — *Zach. ch. ii. ver. 6.*

**Leider! ach leider! Alas! O sad! Unfortunately!** (*These terms are expressive of grief.*) Ach leider! Es ist nur gar zu wahr. Alas! it is but too true.

**Lieber! Ei lieber! pray! Oh dear!**

Ei lieber! sey so gut und sag mir, was es ist.

Pray! be so good, or so kind, as to tell me what it is.

**Lustig! Merry! cheer up! come! courage!**

Lustig! laßet uns trinken, Come! let us drink.

**D! D! Oh!** (D! is used in expressing almost all the sudden emotions or feelings of the mind.)

D! wie schön! O! how beautiful! D! welch ein  
Tiefe! O! what a depth! D! or D weh! welch  
ein Schmerz, O! or Oh! what pain! D! welche  
Schande! O! what a shame.

**Pfui! Pfui weg! fy! fye! away!**

Pfui! schäme dich! Fy! for shame!

Pfui weg damit; Fy! away with it!

**Siehe! See! look! lo! behold! Siehe da! look there!**

**St! still! hist! hush! peace! silence! hist!**

**Weh, or Wehe! D weh! ach wehe! woe! or wo! alas!**  
O dear! Oh!

Wehe den Gottlosen! Woe to the wicked!

D weh! welch ein Jammer! Alas! what misery!

D wehe mir! O dear me!

**Beg! Away! Beg da! Beg von hier! Away there!**  
Away from here! Stand back!

**Beg mit ihm! Away with him! Bein weg! Take care**  
of your legs!

**Willkommen! sey willkommen! welcome!**

**Wohlan! well! Wohlan denn! Well then! well now!**

Wohlan! Laßt uns gehen, Well! let us go.

There are also many broken sentences used as interjections ; such as,

Behüte Gott !  
Es lebe der König !  
Großer Gott !  
Gott Lob !  
Gott sey dank !  
Gerechter Himmel !  
Gott behüte euch !  
Was für ein Glück !

God forbid !  
Long live the king !  
Great God !  
God be praised !  
Thank God !  
Just Heaven !  
God preserve you !  
What happiness !

---

# SYNTAX.

---

## Syntax of Articles.

### RULE I.

THE articles *ein*, *a*, and *der*, *the*, must agree with nouns in gender, number, and case, whether preceded by an adjective, or not; as,

*Ein Vater*, a father.

*Der Vater*, the father.

*Eine Mutter*, a mother.

*Die Mutter*, the mother.

*Ein Buch*, a book.

*Das Buch*, the book.

*Ein guter Knabe*, a good boy

*Der gute Knabe*, the good boy

*Eine große Stadt*, a great city.

*Die große Stadt*, the great city.

*Ein ganzes Land*, a whole country.

*Das ganze Land*, the whole country.

*Obs. 1.* The article is always placed before the adjective, and not between the adjective and noun, as in English.

*Ein halber Bogen*, half a sheet.

*Die beiden Länder*, both the countries.

*Eine halbe Stunde*, half an hour.

*Das ganze Jahr*, all the year

*Ein halbes Jahr*, half a year.

*Der halbe Tag*, half the day, &c.

*Obs. 2.* In compounds the article always agrees with the gender of the last word; as, *der Liebesbrief*, the love-letter; *die Wetterfahne*, the weathercock; *das Stadthaus*, the town-house.

*Examples to illustrate the preceding Rule and Observations.*

Der Bruder der Frau ist  
auf dem Lande.

Ein gutes Kind verdient  
unser Lob.

Hier ist das Pferd des  
Vaters.

Dies ist die Schrift eines  
Gelehrten.

Der Hund ist das Sinn-  
bild der Treue.

Ich kenne die Frau, aber  
ich kenne nicht den Mann.

Ich habe den Brief dem  
Diener gegeben.

Haben Sie es nicht dem  
Meister gezeigt?

Die Kinder der Reichen  
sind zuweilen unwissender,  
als die Kinder der Armen.

Man muß von den Abwe-  
senden nie übel reden.

The brother of the woman  
is in the country.

A good child deserves our  
praise.

Here is the father's horse.

This is the writing of a  
scholar.

A dog is the emblem of  
fidelity.

I know the wife, but I do  
not know the husband.

I have given the letter to  
the servant.

Have you not shewn it to  
the master?

The children of the rich  
are sometimes more ignorant  
than the children of the poor.

We must never speak ill  
of the absent.

*Exercise to be translated into German.*

Give me the book. Bring me a knife. Here is a pen.  
There is an apple. Lend him the pen-knife. Have you a  
mother? He has the ink. She has a brother. I see the  
friends. Write an answer. A game is lost. A true friend  
is a treasure of inestimable value. The virtue of a Chris-  
tian. The Creator of the world is the God of the Chris-  
tians. Observe the rules of the school and the eye of the  
master.

---

Give me, geben Sie mir. Bring me, bringen Sie mir. Lend  
him, leihen Sie ihm. Ink, Dinte, *f.* Write, schreiben Sie.  
Answer, Antwort, *f. acc.* Game, Spiel, *n.* Is lost, ist verloren.  
True, treuer. Treasure, Schatz, *m. von*, of. Inestimable,  
unschätzbaren. Value, Werth, *m.* Virtue, Tugend, *f.* Christian,

*Welt, m.*. Creator, *Schöpfer, m.* World, *Welt, f.* God, *Gott, m.* Observe, *beobachte.* Rule, *Regel, f.* School, *Schule, f.* Eye, *Auge, n.* Master, *Lehrer, m.*

## RULE II.

The definite article is frequently used in German, though not in English, before nouns in a universal sense, and before all nouns in the oblique cases; as, *Das Leben*, life. *Das Alter*, Age. *Das Kind des Bruders*, the brother's child. *Die Menschen*, men, or mankind. *Brutus tödtete den Cäsar*, Brutus killed Cæsar.

Also, before most adjectives used substantively, and before the names of seasons; as, *Das Gut*, good. *Der Weise*, the wise. *Der Frühling*, spring. *Ein Gelehrter*, a learned man. *Der Gelehrte*, the learned. *Der Sommer*, summer.

## RULE III.

Before the proper names of places the article is mostly omitted, particularly in the nominative; as, *London*, *Petersburg*, *Europa*, *England*, &c. Except, *Die Türkei*, Turkey. *Die Lombardie*, Lombardy. *Die Niederlande*, the Netherlands. *Der Haag*, the Hague. *Die Schweiz*, Switzerland. *Die Elsaß*, Elsass. *Die Levante*, the Levant. *Die Pfalz*, the Palatinate.

Also the Germans say, *die Stadt London*, the city of London; *das Königreich Frankreich*, the kingdom of France, &c.

The proper names of persons take no article in the nominative, nor when they have a change of termination in the oblique cases; as, *Ciceros Reden*, Cicero's orations. In the oblique cases, when there is no change of termination, the article may be used. *Brutus tödtete den Cäsar*, Brutus killed Cæsar. But a proper name, when used as



a common noun, requires the article before it, as, *der Plato seines Zeitalters, the Plato of his age.*

*Examples to the preceding Rules.*

Die Vernunft ist das edelste Geschenk der Natur,

Die Vorsicht ist die Mutter der Sicherheit,

Lieben Sie die Tugend,

Hassen Sie das Laster.

Der Frühling ist die schönste Jahreszeit,

Was denken Sie von dem Sommer?

Nero war ein großer Tyrann,

Flora war die Göttin der Blumen.

Gott hat alle Dinge gemacht, oder erschaffen,

Reason is the noblest gift of nature.

Caution is the mother of security.

Love virtue.

Hate vice.

Spring is the finest season.

What do you think of summer?

Nero was a great tyrant.

Flora was the goddess of flowers.

God has made, or created all things.

*Obs.* The Germans use the definite article before nouns of *time, weight, &c.* where we use the indefinite, or omit the article altogether; as, *Wir gehen zweimal in der Woche in die Kirche, We go to church twice a week. Wir geben sechs Grote das Pfund, We give six groats a pound.*

EXERCISE.

Death itself is not so dreadful. Health, anger, and intemperance, are inconsistent with each other. Man is rational. Man is mortal. Death is certain. He has a house in town. Neptune was the god of the seas. I have seen the father, mother, son, and daughter. I am going to London. I come from Holland. Cicero was an excellent orator. Alexander was a great conqueror. The temple of Solomon was magnificent. They eat no more than twice a day.

---

Death, *Tod, m.* Itself, *selbst.* So, *so.* Dreadful, *fürchterlich.* Health, *Gesundheit, f.* Anger, *Zorn, m.* Intemperance, *unmäßigkeit.* Are inconsistent with each other, *können nicht mit*

einander bestehen. Man, Mensch, *m.* Rational, vernünftig. Mortal, sterblich. Certain, gewiß. Neptune, Neptun. Seas, Meere, *n.* Seen, gesehen. Am going, gehe. To, nach. From, von. Excellent, vortrefflicher. Orator, Redner. Great, großer. Conqueror, Eroberer, *m.* Temple, Tempel, *m.* Magnificent, prächtig. No more, nie mehr.

---

RULE IV.

The article is repeated before nouns of different genders; as, der Vater, die Mutter und das Kind, *the father, mother, and child*; but nouns of the same gender, or number, require it only before the first; as, der Rock und Hut, *the coat and hat*.

Sometimes, however, the article is repeated before each noun of the same gender and number, particularly, when different subjects are enumerated in a title; as, Der Fuchs und der Rabe, *the fox and the raven*.

*Examples.*

Ein Mann und eine Frau  
waren hier.

A man and woman were  
here.

Der Bruder und die  
Schwester sind gegangen,

The brother and sister are  
gone.

Das Haus und die Wiese,

The house and meadow.

Ich habe den Vater, die  
Mutter, den Sohn und die  
Tochter gesehen,

I have seen the father,  
mother, son, and daughter.

Ich habe das Buch, die  
Feder und den Bleistift, auf  
dem Tische gelassen,

I have left the book, pen,  
and pencil upon the table.

Der Vater und Sohn  
sind nach Paris gegangen,

The father and son are  
gone to Paris.

Die Mutter und Tochter  
sind auf dem Lande,

The mother and daughter  
are in the country.

EXERCISE.

The man, woman, and child are gone out. The hare and pigeon are good to eat. The father, mother, son, and

daughter are in the country. The sheep, cow, and dog are gone. The leopard and tiger are rapacious animals. I have left the book and ruler upon the table. Has he a father and mother? Yes, sir, and the goodness, affection, and indulgence of his mother have ruined him. Give me the pen and penknife. The contented man is never poor; the discontented man never rich.

Are gone out, sind ausgegangen. Hare, Hase, *m.* Pigeon, Taube, *f.* Are in the country, sind auf dem Lande. Sheep, Schaf, *n.* Rapacious, raubsüchtige. Ruler, Lineal, *n. acc.* Upon the table, auf dem Tische. Left, gelassen. Pen, Feder, *f.* Affection, Rücksicht. Penknife, Federmesser, *n.* Contented man, Zufriedene, *m.* Never poor, nie arm. Discontented man, unzufriedene, *m.* Never rich, nie reich.

*Obs.* In speaking emphatically, the article is frequently omitted, where otherwise it would be used, according to Rule H. or IV.; as, Gerechte und Ungerechte, Menschen und Thiere, fanden in den Wellen ihr Grab, the just and the unjust, men and beasts, found their grave in the waves.

#### RULE V.

The article is omitted, whenever the substantive expresses a portion of a whole thing, or a part of a quantity of things, which in English is denoted by *some*, or *any* expressed, or understood, answering to the French, *du, de la, de l', des*; as, *Apportez moi du vin*, Bringen Sie mir Wein; Bring me *some* wine.

#### Examples.

Bringen Sie mir Brot,	Bring me <i>some</i> bread.
Geben Sie mir Bier,	Give me <i>some</i> beer.
Haben Sie Papier, Dinte, &c?	Have you <i>any</i> paper, ink, &c?
Wollen Sie mir Bücher bringen?	Will you bring me <i>some</i> books?

#### Exercise.

Eat bread, and drink water. Have you eaten bread, and drank water? Bring me *some* wine and water. Have you brought *some* beer? I have bought *some* silk to-day.

Give me some paper, pens, and ink. Give him some wine andiments. Lend her some money. Will you lend me some money?

Drink, Trinken Sie. Water, Wasser. Brought, gebracht. Silk, Seide. To-day, heute. Bought, gekauft. Meat, Fleisch. f. To lend, Leihen. Money, Geld, n.

*Obs.* 1. To express *some*, when it means a small portion or quantity, the Germans use etwas, einige, or etliche; as, Geben Sie mir etwas Gutes, Give me something good.

2. Sometimes the article is omitted in German, where we put either it, or a pronoun in its place; as, Ueberbringer dieses, the bearer of this; vor Endigung des Schauspiels, before the end of the play; Ich habe es vor Augen, I have it before my eyes. Also before some adjectives and participles: as, ersterer, the former; folgender, the latter; genannter, the above named.

### *Exercises on the Articles.*

#### FIRST LESSON.

Der Mensch ist nun einmal sterblich. Der Herr vom Hause ist ausgegangen. Ich habe den Brief dem Diener gegeben. Die Musik ist etwas angenehmes. Ich habe das Buch, die Feder, das Lineal, den Bleistift und den Zirkel auf dem Tische gelassen. Die Ameise ist ein Muster des Fleißes für Menschen. Sie arbeitet im Sommer und sammelt einen Vorrath für den Winter. Da ist der Hut des jungen Mannes, welcher eben ausgegangen ist. Die Kinder der Reichen sind zumweilen unwissender, als die Kinder der Armen. Mein Vater hat ein Haus in der Stadt und einen Garten auf dem Lande. Die Stadt Paris. Die Insel Korsika. Der Abnath Julius. Das Königreich Schweden. Der Mensch ist für das gesellige Leben, und nicht für die Einsamkeit gebahren. Sie loben die Werke der Barmherzigkeit. Die Sonne und der Mond sind Himmelskörper.

Esterblich, mortal. Ausgehen, to go out. Diener, *m.* servant. Etwas, somewhat. Angenehm, pleasant. Eineaal, ruler. Bleistift, pencil. Zirkel, compasses. Auf, upon. Lassen, to leave. Ameise, ant. Muster, pattern. Der Fleiß, industry. Sie arbeitet, she labors. Sammeln, to lay up. Vorrath, store. Eben ausgegangen ist, is just gone out. Zuweilen, sometimes. Unwissenb, ignorant. Als, than. Auf, in. Gesellig, social. Einsamkeit, solitude. Barmherzigheit, charity. Himmelskörper, heavenly bodies.

---

SECOND LESSON.

Die Heiden hatten an dreißig tausend Götter, Halbgötter Göttinnen und Helden, welche sie anbeteten. Rhea war die Gemahlin des Saturnus und die Mutter des Jupiter, Neptun und Pluto. Minerva war die Göttin der Weisheit und der Künste. Mercur war der Bothe der Götter und der Gott der Beredsamkeit, der Kaufleute und Diebe. Venus war die Göttin der Liebe. Gott der Vater aller Menschen. Gesundheit, Zorn und Unmäßigkeit können nicht neben einander bestehen. Geben Sie mir ein Glas Wein. Johann! holen Sie mir ein Pfund Thee und ein halb Pfund Kaffee. Das Brot dienet in den meisten Ländern zur Nahrung der Menschen. Sie essen nie mehr als dreimal des Tages. Sie gehen zweimal in der Woche in die Kirche. Sie verstanden nicht das Bauen der Häuser oder Schiffe, das Säen des Kornes, das Hauen der Bäume, das Mähen des Grases, das Graben der Metalle, des Goldes, Silbers, Kupfers, u. s. f.

---

Heide, *m.* heathen. An, about. Halbgötter, demi-gods. Held, *m.* hero. Anbeten, to worship. Gemahlin, wife. Kunst, art. Bote, or Bothe, messenger. Beredsamkeit, eloquence. Kaufleute, merchants. Liebe, *f.* love. Zorn, anger. Unmäßigkeit, intemperance. Bestehen, to subsist. Neben, with. Holen, to fetch. Dienen, to serve. Nahrung, food. Nie, never. Des, *of the*, (*a*). Verstehen, to understand. Bauen, building. Sahn, sowing. Hauen, hewing. Mähen, mowing. Graben, digging.

## THIRD LESSON.

Die Grammatik lehrt uns die Kunst richtig zu schreiben und zu reden. Die Geschichte macht uns die guten und schlechten Handlungen der Menschen bekannt. Die Naturgeschichte lehrt uns die Producte der Natur kennen. Die Schäfer nehmen den Schaafen die Wolle. Die Löwen und Zieger wohnen in großen Wüsteneien. Der Krieg und die Pest sind die zwei grausamsten Geißeln des Himmels. Fliehen Sie die Schmeichler und lieben Sie die aufrichtigen Freunde. Geben Sie den Armen Almosen. Die Crocodile fressen den Menschen. Die Hunde fürchten die Crocodile. Die Schnemone tödten die Crocodile. Die Zärtlichkeit der Thiere gegen ihre Jungen ist oft größer als die Zärtlichkeit der Mutter gegen ihre Kinder. Ein guter Vater sorgt für seine Kinder. Eine gute Mutter erzieht ihre Kinder mit der größten Sorgfalt.

---

Lehren, to teach. Kunst, art. Richtig, correctly. Die Geschichte, history. Handlung, action. Die Naturgeschichte, natural history. Nehmen, to take. Bohnen, to live, or inhabit. Wüstenei, desert. Grausam, cruel. Geißel, scourge. Schmeichler, flatterer. Aufrichtig, sincere. Almosen, alms. Fressen, to devour. Fürchten, to fear. Tödten, to kill. Zärtlichkeit, tenderness. Sorgen, to care. Erziehen, to bring up.

---

## Nouns, Nennwörter.

### RULE I.

When two nouns, denoting different persons, or things, come together, the latter when possession is implied, is put in the genitive case.

*Examples.*

Das Haus meines Freun-	The house of my friend, or
des,	my friend's house.
Die Freude des Lebens,*	The joy of life.
Der Vater des Lehrers,	The master's father.
Mars war der Gott des	Mars was the god of war.
Krieges.	
Die Gunst des Königs,	The favour of the king.
Das Glück des Friedens,	The blessing of peace.

## EXERCISE.

The proprietor of the garden. The depth of the sea.  
 Saturn was the son of Heaven and Earth. Vulcan was the  
 god of fire. The goddess of fortune. The master of the  
 house. The brother of the gardener. The houses of the  
 city are very fine.

---

Proprietor, Eigenthümer, *m.* Garden, Garten, *m.* Depth,  
 Tiefe, *f.* Sea, Meer, *n.* Neptune, Neptun. Vulcan, Vulkan.  
 Fortune, Glück, *n.* Gardener, Gärtner, *m.*

## RULE II.

When two or more nouns stand in the same relation, or  
 express the same person or thing, they are put in the same  
 case; as, Gerechtigkeit, Wohlthätigkeit, und Frömmigkeit  
 sind die Merkmale eines Christen, justice, charity, and  
 piety, are the characteristics of a Christian. König Carl,  
 king Charles. Der Kaiser Alexander, the Emperor Alex-  
 ander. Wilhelm König von England, William, King of  
 England. Paulus der Apostel, Paul the Apostle.

---

\* *Obs.* The genitive is sometimes placed first; as, Das  
 Lebens Freude, the joy of life.

## EXERCISE.

King William. The emperor Joseph. The king our friend and father. Nero the tyrant. John the Evangelist. God the Father of all men. We love the king, our friend and father.

Joseph, Joseph. Our, unser, (*nom.*) Tyrant, tyrann. John, Johannes, or Johann. We love, wir lieben. Our, unser, (*acc.*)

*Observations on the Nouns.*

*Obs. 1.* Sometimes the genitive is put first, but then the subsequent word has no article before it; as, Des Königs Gunst, the king's favour. Des Vaters Segen, the father's blessing.

## EXERCISE.

The father's sister. The king's son. The wife's brother. The emperor's speech. The queen's brother. The man's knife. The child's parents. The boy's mother.

Emperor, Kaiser, *m.* Speech, Rede, *f.* Queen, Königin, *f.* Knife, Messer, *n.* Parents, Ältern, *pl.* Boy, Knabe, *m.*

*Obs. 2.* When several nouns come together, the last but one in English, and the first in German, is put in the genitive.

*Examples.*

Unter des Königs Heinrich Regie-	In king Henry's reign.
rung,	
Des Prinzen von Wallis Haus-	The prince of Wales' steward.
verwalter,	
Des Königs von Dänemark Län-	The king of Denmark's lands
der,	or countries.

*Exercise.*

The Elector of Bavaria's Court. The Emperor of Russia's dominions. The King of England's Steward. In Queen Elizabeth's reign. The King of Spain's subjects.



Elector, Churfürst, *m.* Of Bavaria, von Baiern. Court, Hofstaat. Of Russia, von Rußland. Dominion, Herrschaft, *f.* Of England, von England. Steward, Haushofmeister, *m.* In queen, unter der Königin. Of Spain's subjects, von Spanien Unterthanen, *m.*

*Obs. 3.* Sometimes the genitive is expressed in German without any article; as,

Preußens König, the king of Prussia. Johannes und Elisens Bücher, John's and Eliza's books.

*Obs. 4.* The preposition *to*, in English, is sometimes used instead of *of*, as the sign of the genitive.

### Examples.

Ein Freund der Tugend,	A friend <i>to</i> virtue, <i>or of</i> virtue
Er ist ein Vater der Armen,	He is a father <i>to</i> the poor.
Sie ist die Schwester des Königs,	She is sister <i>to</i> the king.

### Exercise.

He is an enemy *to* vice. They are slaves *to* their passions. He was a friend *to* the family. Socrates was an enemy *to* vice. He is a secretary *to* the duke. They are enemies *to* God, and slaves *to* Satan.

Enemy, Feind, *m.* Vice, Laster, *n.* Slave, Sklave, *m.* Their passions, ihrer Leidenschaften, *f.* Family, Familie, *f.* Secretary, Secrétaire, *m.* Duke, Herzog, *m.* Satan, Satán, *m.*

*Obs. 5.* After nouns of *number, weight, measure, or parts*, and before the names of *months, islands, kingdoms, or cities*, where *of* is expressed in English, the Germans use the nominative case.

### Examples.

Zehn Ellen Tuch,	Ten ells of cloth.
Ein Pfund Butter,	A pound of butter.
Ein Glas Bier,	A glass of beer.
Eine Elle Tuch,	An ell of cloth,
Ein Bißten Brot,	A bit of bread.
Der Monat Mai,	The month of May.
Die Insel Malta,	The Isle of Malta.
Das Königreich Preußen,	The kingdom of Prussia.
Die Stadt Paris,	The city of Paris.

*Exercise.*

Two casks of wine. A hundred weight of lead. A couple of pigeons. A glass of beer. Give me a drop of water. The month of April. The Isle of Man. The kingdom of France. The city of London. A flock of sheep. A pound of meat. A cup of coffee.

Casks, Fässer. Hundred weight, Centner, *m.* Lead, Blei, *n.* Couple, Paar, *n.* Glass, Glas, *n.* Give me, Geben Sie mir. Drop, Tropfen, *m.* Month, Monat, *m.* Man, Man. Kingdom, Königreich. France, Frankreich. Flock, Heerde, *f.* Sheep, Schaf, *n.* Meat, Fleisch. Cup, Tasse, *f.*

But the genitive is expressed when the words that follow the nouns of *number, weight, measure, &c.* have a pronoun or an adjective joined with them; as,

Zehn Ellen dieses Tuches,	Ten ells of this cloth.
Zwei Fässer jenes Weines,	Two casks of that wine.
Ein Regiment guter Soldaten,	A regiment of good soldiers, &c

---

 RULE III.

In answer to the questions *wann?* *when?* *wie oft?* *how often?* the days or years are put in the genitive, when another noun is expressed or understood.

*Examples.*

When did it happen?	On Sunday, Monday, &c.
Wann ist das geschehen?	Sonntags, Montags, &c.
How often did the doctor come?	Twice a day.
Wie oft kam der Doctor?	Zweimal des Tages.

*Observe.* In the above examples, and in the following practice, *day or time* is understood.

*Exercise.*

When does he come? Early on Thursday. In the morning. In the afternoon. In the evening. At night. At midnight. How often does he come? Three times a year. Four times a day.

Does he come? kommt er? Thursday, Donnerstag, *m.* In the morning, des Morgens. Afternoon, Nachmittags, *m.* Evening, Abend, *m.* At night, des Nachts. Midnight, Mitternacht, *f.* Year, Jahr, *n.* Four times, viermal. Day, Tag, *m.*

*Observae.* In speaking of weeks the Germans say, dreimal in der Woche, three times a week, *not* dreimal der Woche. But they say also, dreimal die Woche, or die Woche dreimal.

---

RULE IV.

The genitive case is frequently supplied by the preposition *von*, *of*, with the dative; except, the genitive, in one or two instances, as in the phrase: *von Alters her*, *of old*.

1. Before names of countries, and when a particular quality, condition, proportion, or quantity, is assigned to any thing; also when the article is omitted.

*Examples.*

Der König von Preußen,	The king of Prussia.
Die Gränzen von Frankreich,	The boundaries of France.
Ein Mann von großen Gaben,	A man of great gifts.
Ein Herr von hohem Adel,	A gentleman of high nobility
Eine Reise von zehn Meilen,	A journey of ten miles.
Ein Schiff von zwei hundert Tonnen,	A ship of two hundred tons.
Der Schein von Redlichkeit,	The appearance of honesty.

*Exercise.*

The northern part of England. The emperor of Russia. A woman of great sense. A man of ancient origin. The sum of twenty pounds. A man of eighty years.

Northern part, Nördliche Theil, *m.* Of great sense, von großem Verstande. Ancient, alter. Origin, Herkunft, *f.* Sum, Summe, *f.* Pounds, Pfunden. Years, Jahren.

2. If no adjective be joined with the substantive, or when the matter is expressed of which things are made, the dative with *von* is used ; as, *Ein Mann von Gaben*, a man of gifts. *Eine Uhr von Gold*, a gold watch.

*Exercise.*

A woman of sense. A man of talent. A silver watch. A gold cup. An ivory box. A gold ring.

Talent, *Talent*, *n.* Silver, *Silber*. Cup, *Becher*, *m.* Box, *Dose*, *f.* Ivory, *Elfenbein*, *n.* Ring, *Ring*, *m.*

*Obs.* 1. *Von* is used before the indefinite article, to denote character ; as, *ein Muster von einem ehrlichen Manne*, a pattern of an honest man ; *ein Muster von einem guten Sohne*, a model of a good son, &c.

2. Sometimes it is indifferent, whether *von* be made use of, or the genitive ; as, *ein Mann von großen Gaben*, (or *großer Gaben*,) a man of great gifts ; *eine Frau von großem Verstand*, (or *großen Verstandes*,) a woman of great sense.

---

RULE V.

In answer to the questions, *wann?* or *wenn?* *when?* *wie lang?* *how long?* *wie groß?* *how large?* *wie weit?* *how wide?* *wie breit?* *how broad?* *wie hoch?* *how high?* the noun must be put in the accusative, unless another noun is understood. (V. Rule III.)

*Examples.*

*When* will he come ?

*Wann* wird er kommen ?

*How long* was he writing ?

*Wie lang* schrieb er ?

On the Saturday following.

Den folgenden Sonnabend.

The whole day.

Den ganzen Tag.

*Exercise.*

*When* did he come ?

*When* do they set out ?

The other day. To-day.

The first of February.

When will he come?	This morning. This evening.
How long has he been here?	A day. A month. A week.
How long has it rained?	The whole day.
How broad and thick is this plank?	A foot broad and an inch thick.

When did he come? Wann kam er? Has he been here?  
Ist er hier gewesen? This plank, Dieses Brett. Inch, Zoll, m.

### *Observations respecting the Cases.*

1. The nominative answers to the question *who?* or *what?* the genitive to the question *whose?* or *of whom?* or *of what?* the dative to the question *to,* or *for whom?* *to,* or *for what?* the accusative to the question *whom?* *what?* or *whither?*

### *Examples.*

Der Schneider machte meines Bruders Sohn einen Rock, the tailor made my brother's son a coat.

### *Explanation.*

Who made the coat?	<i>Nom.</i> the tailor, der Schneider.
What did he do?	he made, er macht.
What did he make?	<i>Acc.</i> a coat, einen Rock.
For whom?	<i>Dat.</i> (for) the son, dem Sohn.
Whose son?	<i>Gen.</i> my brother's, meines Bruders.

Die Hand des Herrn giebt den Menschen gute Gaben, the hand of the Lord gives to man good gifts.

Who or what gives?	<i>Nom.</i> the hand, die Hand.
Whose hand?	<i>Gen.</i> the Lord's, des Herren.
What does it do?	it gives, sie giebt.
What does it give?	<i>Acc.</i> good gifts, gute Gaben.
To whom?	<i>Dat.</i> to men, den Menschen.

2. When *of* signifies *von*, and *to*, *zu*, they govern the dative.  
Ex. *of whom?* must be expressed *von wem?* *of what?* *von was?* *to whom?* *zu wem?* *to what?* *zu was?*

Of whom do you talk? von wem reden Sie?

Of what do you talk? von was, or wovon reden Sie?

To whom do you go? zu wem gehen Sie?

To what house do you go? zu was für einem Haus gehen Sie?

## Adjectives, Beiwörter.

### RULE I.

Adjectives must agree with the nouns to which they refer, in gender, number and case, unless they are used adverbially, then they remain unchangeable, or indeclinable; as,

#### *Declinable.*

1. A good man.  
Ein guter Mann.
2. A good woman.  
Eine gute Frau.
3. A good child.  
Ein gutes Kind.
4. Good men.  
Gute Männer.

#### *Indeclinable.*

1. The man is good.  
Der Mann ist gut.
2. The woman is good.  
Die Frau ist gut.
3. The child is good.  
Das Kind ist gut.
4. The men are good.  
Die Männer sind gut.

*Observe.* Adjectives are generally placed before nouns, unless joined to a proper name, as a title of distinction. *Ex.* Alexander der Große, Alexander the Great; Ludwig der vierzehnte, Louis the Fourteenth.

#### *Examples.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Ein gutes Wort findet eine gute Stelle,  | A good word finds a good place.                        |
| Ein weiser Mann hat mir den Rath gegeben, daß ich mich niemals einem gottlosen Menschen anvertrauen solle. | A wise man has advised me never to trust a wicked man. |

Gott ist gnädig und barm-      God is gracious and merciful,  
 herzig, die Menschen aber      but men are wicked and  
 sind gottlos und unge-      unjust.  
 recht.

*Observe.* The adjective, as well as the article, is repeated before nouns of different genders, or numbers; but nouns of the same gender, or number, require it only before the first; as, ein junger Mann und eine junge Frau, a young man and woman; eine gute Mutter und Tochter, a good mother and daughter. Gute Väter, Mütter und Kinder, good fathers, mothers, and children.

### *Exercise.*

Frederick the Second was a great man. Rich people are mortal as well as the poor. He is a rich man. The man is rich. The woman is rich. The inhabitants are rich. Strong wine is wholesome for a weak stomach. Obedient children have the love and confidence of good men. There are many good men, women, and children in the world. High mountains are not so fertile as low plains. Bring us good wine and water. I know honest people. She made herself ridiculous. The fortune of Alexander the Great. The courage of Henry the Fourth. A wise government is a great happiness to the people.

Frederick the Second, Friedrich der Zweite. Mortal, sterblich. As well as, so wohl als. Inhabitants, Einwohner. Wholesome, gesund. For, für. Weak, schwach. Stomach, Magen, (acc.) Obedient, gehorsam. The love, die Liebe. The confidence, das Vertrauen. Mountain, Berg, *m.* Are not so, sind nicht so. As, als. Bring us, bringet uns. I know honest, ich kenne honeste. She made herself, sie machte sich. Ridiculous, verächtlich. Fortune, Glück, *n.* Courage, Muth, *m.* Government, Regierung, *f.*

### RULE II.

When there are two substantives in the same sentence, with an adjective before the last, the adjective and latter noun are put in the genitive. [*V. Obs. 5, Rule II. p. 240.*]

*Examples.*

Ein Tropfen frischen Wassers, A drop of fresh water.

or, frisches Wasser,

Eine Frau großen Verstandes, A woman of great understanding.

Ein Mann großer Gaben, A man of great gifts.

Bringen Sie mir ein kleines Glas. Bring me a small glass.

But we say, Ein Tropfen Wein, (not Weines), a drop of wine.

*Exercise.*

A draught of *fresh* water. A glass of *fine* beer. A drop of *good* water. A dish of *salt* meat. A piece of *new* bread. An ell of *broad* ribbon. A pair of *new* shoes. A dish of *roast* meat.

Draught, Trunk, *m.* New, frisch, (*when applied to bread.*)  
Fine, fein. Broad, breit. Salt, salzig. Roast, gebraten.  
Dish, Schale.

## RULE III.

Adjectives govern the genitive, when *of*, or *with*, (and sometimes *to*) follows the corresponding adjectives in English; but in such instances, they are generally placed adverbially at the end of the sentence.

*The following is a List of those Adjectives or Adverbs which govern the Genitive.*

Bedürftig, in want ( <i>of</i> ), needy	Gewachsen, able ( <i>to</i> .)
Beflissen, studious ( <i>of</i> .)	Gewärtig, ready ( <i>to</i> .)
Benöthigt, in need ( <i>of</i> .)	Kundig, skilled, or experienced ( <i>in</i> .)
Bewußt, conscious ( <i>of</i> .)	Los, free ( <i>from</i> ), slack, rid ( <i>of</i> .)
Eingedenk, mindful ( <i>of</i> .)	Mächtig, in possession ( <i>of</i> .)
Fähig, capable ( <i>of</i> .)	Müde, tired ( <i>of</i> .)
Froh, glad ( <i>of</i> ), satisfied ( <i>with</i> .)	Quitt, clear ( <i>of</i> ), rid ( <i>of</i> .)
Gewahr, informed ( <i>of</i> ), aware ( <i>of</i> .)	Satt, tired ( <i>of</i> ), satisfied ( <i>with</i> .)
Gewiß, certain ( <i>of</i> .)	Schuldig, guilty ( <i>of</i> .)
Gewohnt, accustomed ( <i>to</i> .)	



Theilhaftig, partaking ( <i>of.</i> )	Verlustig, lost ( <i>to.</i> )
Ueberdrüssig, wearied ( <i>with.</i> )	Voll, full ( <i>of.</i> ) ( <i>also with</i> weary ( <i>of.</i> ) von.)
Unfähig, incapable ( <i>of.</i> )	Viel, much ( <i>of.</i> )
Unwürdig, unworthy ( <i>of.</i> )	Werth, worth, deserving ( <i>of.</i> )
Verdächtig, suspicious ( <i>of.</i> )	Würdig, worthy ( <i>of.</i> )

*Observe.* Some of these words are used only with *seyn*.  
(*Vide some of the following Examples.*)

### *Examples.*

Er ist der Hülfe bedürftig,	He is in want of help.
Sich seiner Unschuld bewußt seyn,	To be conscious of one's own innocence.
Er ist meiner Freundschaft würdig,	He is worthy of my friend- ship.
Sie sind Männer der Freundschaft würdig.	They are men worthy of friendship.
Sie sind der väterlichen Lehren eingedenk,	They are mindful of the fa- ther's warning.
Sie ist des Lebens satt und überdrüssig,	She is satiated with, and weary of life.
Er hat ein Haus voll Goldes und Silbers, or voll Gold und Silber,	He has a house full of gold and silver.
Hat er viel Geldes und Gutes? or, Er hat viel Geld und Gut.	Has he much money and property?

### *Exercise.*

You are unworthy of reward. I am weary of books.  
He is in want of sleep. They were suspicious of robbery  
or theft. He is guilty of a great crime. They are mindful  
of the thing. She is unworthy of his friendship. That  
good man is worthy of a better fate. This poor woman is  
in want of your assistance.

Reward, Belohnung. Robbery, Diebstahl, *m.* Sleep, Schlaf,  
*m.* They are, sie sind. That, jener. Fate, Schicksal, *m.*  
This, dieser. Poor, arm. Assistance, Hülfe, *f.* In want,  
bedürftig.

*Observe.* Voll, full, is sometimes used without a sign of  
the case; as, ein Glas voll Wein, a glass full of wine; also,  
voll, is often used with von; as, voll von Menschen, full of men.

## RULE IV.

Most adjectives\* which have *to* or *for* after them in English, *expressed* or *understood*, require the dative in German.

*Examples.*

Das ist dem Lande nützlich und vortheilhaft,	That is <i>useful</i> and <i>advan-</i> <i>geous</i> to the country.
Die Sache ist mir deutlich,	The thing is <i>clear</i> to me.
Ich bin meiner Mutter ge- horsam,	I am <i>obedient</i> to my mother.
Er ist seinem Vater ähnlich,	He is <i>like</i> or <i>resembles</i> (to) his father.
Das ist Land und Leuten ersprießlich,	That is <i>profitable</i> , or <i>advan-</i> <i>tageous</i> to the country and people.
Es ist ihm etwas leichtes,	It is <i>easy</i> for him.
Wein ist vielen schädlich,	Wine is <i>pernicious</i> to many.
Mir ist bange,	I am afraid.

*Exercise.*

The prince is *kind* to him. That is *injuriously* to the people. That is *hurtful* and *disadvantageous* to me. The son is *like* (to) the father. The labour is *easy* for a man, but *difficult* for a child. This burthen is *insupportable* to me. Many children are not always *obedient* to their parents.

Prince, Fürst, *m.* Kind, gewogen. Injurious, schädlich. People, Volk, *n.* Hurtful, schädlich. Disadvantageous, nachtheilig. Son, Sohn, *m.* Labor, Arbeit, *f.* Easy, leicht. But, aber. Difficult, schwer. Burthen, Last, *f.* Insupportable, unerträglich.

---

\* When the German adjectives are placed at the end of the sentence, they are indeclinable, being used adverbially.

## RULE V.

Those adjectives which denote measure, weight, age, or value, require the accusative when the measures &c. are determined by a numerical word.

To these belong :

Dick, thick.	Alt, old.
Hoch, high.	Reich, rich.
Weit, far, wide.	Groß, great.
Breit, broad.	Schwer, heavy, weighty.
Lang, long.	Werth, worth.
Tief, deep.	Schuldig, indebted, owing.

*Examples.*

Fünf Fuß dick,	Five feet thick, or five feet in thickness.
Das Haus ist sechzig Fuß breit,	That house is sixty feet broad, or wide.
Sie ist viel Geld schuldig,	She owes a great deal of money.
Zwanzig Thaler werth,	Twenty dollars worth.
London ist zwölf Meilen von Kingston,	London is twelve miles from Kingston.
Er ist dreißig Jahr alt,	He is thirty years old.
Ich bin zehn Jahre da gewesen,	I have been there ten years.

*Exercise.*

The tower is a hundred feet high. That roof is fifty feet long. He owes a great deal of money. It is ten feet long, three feet wide, and two feet thick. It is worth three dollars. I am not fifty years old. The house is worth twenty thousand dollars. We have been there thirty years.

Tower, *Thurm, m.* Roof, *Dach, n.* Great deal, *sehr viel.* Dollar, *Thaler, m.*

*Observe.* When no numerical word is used with the above adjectives, they govern the dative of the person. Ex. Das ist mir zu hoch, zu lang, zu tief, zu schwer, that is too high, too long, too deep, too heavy for me. Er ist mir viel werth, he is of great value to me.

## OBSERVATIONS ON THE ADJECTIVES.

1. Adjectives are frequently used as substantives.

*Examples.*

Ein Weiser ist besser als ein	A wise man is better than a
Stärker,	strong man.
Die Reichen und Armen.	The rich and poor.

2. Als, or denn, *than*, follows comparatives.

*Examples.*

Er ist viel größer als ihr Bruder,	He is much taller than your
Er ist stärker als, or denn Her-	brother.
kules,	He is stronger than Hercules.
Er ist reicher als, or denn Crösus,	He is richer than Cræsus.

3. After the superlative, when the English use *of*, or *among*, the Germans use *von*, or *unter*, with the dative, but the genitive may be used if *von*, or *unter* be omitted.

*Examples.*

Er ist der Beste von, or unter	} He is the best of the brothers.
den Brüdern,	
Er ist der Beste der Brüder,	
Sie ist die Schönste unter ihnen,	She is the handsomest of, or
	among them.

4. Before *beste* and *wenigste*, &c. the superlative is sometimes expressed by *\*am*, with the dative.

*Examples.*

Ich liebe ihn am besten,	I like him <i>the</i> best.
Ich achte dieses am wenigsten,	I value this <i>the</i> least.
Ich liebe sie am meisten,	I like her <i>the</i> most.

5. Comparisons are sometimes made by *je, the*, followed by *je*, or *desto, the*.

*Examples.*

Je mehr, je besser,	The more, the better.
Je älter er ist, je (or desto) weis-	The older he is, the wiser he
ser er wird,	grows.

---

\* *Obs.* *am* is used for *an* *denn*.

A comparison is also made by *so* (Englished by *as* and *so*) followed by *als*; *as*,

Er ist <i>so</i> groß <i>als</i> Sie,	He is <i>as</i> tall <i>as</i> you.
Er ist nicht <i>so</i> groß <i>als</i> Sie,	He is not <i>so</i> tall <i>as</i> you.

6. Fractional or broken numbers are always placed before whole numbers.

### Examples.

Unterhalb Pfund,	One pound and a half.
Unterhalb Thaler,	A dollar and a half.
Drittheil Gulden,	Two florins and a half.
Es ist dreiviertel auf zwei,	It is <i>three quarters</i> past one.

---

### EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING DIVISIONS.

1. The lame man is gone out.  
The weak man is subject to the strong.  
Do not disturb the sick man.
2. Italy is more pleasant than Germany.  
Denmark is more fruitful than Sweden.  
Are you not more happy than we?
3. He is the best of his brothers.  
She is the finest woman *of* the three.
4. Do you like him best? We shall receive the most.  
You value them the least.
5. The sooner the better. The more haste the worse speed.  
He is *as* serious *as* Cato. My book is not *so* large *as* that.
6. It is half past three. It is half a year.  
Three ells and a half. Six ounces and a half.

Lame, lahm. Gone out, ausgegangen. Subject, unterwirft. Do not disturb, stören Sie nicht. Sick, krank, *acc.* Italy, Italien. More pleasant, angenehmer. Germany, Deutschland. Denmark, Dänemark. Sweden, Schweden. Are you not? sind Sie nicht? Least, am wenigsten. Sooner, eher. We hasten, man eilet. The worse speed, desto weniger kommt man weiter. Serious, ernsthaft. Large, groß.

## FIRST LESSON.

Es ist eine große Sünde, wenn man die Armen drückt. Friederich der Zweite war ein großer Mann. Der Reiche ist nicht glücklich, wenn er nicht die Tugend liebt. Der Vater ist klüger als der Sohn. Ihr Bruder hat ein großes Vermögen. Die Sonne leuchtet heller als der Mond. Der Weise ist glücklicher als der Thor. Die Londoner Kaufleute sind sehr reich. Die deutsche Sprache ist schwerer, als die französische Sprache. Heinrich der Vierte war großmüthiger als Philipp der Zweite. Das Wasser ist gesunder als der Wein. Deutschland ist größer als Dänemark. Die Weintrauben sind süßer als die Johannisbeeren. Kleine Fürsten sind glücklicher als große Könige. Die Städte sind besser gebaut, als die Dörfer. Das Kind ist nicht so groß, als die Mutter. Der Vater hat mehr Sorge, als die Kinder denken. Der Sommer ist weniger angenehm, als der Frühling. In Schweden ist es weniger kalt, als in Grönland. Der Mensch hat immer mehr Fehler, als man glaubt. Socrates war weniger stolz, als die Sophisten. Plato hätte besser gethan, wenn er nicht an den Hof des Dionysius gegangen wäre. Alles wahrhaft Gute ist der Gegenstand meiner Wünsche.

Sünde, *f.* sin. Drücken, *to* oppress. Reiche, *m.* rich man. Klug, prudent. Vermögen, *n.* talent, or abilities. Leuchten, *to* shine. Hell, bright. Großmüthig, generous. Gesund, healthy. Weintrauben, grapes. Süß, sweet. Johannisbeere, *f.* currant. Bauen, *to* build. Dorf, *n.* village. Sorge, *f.* care. Angenehm, agreeable. Immer, always. Hof, *m.* court. Gegenstand, *m.* object.

## SECOND LESSON.

Der mächtigste Mensch kann die Ordnung der Natur nicht stören. Die meisten Reichen sehen mit Verachtung auf die Armen herab. Nero war der ruchloseste unter allen römischen Kaisern. Demosthenes war der beredteste Grieche, wie Cicero der beredteste Römer. Titus war der beste römische Kaiser. Homer war der größte Dichter der Griechen. Dionysius, in Sicilien, war der grausamste Tyrann, und vielleicht einer der unglücklichsten Menschen. Alexander der Große, und Sesostris, König von Egypten, sind

die größten Eroberer im Alterthum gewesen. Der Diamant ist der härteste und durchsichtigste Edelstein. Die gelehrtesten Männer waren mehrentheils die größten und geschicktesten Mathematiker, und daher entdeckten sie die wichtigsten Erfindungen. Die tiefste Ehrfurcht anderer verdient immer der Weiseste und Tugendhafteste. Derjenige Mann ist am weisesten, welcher ein ruhiges Leben führt. Diejenige Frau ist am klügsten, welche ihren Haushalt gut versorgt. Dasjenige Kind ist am liebenswürdigsten, welches folgsam ist. Diejenigen Leute sind am vernünftigsten, welche Vorurtheilen am wenigsten unterworfen sind.

Mächtig, powerful. Stören, disturb. Herab sehen, regard, or look down upon. Ruchlos, profligate. Beredt, eloquent. Grausam, cruel. Vielleicht, perhaps. Eroberer, conqueror. Durchsichtig, transparent. Entdecken, to discover. Wichtig, important. Erfindung, invention. Weiseste, wisest. Immer, always. Tief, profound. Ehrfurcht, reverence. Anderer, from others. Führen, to lead. Versorgen, to provide. Folgsam, obedient. Vernünftig, reasonable. Unterworfen seyn, to be subject to. Vorurtheil, prejudice.

## Pronouns.

As the *personal pronouns* are so frequently connected with verbs, it may not be improper to defer speaking of them until we treat of the verbs.

## Possessive Pronouns.

### RULE I.

Possessive pronouns must agree with the nouns to which they belong in gender, number and case.

*Examples.*

*Mein Bruder, meine Schwester und meine Kinder,	My brother, ( <i>my</i> ) sister, and ( <i>my</i> ) children.
*Meine Brüder, Schwestern und Kinder,	My brothers, sisters and children.
Mein Vater ist verreiset, und meine Mutter ist nicht zu Hause,	My father is gone a journey, and my mother is not at home.
*Meine Mutter, Tochter und Schwester,	My mother, daughter and sister.
Meines Bruders einzige Tochter, und meiner Schwester liebster Sohn, sind vor etlichen Jahren gestorben,	My brother's only daughter, and my sister's dearest son have been dead some years.
Der Garten meines Vaters, und derjenige meines Bruders,	My father's garden, and that of my brother.
Von deinem Bruder, von deiner Schwester und von deinen Kindern will ich gar nichts sagen,	I will say nothing at all of thy brother, sister, and children.
Deines Vettters Pferd hat fünfzig Thaler gekostet,	Thy cousin's horse has cost fifty dollars.
Er hat seinen Vater, seine Mutter und sein Kind gesehen,	He has seen his father, mother and child.
Mein Geschmack ist nicht der beinige,	My taste is not <i>thine</i> .
Ihr Freund und der Ihrige sind aufgegangen,	Her friend and <i>yours</i> are gone out.

---

\* The pronouns as well as the articles and adjectives are repeated before nouns of different genders or numbers; but before nouns of the same gender or number they need not be repeated; also they need not be repeated if one noun be masculine and the other neuter; as, Alles ist verkauft, sogar mein Haus und Hof, all is sold, even my house and yard. As a general remark the pronouns, adjectives, and articles need never be repeated where one will suffice.



Ihre Freundin und die Her (*female*) friend and  
 Ihrige, yours.  
 Mein Haus liegt nahe bei My house lies near yours.  
 dem Ihrigen,

*Exercise.*

My father, mother, and child are dead. My brother and sister are in the house; but my cousin and yours are in the garden. Her † cousin (*f*) and yours are at their country house. My vines, meadows, and fields are in good condition. Your sister dances better than mine, but mine speaks German better than yours. I have not received my books, writings, or other things. He gave it to my brother's wife. My books are much dearer than yours, but yours are a great deal better than mine. My gardens are very large, but they are not so well cultivated as yours, or theirs. Your brother's wife's sister is gone a journey.

Are at home, sind zu Hause. Cousin, Vetter, *m.* †Cousine, *f.* Country house, Landhaus, *n.* Vine, Weinberg, *m.* Meadow, Wiese, *f.* Field, Feld, *n.* Are in good condition, sind wohl bestellt. Dances, tanzt. But, allein. Speaks German, spricht Deutsch. Writings, Schriften. Other things, andere Sachen. I have not yet received, habe ich noch nicht empfangen. He gave it to, er gab es zu. Much, viel. Dear, theuer. A great deal better, weit besser. Large, groß. So well cultivated, so gut angebauet.

*Observe.* The following and similar expressions are turned in German by the dative. These hats are yours, and these coats are theirs, diese Hüte gehören Ihnen, und diese Röcke gehören ihnen. This mode of expression corresponds to the English, these hats belong to you, and these coats belong to them. Wem gehört die Uhr? to whom does the watch belong? Sie gehört mir (not sie ist mein,) it belongs to me, or it is mine. So, sie gehört dir (not dein,) sie gehört ihm (not sein,) &c.

The possessive pronouns are elegantly changed into the dative of personal pronouns with the proposition von; as, er ist ein Freund von mir, he is a friend of mine, (*of me*); es ist ein Brief von ihm, it is a letter of his; instead of which we may say: er ist mein Freund, he is my friend, or es ist einer von meinen Freunden, it is one of my friends; es ist sein Brief, it is his letter; or es ist einer von seinen Briefen, it is one of his letters.

## RULE II.

When a conjunctive relative pronoun follows any tense of *seyn*, it is indeclinable, because it is then used adverbially, except when a noun is understood, or when we wish to distinguish the possessor from other persons, then the declinable form must be used, in order to give greater emphasis, which generally occurs in the reply to a question, by way of opposition, or to oppose an affirmation.

*Examples.*

## Indeclinable.

Diese Äpfel sind mein,	These apples are mine.
Der Garten ist mein oder dein,	The garden is mine or thine.
Das Pferd ist sein oder ihr,	The horse is his, or hers.
Es ist euer, (Ihr.)	It is yours.
Es ist mein, dein, sein, ihr,	It is mine, thine, his, hers.
Es ist unser, Ihr,	It is ours, yours.
Das ist mein nicht dein Freund,	That is my friend not thine.

## Declinable.

Wessen Hut ist das?	Es ist meiner (oder es ist
Whose hat is that?	*der meine, oder der meinige,) it is mine.
Wessen Feder ist das?	Es, or sie ist seine (oder die
Whose pen is that?	seine, oder die seinige,) it is his.
Wessen Kind ist das?	Es ist deines, (oder das deine, oder das deinige,) it is thine.
Wessen Buch ist dieses?	Es ist unseres, Ihres, ihres,
Whose book is this?	it is ours, yours, theirs.
Ist dieß meines oder Ihres?	Nein, es ist deines oder ihres,
Is this mine, or yours?	no it is thine, or theirs.

---

\* The possessive pronouns may be used relatively with the definite article.

Dieses ist nicht dein Hut sondern *meiner,	This is not thy hat, but mine.
Dieses ist nicht deine Mutter, sie ist meine,	This is not thy mother, she is mine.
Dieses ist nicht dein Kind, es ist meines,	This is not thy child, it is mine.
Das ist nicht dein Freund, es ist meiner,	This is not thy friend, it is mine.
Dieses ist einer meiner Freunde,	This is one of my friends.
Diese Messer sind mein,	Nein, sie sind, meine, deine, seine, ihre, &c.
These knives are mine.	No, they are mine, thine, his, hers, &c.
Diese Glocke und Uhr sind dein, oder Ihr,	Nein, sie sind seine, (oder die seinigen),
This bell and watch are thine, or yours.	No, they are his.

*Exercise.*

## Indeclinable.

That book is yours. This pen is his. These gardens are theirs. These hats are mine. That gown is hers. The knives and forks are ours. Those stockings and shoes are theirs. Whose coat is that? †It is his. That is thine.

## Declinable.

Whose coat is that? It is his. No, it is mine. Whose dog is that? It is ours. No, it is not, it is his.

\* When the noun is omitted its place is supplied by the endings *er, e, or es*, depending upon the gender of the noun understood.

† In the sentence, *it is his, sein, or seines, his, is either declinable, or indeclinable; it is indeclinable when used adverbially, or when we simply say, es ist sein, but if a particular stress is to be laid on the pronoun, it is declinable, and we must then say, es ist seines. The same observation will apply in all similar cases.*

*These books are mine. No, they are mine, or his. This is not your house, but mine, or it is mine. Are these mine or his? They are neither yours nor his, but mine. That pencil and knife are mine. No, they are hers. That is not thy mother, it is mine.*

---

RULE III.

*Instead of the possessive pronouns, the article, with the personal pronoun in the dative, or accusative, is often used, this frequently occurs where the noun, or pronoun has been given before.*

*Examples.*

\*Er gab es mir in die Hand, He gave it me into my hand.  
 Ich verbrannte mir den Finger. I burnt my finger.  
 ger,  
 Sie wäscht mir das Gesicht, She washes my face.

*Exercise.*

The tears flow from his eyes. It is my turn. I shall wash my hands and face. It glimmers ~~before~~ my eyes. He affronted him to his face. He gave it into his hand. The French have cut off their king's head.

Flow from, fließen aus. It is my turn, die Reihe ist an mir. I shall, ich werde. Hand, (dat.) Hand, f. Face, (dat.) Gesicht, n. Wash, waschen. It glimmers, es glimmert. Before, vor. Eye, Auge, (dat.) To affront, stoßen. To his face, vor den Kopf. Cut off, abgeschlagen.

---

## Demonstrative Pronouns.

RULE I.

*Dieser, is generally used for this, but is sometimes Englished by that, to distinguish one thing from another. It*

---

\* It is also good German to say, er gab es in meine Hand, he gave it into my hand.

must agree with the noun in gender, number, and case, and is repeated as other pronouns.

*Examples.*

Dieser Mann ist es von welchem ich rede,	This is the man of whom I speak.
Diese Frau sagte mir,	This woman told me.
Wem gehört dieser Garten und dieses Haus?	To whom does <i>this</i> garden and <i>that</i> house belong?
Dieser Mann und dieses Weib sind hier,	<i>This</i> man and <i>that</i> woman are here.
Dieses, oder dieß ist das Buch,	This is the book.

*Exercise.*

This boy and those girls, are the children of that woman. This house is Mr. Martin's. Give these apples and pears to that boy. The son of this man is the husband of that woman.

Boy, Knabe, *m.* Girl, Mädchen, *n.* Woman, Weib, *n.* Is Mr. Martin's, gehört Herrn Martin. Pear, Birne, *f.* Husband, Ehemann, *m.*

*Observe.* When *der, die, das, this, that, these, those, he, they,* are employed as demonstrative pronouns, to point out an object more particularly, they must be pronounced with greater emphasis, and are often followed by *da, hier, dort.* Der Mensch ist weise welcher tugendhaft lebt, that man is wise who lives virtuously; Der Mann hier, this man (*here*); die Frau da, that woman (*there*); das Kind dort, that child (*there*); die Person die du liebst, that person *whom* you love; hier sind die Männer, here are those men; der welcher, he who. When *der* is joined with *eben*, it is Englished by *the same*, and is equivalent to *derselbe*; as, eben der Junge, the same boy; eben die Frau, the same woman; eben das Mädchen, the same girl.

---

RULE II.

When two things are compared *dieser, this,* is put for the first, and *jener, that,* for the second, answering to *ce-ci*, or *celui-ci* and *celui-là*, in French; but if the sub-

jects to which they relate, precede them, then *jener*, *that*, relates to the first mentioned, and *dieser*, *this*, to the last mentioned.

*Examples.*

*Dieser Mann ist weit großmüthiger als jener, Cet homme ci est bien plusgénéreux quecelui-là.	} This man is far more gener- ous than <i>that</i> .
Diese und jene taugen nichts, ceux-ci et ceux-là ne valent rein.	} These and those are good for nothing, or are worth nothing.
Diese Äpfel sind gut, aber jene sind schlecht.	} These apples are good, but those are bad.
Der Leib stirbt, die Seele ist unsterblich; und doch ver- wenden wir alle Sorg- falt auf jenen und ver- nachlässigen diese.	} The body perishes, the soul is immortal; and never- theless we bestow all care on <i>that</i> , and neglect <i>this</i> .
Ich rede nicht von diesem, sondern von jenem.	} I do not speak of <i>this</i> , but of <i>that</i> .

*Exercise.*

This house and that. These people and those. This man is much more prudent than that. This girl is more modest than that. This horse is much better than that. Follow virtue and shun vice; that is your friend, this your enemy. You must do this, and not leave that. This is much better than that. I speak of this and that history.

People, Leute. Prudent, klug. Modest, sitzsam. Horse, Pferd, n. To follow, folgen. Shun, meiden. To leave, lassen. History, Geschichte, f.

RULE III.

The neuters of *dieser*, *jener*, and *der*, viz. *†dieses*, or

\* *Dieser* and *jener*, must agree with their respective nouns, which are sometimes expressed and sometimes understood.

† *Solches*, *welches*, and *es*, are also used absolutely. Ex. *Solches* war der Zustand, such was the situation. *Welches* sind meine Briefe? which are my letters? *Es* sind Fische, they are fish.

*dies*, or *diesß* ; *jenas* and *das*, are often used absolutely, i. e. without any noun, for any gender, or number ; answering to the French *ceci*, *cela*, *ce*, &c.

*Examples.*

Sind <i>diesß</i> oder <i>das</i> die Männer?	Are these or those the men?
<i>Dieses</i> , or <i>diesß</i> , (not <i>dieser</i> ) ist der Mann.	This is the man.
<i>Das</i> (not <i>der</i> ) ist der Herr des Hauses.	That is the master of the house.
<i>Das</i> (not <i>die</i> ) ist die Frau des Hauses.	That is the mistress of the house.
<i>Das</i> (not <i>die</i> ) sind meine Kinder.	Those are my children. Ce sont mes enfans.
<i>Dies</i> ist gut aber <i>das</i> ist übel.	This is good, but <i>that</i> is bad.
<i>Dies</i> ist die Stadt von welcher ich kam.	This is the city from which I came.
<i>Das</i> sind die guten Männer.	These are the good men.

*Exercise.*

Are these, or those the women? This is the house from which I came. Do you believe this, or that? This is the man to whom you spoke yesterday. That gives me much pleasure. These are the clothes and books. That is the woman to whom you spoke.

Do you believe? glauben Sie? To whom you spoke yesterday, mit welchem Sie gestern rebeten. Gives me, giebt mir. Pleasure, Vergnügen. Cloth, Kleid, n.

## Relative Pronouns.

RULE I.

*Der*, *die*, *das*, *who*, and *welcher*, *welche*, *welches*, *who*, *which*, *that*, are used the one for the other, except in the genitive, where *dessen*, or *deren*, answers to *whose* (sometimes *derer*, *whose*, is used in the plural.) They must

agree with the nouns to which they relate in gender and number. But their cases are governed by verbs, nouns, or prepositions, when they occur in the same member of a sentence. The indeclinable particle *so* is sometimes used relatively for the nominative in both numbers, instead of *der*, or *welcher*; but *so* is not used in the oblique cases.

### Examples.

*Der Mann, welcher, der, oder <i>so</i> hier steht.	The man <i>who</i> , or <i>that</i> stands here.
Die Frau, welche, die, oder <i>so</i> es mir gegeben hat.	The woman <i>who</i> , or <i>that</i> has given it me.
Das Pferd, welches, das, oder <i>so</i> den Hafer frisst.	The horse <i>which</i> , or <i>that</i> eats the oats.
Der Mann, der, oder das Ding, das bewegt.	The man, or thing <i>that</i> moves.
Die Kinder, welche, oder die unten spielen.	The children <i>who</i> play underneath.
Hier ist der Mann, <i>so</i> mir das zeigt.	Here is the man <i>who</i> shows me that.
Da ist der Mann, welchen oder den ich meine.	There is the man <i>whom</i> I mean.
Der Weinberg von welchem wir reden, ist hier ganz nahe.	The vineyard of which we speak, is just by.
Dieses ist der Mann mit welchem, (oder mit dem) ich rede.	This is the man with <i>whom</i> I speak.
Ich weiß nicht welchen von den Personen Sie meinen.	I do not know <i>which</i> of the persons you mean.
Das ist der Fehler, welchem er am meisten ergeben ist.	That is the defect <i>to which</i> he is most subject.
Die Ehre, deren er <i>so</i> würdig ist.	The honour of which he is so deserving.

---

\* *Welcher* is preferable to *der*, in the grave style, and when used immediately after any of the personal pronouns, or to avoid a repetition of sound; *so* is sometimes used to avoid the repetition of *welcher* or *der*. *Der* is more used than *welcher* in conversation.



Das ist ein Mann, dessen Eugend mir bekannt ist.	That is a man <i>whose</i> virtue is known to me.
Die Männer, deren Verdien- ste so groß sind.	Those men whose merits are so great.
Kann man auch diejenigen lieben, deren Laster die ganze Welt verabscheuet?	Can we love those <i>whose</i> crimes are abhorred by every body?

*Exercise.*

My friend *who* wrote this letter to me. The box *which* is there. The boy who spoke to me. That is not the woman *whom* you mean. The letter *which* I sent you. That is an evil to *which* he is often subject. Love is a passion *which* or *that* makes many men very unhappy. The death *which* they have merited. Here is the money *which* I owe you, and the books *that* you lent me. The gardener *who* has killed the dog. Ferdinand *whose* courage is known. It is the man *whom* we saw yesterday.

Box, Kiste, *f.* Is there, dort ist. You mean, Ihr meint. Letter, Brief, *m.* I sent you, ich Ihnen schickte. Evil, übel. Love, die Liebe. Passion, Leidenschaft. Very unhappy, sehr

\* *Wer, whoever, he, that, he who, or she who*, is used only in the singular; as, *Wer immer lächeln kann, der ist gewiß ein Schalk, whoever* can always smile (*better*, has always a smile at command), is certainly a wag. Sie wissen noch nicht wer ich bin, you do not yet know *who* I am. *Wer mich liebt ist mein Freund, he who, or he that* loves me, is my friend. Ich weiß nicht wer Sie sind, I do not know *who* you are. *Was, what, that*, is the neuter of *wer*, and is generally used for things; as, *Was ich davon weiß, will ich Ihnen sagen, what* I know of it, I will tell you. Dieß ist alles was ich habe, that is all *that* I have. *Was* can never refer to an antecedent noun, therefore when the subject is expressed, *welcher* or *der* is required; as, *Das Haus, welches, or das ich besitze, the house which* I possess, *not* *Das Haus was ich besitze.*

The word *selbst*, may be joined to a relative, Ex. Ein König der selbst regieret, a king who governs himself. Sie ist eine Mutter die selbst ihre Kinder erzieht, she is a mother who brings up her children herself.

*Wer*, stands for *derjenige, welcher*, and *was* for *dasjenige, welches*.

unglücklich. Makes, macht. They have merited, sie haben verdient. Owe, schuldig bin. Have lent, geliehen haben. Gardener, Gärtner. Has killed, getödtet hat. Courage, Muth, m. Is known, bekannt ist.

---

RULE II.

The relative is sometimes understood in English, but must be expressed in German.

*Examples.*

Der Weg, den ich gehe,	The way ( <i>which</i> ) I go.
Die Dinge, welche, or die ich thue,	The things ( <i>which</i> ) I do.
Der Mann, welchen, or den ich sah,	The man ( <i>whom</i> ) I saw.
Die hundert Gulden, welche, or die ich Ihnen gestern geliehen habe,	The hundred florins ( <i>which</i> ) I lent you yesterday.
Der Herr, welchen, or den ich letztere Woche gesehen habe, ist gestorben,	The gentleman ( <i>whom</i> ) I saw last week, is dead.

*Exercise.*

The way (*which*) I went was uneven. The man (*whom*) I love. That is the man (*whom*) I saw yesterday. The reasons (*which*) you give me, are not solid. The company (*that*) he keeps is not reputable. The letters (*which*) you wrote yesterday are not gone to the post.

Way, Weg, m. I went was uneven, ich ging war uneben. I saw yesterday, ich gestern sah. Love, liebe. Reason, Grund, m. You give, are not solid, Sie geben, sind nicht fest. Company, Gesellschaft, f. Are not gone to the post, sind nicht auf die Post gegeben.

*Obs.* It is not necessary to repeat the relative before each verb in a sentence. Ex. Ein Freund, der mich liebt und hochschätzt, a friend *who* loves and esteems me.

## RULE III.

*Da*, and *wo*, (or *mit* before a vowel) stand for *welcher*, or *der*, when compounded with prepositions. [V. prop. p. 218].

## Examples.

Die Feder womit ich schreibe. The pen *with which* I write.  
 Die Person, wovon, or davon The person *of whom* I spoke  
 (betroffen welcher) ich euch to you.  
 gesagt habe.  
 Das ist worüber ich mich That is *what* astonishes me.  
 verwundere.  
 Das ist das Messer womit (or That is the knife *wherewith*  
 mit welchem) er schnitt. (better, *with which*) he  
 cuts.

## Exercise.

Here is a pen *with which* you may write. That is *what* I am persuaded of. That is the house *of which* I spoke. He is a friend *upon whom* you may depend. Have you money *with which* you can pay. I will endeavour to make myself worthy of the friendship, *with which* you honour me.

To write, schreiben. Am persuaded, überzeugt sein. Spoke, gesagt habe. Upon, auf. You may depend, Sie sich verlassen können. Money, Geld, n. 5. I will endeavour, ich werde mich bestreben. To make myself worthy of the friendship, with which you honour me, der Freundschaft, womit Sie mich beehren, würdig zu machen.

## RULE IV.

*Der*, or *derjenige*, *he*, *she*, *it*, *they*, *their*, *that*, *those*, &c. are used when *who*, *that*, or *which*, answering to *celui*, *celle*, &c. in French, follows in the sentence.

## Examples.

*Der*, or *derjenige*, *welcher* He, *who* goes.  
 gehet,

Die, or diejenige, die <del>es</del> sagte,	<i>She, who said it.</i>
Der ist glücklich, welcher zufrieden ist,	<i>He is happy who is content.</i>
Es ist der Vortheil derer, die, or welche es thun,	<i>It is to their advantage who do it.</i>
Die Wälder in Polen sind breiter und länger als die in Deutschland.	<i>The forests in Poland are wider and longer than those in Germany.</i>
Derjenige ist reich, der sich begnügt mit was er hat,	<i>He is rich who contents himself with what he has.</i>

*Exercise.*

They are happy who die in the Lord. He who spoke with me. That is the will of him who sent me. That virtue is great which stands the proof of disappointments. The rivers in America are larger than those in Europe. He is a child of God, who believes in him and his son.

Die in the Lord, in dem Herrn sterben. Spoke with me, mit mir rebete. Stands the proof of disappointments, auch in Widerwärtigkeiten die Probe hält. The rivers, die Flüsse. In America, in Amerika. In Europe, in Europa. A child of God, ein Kind Gottes. Who believes in him and his son, der an ihn und seinen Sohn glaubet.

**Interrogative Pronouns.**

## RULE I.

The interrogative pronoun *welcher? which?* is joined to nouns with which it must agree in gender, and number. *Was für ein? what?* agrees in gender with nouns in the singular number only; when nouns are in the plural number, or do not admit of any plural, the *ein* is omitted. The cases are governed by other words as before. *Welcher* sometimes requires the genitive, or *von* with the dative.

Wen was, or wem was reden Of what are you speaking?  
Sie?

Was sagen Sie? Ich weiß. What do you say? I do  
nicht was, not know what.

Wen was ist das gemacht? Of what is that made?  
von Zucker, Sugar.

Was für ein Landname find Sie? What countryman are you?

### Exercise.

Who is there? Sir, it is a servant. Who is always wise? no one. Who gave you it? some one. To whom does this book belong? to me. Whose children are these? mine, every one. Who say so? people say so. What is that? it is no dog, it is a fox. What have you there? a book; of what does it treat? What have you in this basket? they are flowers.

Sir, it is a servant, mein Herr; es ist ein Diener. Always, immer. Wise, weise. No one, niemand. Gave you it, hat es Ihnen gegeben. Some one, jemand. Does belong, gehört. Every one, jederman. People, man. No, kein. Fox, Fuchs. Of, von, with a, (dat.) Does it treat? handelt es? Basket, Korb. Flower, Blume.

## Indefinite Pronouns.

### RULE.

These pronouns, which are not joined to nouns, must however agree with nouns understood; except when indeclinable.

### Examples.

Every man jeder. Every woman, jede. Every thing, jedes.

Keiner von beidem ist mein Bruder. Neither is my brother.

Keine von beidem ist meine Schwester. Neither is my sister.

**Keiner von beiden ist mein. Neither is my child.**

**Nicht.**

**Haben Sie kein Geld? Nein, ich habe keins, or keines. Have you no money? No, I have none.**

**Ich kenne keinen von beiden. I know neither.**

**Kein Mensch kann das thun was er gethan hat. No man can do what he has done.**

**Beide sprechen recht gut Deutsch. Both speak very good German.**

### Exercise.

Has he a daughter? Yes, he has one. No one knows when he will die. I will have neither; you shall have either. Every thing under the sun is subject to change. Have you wine? No, I have none. Some one came to the doctor.

Knows when he will die, weiß wann er sterben muß. To the doctor, zum Doctor.

*Observe.* The word *in* is expressed by *da*, when united to prepositions. [*Vide Gr. p. 218.*]; as,

**Ich verwundere mich sehr darüber. I am very much surprised at it.**

### Recapitulatory Exercises on the Pronouns.

#### FIRST LESSON.

Unter allen Werken ist auch nicht eines, das nicht Fehler hat. Es ist nicht eines unter diesen Büchern, das ich nicht alle Jahre lese. Ich zweifle, daß es einen Schriftsteller ohne Fehler giebt. Ich zweifle, daß jemand die Menschen besser gekannt habe, als la Bruyère. Hat jemand natürlicher als la Fontaine erzählt? Ich kenne niemanden, der so glücklich ist, als er. Wir kennen niemanden, der so viel Glück hat, als sie. Man muß jedem das Seinige geben. Kennen Sie einen dieser Herren? Kennen Sie einige von diesen Frauenzimmer? Es giebt keinen, der mehr Ihr Diener ist, als ich. Es giebt keine, die mehr Ihre Dienerin ist, als ich. Keiner weiß, ob er Haß oder Liebe

verbs; as, *Es regnet*, it rains; *Es bewölkt sich*, it gets cloudy; *Es bezieht sich*, it refers; but, before impersonal verbs, which take a dative or an accusative after them, it is Englished by *I*, or *me*; as, *Es hungert mich*, I am hungry; *Es verlangt mich*, I long; *Es dünkt mir*, or *es dünkt mir*, me thinks, or I think; however, when the pronoun is placed before the verb, then *es* is omitted; as, *mich verlangt*, I long; *Dir dünkt*, I think. *Es* is sometimes, for the sake of variety and harmony, put before a verb at the commencement of a sentence, when the subject is put after; as, *Es entsteht die Frage*, the question arises; *Es glauben die Menschen*, mankind believe; but *es* is not used when the subject precedes; as, *Die Frage entsteht*; *die Menschen glauben*.

*Examples to illustrate the preceding Observations.*

O, Gott! du wirst mich erretten,	O God! thou wilt deliver me.
Mein Sohn! du hast deine Pflicht	My son! thou hast done thy
erfüllet,	duty.
Bauer, habt ihr die Kühe zum	Farmer, have you these cows
Verkauf?	to sell, or for sale?
Freund, könnt ihr mir nicht sagen,	Friend, can you not tell me,
wo? &c.	where? &c.
Sei er so gut und sage er seinem	Have the goodness to tell your
Herrn,	master.
Marie, hat sie das Handtuch ge-	Mary, have you (harshly) fetch-
holt?	ed the towel?

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

RULE I.

The nominative follows the verbs, *seyn*, to be; *werden*, to become; *bleiben*, to remain; *scheinen*, to seem, to appear; also *heißen*, when it signifies to be called or named. Whenever an active verb governs the accusative, the passive of the same verb governs the nominative.

*Examples.*

Wilhelm ist ein guter König.	William is a good king.
Friedrich II. war ein großer Monarch.	Frederick the Second was a great monarch.
Mein Bruder wird ein reicher Mann werden.	My brother will become a rich man.
Er heißt Johann.	He is called John.
Der Narr bleibt ein Narr.	The fool remains a fool.
*Act. Die Leute loben meinen Bruder.	The people praise my brother.
Pass. Mein Bruder wird gelobt.	My brother is praised.

*Exercise.*

His brother is a fool. He will never become a great general. Many men remain children as long as they live. Alexander was called the Great. My brother is become a soldier; he remains a silly man, as he always was. It seems a good plan.

Fool, Narr. General, Feldherr. As long as, so long. Silly man, Thor. As, wie.

*Obs.* The German verbs govern the same cases of nouns and pronouns as the English; except in some particular modes of expression.

## RULE II.

Those verbs which have *of* (and sometimes *from* or *with*) after them in English, require the genitive after them in German. Sometimes *of* or *from* is implied in the sense of the verb. The accusative comes with the genitive and is placed before it, when there is any other case in the sentence.

The following is a list of some of those verbs which take *of* or *from* after them in English, and whose corresponding verbs,



in German, to govern the genitive case of the thing, and the accusative of the person.

Anklagen, to accuse <i>of</i> .	gewähren, to grant, to allow <i>of</i>
bedürfen, to be in need <i>of</i> .	überheben, to free <i>from</i> .
belehren, to inform <i>of</i> .	überführen, to convict <i>of</i> .
berauben, to rob, or deprive <i>of</i> .	überzeugen, to convince <i>of</i> .
beschuldigen, to accuse <i>of</i> .	versichern, to assure <i>of</i> .
entlassen, to dismiss <i>from</i> .	verweisen, to banish <i>from</i> .
entleiben, to free <i>from</i> .	würdigen, to deign, to think
entsetzen, to discharge <i>from</i> .	worthy <i>of</i> .
gedenken, to think <i>of</i> .	

### Examples.

Ich klage dich des Diebstahls an,	I accuse you <i>of</i> the theft.
Er beraubte ihn seines Geldes,	He robbed him <i>of</i> his money
Er beschuldigte ihn der Lüge,	He charged him <i>with</i> the lie
Ich kann mich dessen nicht erwehren,	I cannot keep myself <i>from</i> it.
Jemanden des Mordes anklagen,	To accuse somebody (or a person) <i>of</i> murder.
Er entzieht sich der Gesellschaft,	He avoids (he withdraws <i>from</i> ) the company.
Jemanden großer Ehren würdigen,	To think a person worthy <i>of</i> great honour.
Ich entsetze ihn seines Amtes,	I discharge him <i>from</i> his office.
Ich versichere dich dessen,	I assure you <i>of</i> it.

### Exercise.

I assure you of my friendship.\* Free me *from* this charge. He has accused him *of* the crime. To charge a person *with* treachery or treason. They will banish him *from* his country. He intends to rob me *of* this pleasure.

Friendship, Freundschaft, *f*. Charge, Amt, *n*. Treachery, Verrätherei, *f*. Pleasure, Vergnügen, *n*.

---

\* I assure you of my friendship, may be expressed in the dative; as, Ich versichere dir meine Freundschaft.

## RULE III.

When *to*, *for*, (and sometimes *from*) are used after verbs in English, the corresponding verbs in German require the dative: *to*, *for*, &c. are frequently understood.\*

*Examples.*

Geben Sie mir Brot,	Give ( <i>to</i> ) me some bread.
Schicken Sie mir die Sachen,	Send the things <i>to</i> me.
Ich kann Ihnen nun berichten wie die Sache war,	I can now report <i>to</i> you how the matter was.
Er giebt mir das Buch,	He gives ( <i>to</i> ) me the book.
Er wird Ihnen diese Wissenschaft lehren,	He will teach ( <i>to</i> ) you that science.
Geben Sie mir den Theil der Güter der mir gehört,	Give <i>to</i> me that part of the goods which belongs <i>to</i> me
Der Schüler sucht mir das Buch,	The scholar seeks the book <i>for</i> me.
Die Erde gleicht einer Kugel,	The earth is like ( <i>to</i> ) a ball.
Ich schätze es mir für eine Ehre,	I think it an honour <i>to</i> me.

Sometimes the dative is used with the accusative, when in English we use the genitive. [V. Rule III., Possessive Pronouns, p. 259.]; as,

Die Franzosen haben ihrem König den Kopf abgeschlagen,	The French have <i>cut off their</i> king's head.
--	---

*Exercise.*

Give the book *to* the man. The son resembles (*to*) the father. I promise (*to*) you my friendship. The debauchee is addicted (*to*) drinking. Lend (*to*) me twenty crowns. You want to force it *from* me. Pay (*to*) me what thou

---

\* The accusative is used with the dative, when there is any other case in the sentence.

Some German Grammarians use the Latin Rule, omnia verba regunt dativum ejus rei, cui aliquid acquiritur, aut adimitur.

owest me. I will pay (to) you, all. Ask him for the book. That is useful and advantageous to me.

Resembles, gleich. To promise, versprechen. Debauchee, ~~Wüßling~~, ~~in~~ ~~Land~~, ~~lassen~~. You want, du willst. To force ~~from~~, abzwängen. Pays, bezahlen. What, was. To owe, schuldig seyn. Pays, abtragen, or bezahlt. To ask, fordern. Advantageous, vortheilhaft.

### Observations.

1. The dative is put before or after the verb, when we ask *whom? to whom?*

Wem bringt er das?	To whom does he bring that?
Mir bringt er's, or er bringt mir's,	He brings it to me.

2. Most of the neuter, and many of the impersonal verbs govern the dative: *Ex.*

Einem antzagen etwas zu thun,	To press somebody to do something.
Es kommt mir eine Lust an,	I have a mind.

3. All verbs compounded of the prepositions *ab, an, auf, bei, ein, vor, unter, zu, nach*, require the dative: *Ex.*

Ich habe ihm das zugebacht,	I have destined that to him.
Folgen Sie mir nach, mein Freund,	Follow (after) me, my friend.
Die Menschen können Gott nichts vorschreiben,	Man can dictate nothing to God.

4. *Seyn* and *werden* with an adverb, govern the dative: *Ex.*

Mir ist wohl,	I am well.
Er ist mir gut,	He is good to me.
Es ist mir übel,	I am not well.
Mir wird übel von ihm,	He makes me ill.

### RULE IV.

Those verbs, in German, govern the accusative, which have no preposition, *expressed* or *understood*, after them in English.

*haben, to have*, and all active verbs, govern the accusative; when we can ask *Wen? whom? Was? what?*

Wie viel? *how much?* Wie theuer? *how dear?* Wie lang?  
*how long?* Wie oft? *how often?* Wie alt sind Sie? *how*  
*old are you?*

*Examples.*

Er liebt mich und dich,	He loves me and you.
Wem liebt er? acc. mich und dich,	Whom does he love? acc. me and you.
Ich ehre dich,	I honour you.
Ich schätze meinen Freund,	I value my friend.
Er liebt das Geld,	He loves money.
Ich ehre die Wahrheit,	I honour the truth.
Ich schätze die Wissenschaften,	I value knowledge.
Ich schreibe einen Brief,	I am writing a letter.
Ich habe ihn länger als zwei Jahre gekannt,	I have known him longer than two years.
Fürchte Gott, und ehre den König,	Fear God, and honour the king.
Liebe deinen Nächsten, als dich selbst,	Love thy neighbour, as thyself.
Es wiegt ein Pfund,	It weighs a pound.
Ich bin vierzig Jahre alt,	I am forty years old.

*Observations.*

1. The verbs heißen, *to call*; nennen, *to name*; lehren, *to teach*; fragen, *to ask*; schelten, *to abuse*; schimpfen, *to call names*; and also heißen, when it signifies *to call*, govern two accusatives; as,

Ich nenne ihn meinen Vater.	I call him my father.
Herr! lehre mich deine Wege.	Lord! teach me thy ways.
Er fragt mich etwas,	He asks me something.
Er schimpft, or er schilt mich einen Narren.	He calls me a fool.
Er hieß mich seinen besten Freund,	He calls me his best friend.

2. When the dative and accusative are used in the same sentence, the dative is generally placed before the accusative; as,

Ich schreibe dir einen Brief,	I am writing a letter to you.
Ich schneide ihm eine Feder,	I am making a pen for him.

*Exercise.*

I have seen the father in his room. He has lost a sum of money. I know the good appetite of that man. You instruct an idle boy. He teaches me the German language. Cain killed his brother Abel. I have tired myself with walking. He has been travelling three years. I have taught you commandments and judgments. I have purchased that house for ten thousand dollars. I call him a hero. He calls him a cheat. I pray thee, hear my speeches. I know him by his speech. He asked him this question.

Room, *Zimmer, n.* To instruct, *unterrichten.* Idle, *faul.* German language, *deutsche Sprache.* To kill, or to slay, *erschlagen.* Abel, *Abel.* Tired, *müde.* Travelling, *reisen.* Commandment, *Gebot, n.* Hero,  *Held, m.* Cheat, *Betrug, m.* To pray, *bitten.* Speech, *Rede, f.*

*Obs.* Many reflexive and impersonal verbs govern the accusative ; as,

<i>Ich schäme mich,</i>	I am ashamed.
<i>Ich erinnere mich,</i>	I remember.
<i>Ich besinne mich,</i>	I recollect myself.
<i>Es gereuet mich,</i>	I repent of it.
<i>Es freuet mich,</i>	I am glad of it.
<i>Es verbrieft mich,</i>	I am vexed at it.
<i>Es befremdet mich,</i>	I am struck with that.
<i>Es wundert mich,</i>	I wonder at it.
<i>Es friert mich,</i>	I am cold.
<i>Es hungert mich,</i>	I am hungry.
<i>Es geschieht sich,</i>	It happens.

---

## Moods and Tenses of Verbs.

The indicative mood simply declares a thing, or is used in asking questions.

## PRESENT TENSE, INDICATIVE MOOD.

The present tense expresses that a thing *is*, or that something *is doing*, at the time in which we speak, and may be Englished in three different ways; as, *Ich schreibe, I write, I do write, or I am writing.* To express themselves emphatically, the Germans put *ja, indeed*, after a verb; as, *Ich werde ja mit ihm davon sprechen, I shall indeed speak with him on the subject.*

*Observations.*

1. The present expresses that which *is* continued; as,

Gott ist ewig,	God is eternal.
Die Seele ist unsterblich,	The soul is immortal.

2. The continued state of a subject; as,

Ich bin zehn Jahre in diesem Lande,	I <i>am (have)</i> been ten years in this country.
-------------------------------------	--

This sentence implies that I have remained and still continue to remain in this country. If we say,

Ich bin zehn Jahre in Paris gewesen,	I have been ten years in Paris.
--------------------------------------	---------------------------------

This means, that I have been, and am there no longer.

3. The present is used for the future, when it denotes that an event will soon take place; as,

Ich reise in einer Stunde ab,	I <i>shall</i> set out in an hour.
Ich reise morgen ab,	I <i>shall</i> set out to-morrow.

Sometimes also the present is substituted for the imperfect, in relating historical events, or to give strength in animated or lively descriptions.

*Exercise.*

A good father loves his children. I am writing to (*Mr.*) your brother. Are you writing to him now? I am reading that book with infinite pleasure. I spend the winter in town, and the summer in the country. I have lived here already twenty years.

Now, jetzt. Lesen, to read. Infinite, unendlichen. Pleasure, Vergnügen. Spend, bringe zu. Have lived, wohne.

## IMPERFECT TENSE.

The imperfect tense is used,

1st. To denote that an action had commenced, and was going on, either in a definitely or an indefinitely past time; as,

Ich war gestern da.	I was there yesterday.
Ich schrieb gestern, als Ihr Bruder ankam.	I was writing yesterday when your brother arrived.
Ich kannte ihn nicht.	I did not know him.
Ich schrieb gestern einen Brief.	I wrote a letter yesterday.
Heinrich VI. war ein guter Fürst, er hatte schöne Eigenschaften, er liebte sein Volk sehr.	Henry VI. was a good prince, he had noble qualities, and loved his people very much.

## Observations.

1st. The imperfect of the German may be Englished three different ways; as, *Ich liebte*, I loved, I did love, I was loving.

2nd. The Germans often use the perfect, when in English we use the imperfect; as,

Ich habe den König ungefähr vor vierzehn Tagen gesehen.	I saw the king about a fortnight ago.
Ich bin gestern am Schreiben eines Briefes gewesen.	I was beginning to, or about writing a letter yesterday; (literally, I am yesterday at the writing of a letter been).

The Germans can, in many instances, use either the imperfect or perfect; as,

Schrieben Sie einen Brief gestern? or, Haben Sie gestern einen Brief geschrieben? did you write a letter yesterday? or were you writing a letter yesterday?

## Exercise.

I was writing when your brother came or arrived. I was eating when he came. Did you not know it? When we arrived here we sent back our servant. I went there yesterday.

To come or arrive, *ankommen*. To eat, *essen*. To come, *kommen*. To know, *wissen*. To send back, *zurückschicken*. Servant, *Bediente*. To go, *gehen*.

## PERFECT TENSE.

The perfect tense is used to represent either an indefinitely, or a definitely past time; as,

*1st Indefinitely Past.*

Sch habe den König gesehen. I have seen the king.  
Habt ihr eure Section auf- Have you said your lesson?  
gesagt?

*2nd Definitely Past.*

Sch habe diesen Morgen, I have written to your sister  
diese Woche, dieses Jahr this morning, this week,  
an ihre Jungfer Schwester this year.  
geschrieben.  
Sch habe gestern einen Brief I wrote a letter yesterday.  
geschrieben.  
Sch bin gestern dahin ge- I went there yesterday.  
gangen.

*Exercise.*

Have you written your exercise? I have not seen it.  
A boy has, or is fallen into the water. I saw him, or have  
seen him. I have been writing all day, and am fatigued.  
He died twelve months ago.

Exercise, (*Exercitium*, n., or *Übung*, ff. *All*, den *gangen*. *Fa-*  
*tigued*, müde. Twelve months ago, vor einem Jahre.

## PLUPERFECT.

The pluperfect tense denotes that an action or event happened, and was past, before another action or event, which is also past; as,

Sch hatte einen Brief ge- I had written a letter before  
schrieben, ehe Sie ankamen. you arrived.  
Wir reiseten ab so bald wir We set out as soon as we  
den König gesehen hatten. had seen the king.



*Exercise.*

I had eaten when your father came. When I was in the country, I had often dined before one o'clock. When I received your letter, I had already sent mine.

Country, Land, *n.* Before, vor. Dined, zu Mittag gespeiset. Received, erhielt. Already, schon. Sent, abgeschickt.

## FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

This tense denotes that an action or event will take place, whether the time be specified or not; as,

Ich werde nicht viel zu thun haben. I shall not have much to do.

Sie wird Sie wieder sehen. She will see you again.

Wenn es morgen schönes Wetter ist, so werde ich nach Frankreich reisen. If it should be a fine morning, I shall set out for France.

*Exercise.*

I shall soon go into the country. We shall be obliged to him. I do not know yet, when I shall set out. I should like to know whether it will be fine this evening.

Soon, bald. Obligated, verbunden. Yet, noch. Set out, abreisen. Should like to know, möchte gern wissen. Whether, ob.

## THE SECOND FUTURE.

This tense denotes that an action or event will have taken place and be past, before another takes place; as,

Ich werde ihn gesehen haben, I shall have seen him, before  
ehe ich Sie wieder sehen. I see you again.

*Exercise.*

I believe I shall have read this volume before your departure. You will have had your supper before he sees you again.

To believe, glauben. Volume, Band, *n.* Before, vor. Departure, Abreise. Read, gelesen. Supper, Abendessen. Before, ehe.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The subjunctive mood is used when doubt, or uncertainty is implied.

*Examples.*

Ich glaubte daß er todt sey,	I thought he was dead.
Ich wünsche daß er komme,	I wish he may come.
Er spricht, als wenn die Sache schon gewiß wäre,	He speaks as if the thing were true already.
Wenn du mir diese Freundschaft erzeugen könntest,	If you could show me this friendship.
Er glaubt es sey nicht möglich,	He thinks it is not possible.
Wenn ich an Ihrer Stelle wäre,	If I were in your place.
Wenn er reich wäre (so) würde er nicht betteln,	If he were rich, he would not beg.
Wäre er reich, er würde nicht betteln,	Were he rich, he would not beg.
Hätte ich Bücher, so würde ich lernen,	Had I books, I would learn.

*Exercise.*

I wish he may find friends. He asked me whether I was sick. I hope he may be happy. I do not know whether that might have happened. If I were rich I would do it. They say that the king has made peace. We believe that he might have had it. I should have thought he had been more polite.

To ask, fragen. To hope, hoffen. To know, wissen. Might have happened, geschehen möchte. They say, man sagt. Peace, Friede, *m.* To believe, glauben. To think, glauben. Polite, höflich.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## RULE I.

1. *Zu, to*, is generally placed before the infinitive.\*

\* The words *um zu, in order to*, are sometimes separated.

2. The infinitive without *zu*, follows after the verbs,

Bleiben, to continue.	Liegen, to lie.
Finden, to find.	Lehren, to teach.
Fahren and gehen, to go.	Lernen, to learn.
Heißen, to bid.	Nennen, to call.
Helfen, to help.	Reiten, to ride.
Hören, to hear.	Sehen, to see.
Thun, to do ( <i>with</i> ) nichts als, nothing but.	

Also *zu* is omitted both before and after können, mögen, lassen, dürfen, sollen, wollen, müssen, haben, helfen, heißen, hören, werden.

*Obs.* *Zu* is *not* put before the infinitive of verbs used substantively. *Ex.* Versprechen und Erfüllen sind zwei verschiedene Sachen, to promise and to fulfil are two different things.

*Examples with zu.*

Ich war froh meinen Freund wieder zu sehen,	I was happy to see my friend again.
Lieben Sie die Tugend, um glücklich zu seyn,	Love virtue in order to be happy.
Ich bitte Sie davon zu nehmen,	I request you to take some.
Ich erühne mich, Ihnen meine Aufwartung zu machen,	I make bold to wait upon you.
Er ging, um sein Geld zu bekommen,	He went in order to get his money.

*Examples without zu.*

Der Vater lehrt das Kind lesen,	the father teaches the child to read.
Ich höre ihn reden,	I hear him talking.
Er heißt mich gehen,	he bids me go.
Sie macht mich lachen,	she makes me laugh.
Ich habe ihn reiten sehen,	I saw him riding.
Ich sehe ihn kommen,	I see him coming.
Ich darf sagen,	I dare say.
Ich kann sagen,	I can say.
Ich laß ihn gehen,	I let him go.
Ich will kommen,	I will come.

*Examples for Exercise, with zu.*

I wish to speak to you. I hope to find him. I wish to see you. He did all he could, in order to ruin me. I came hither to speak to you. I have something to tell you. Give me something to eat and drink.

*Examples for Exercise, without zu.*

He learns to dance and ride. I will teach you to do good. He will not work. We saw him go. I heard them sing. He helps me to write. He helped me to defend my rights.

---

 RULE II.

The verbs dürfen, hören, helfen, lassen, heißen, können, mögen, müssen, wollen, sollen, werden, sehen, are put in the infinitive, after another infinitive, instead of the participle.

*Examples.*

Er hat es sagen dürfen, (nicht He has dared to say so (it.)  
 gedurft),  
 Ich habe ihn arbeiten helfen I have helped him to work.  
 (nicht geholfen,)  
 Ich habe sie sprechen hören, I have heard them speak.  
 (nicht gehört).  
 Sie hätte es thun mögen, She might have done it.  
 (nicht gemocht).  
 Du hättest es kaufen sollen, Thou shouldst have bought  
 (nicht gesollt). it.  
 Ich habe es nicht glauben I could not have believed it.  
 können (nicht gekonnt).

*Obs.* The participles of lehren and lernen, are generally used instead of infinitives; as,

Wer hat Sie Französisch Who taught you to speak  
 sprechen gelehrt? French?  
 Bei wem haben Sie reiten Of whom did you learn  
 gelernt? riding?

However Rabener says ;

*Ich habe ihn kennen lernen, I have learnt to know him.  
(instead of gelernt).*

### *Exercises.*

I have seen him ride. He could have done it. Who has bid you come? Have you heard me speak? I must have done it. I have left my compliments. He has bid him go. Of whom did you learn dancing? Who taught you to write? I have taught her to know.

### *Observations on the Moods, &c.*

*Obs. 1. I am, before an infinitive active, must not be expressed by ich bin &c.; but ich werde, ich muß, ich soll &c. according to the nature of the sentence.*

### *Examples.*

<i>Ich werde aufs Land gehen,</i>	<i>I am to go into the country.</i>
<i>Ich muß ihn wissen lassen,</i>	<i>I am to let him know.</i>
<i>Was muß ich bezahlen?</i>	<i>What am I to pay?</i>
<i>Wenn wir darnach beurtheilt werden sollten,</i>	<i>If we were to be judged by that.</i>
<i>Was soll ich thun?</i>	<i>What am I to do?</i>

*Obs. 2. The subjunctive is sometimes used for the participle, and the verb sollen for the infinitive.*

### *Examples.*

<i>Ich bin zufrieden daß er mich in Thalern bezahle.</i>	<i>I am satisfied with his paying me in dollars.</i>
<i>Ich weiß nicht was ich thun soll.</i>	<i>I do not know what to do.</i>

*Obs. 3. Haben, sitzen, liegen, stehen und geben, are sometimes Englished by to be.*

### *Examples.*

<i>Da haben Sie es,</i>	<i>There it is.</i>
<i>*Sie haben Recht,</i>	<i>You are right.</i>
<i>*Er hat Unrecht,</i>	<i>He is wrong.</i>

---

\* *Sie haben Recht, is similar to the French vous avez raison. Er hat Unrecht, il a tort.*

Es liegt auf dem Tische,	It is upon the table.
Es steht unter dem Tische,	It is under the table.
Der Dorn sitzt in meinem Finger,	The thorn is in my finger.
Es giebt Männer,	There are men.

RULES relating to passive, neuter, compound, reflective and impersonal verbs.

## Passive Verbs.

### RULE I.

Passive verbs are formed by *werden*, in the simple tenses, and in the compound tenses by *seyn* and *werden*, or the participle *worden*.

#### Examples.

Ich werde von meinen Freunden gelobt,	I am praised by my friends.
Man wird geachtet,	People, they &c. are es- teemed.
Ich bin von Ihnen gerettet worden,	I have been saved by you.
Wurden sie von uns ange- klagt?	Were they accused by us?
Er wurde von mir gelobt,	He was praised by me.
Sie war von uns geliebt worden,	She had been loved by us.
Wir werden von ihnen nicht gelobt,	We are not praised by them.
Ich werde gewarnt werden,	I shall be admonished.
Ich werde von ihm bedauert worden seyn,	I shall have been pitied by him.

#### Exercise.

He is called an honest man by every body. Books are written by us. I had been prevented by them. Disobe-

dient children will be punished by their parents. I should have been laughed at by you. Shall I not have been pitied by him?

Honest, ehrlicher. To prevent, verhindern. Disobedient, ungehorsam. To punish, strafen. To laugh at, auslachen.

#### RULE II.

Passives may be changed into actives, and actives into passives, without altering the meaning of a sentence.

#### *Examples.*

*Pass.* Mein Bruder wird gelobt, My brother is praised.

*Act.* Die Leute loben meinen Bruder, The people praise my brother.

*Pass.* Ich werde gelobt von Jedermann, I am praised by every body.

*Act.* Jedermann lobt mich, Every body praises me.

*Observe.* In order to know whether the verb *to be*, must be expressed by *werden*, or *seyn*, the distinction is this: if the sentence can be changed into the active form, as in the above examples, *werden* must be used, if not, *seyn* must be used.

#### *Examples with Seyn.*

Gott sey gelobt,  
Er ist verarmt,

God be praised.  
He is impoverished.

#### RULE III.

The passive is used in speaking of things done by the assistance of man, and the active in expressing the operations of inanimate objects.

EXAMPLES.

*Passive.*

The coat is making.  
Der Rock wird gemacht.  
The ship is building.  
Das Schiff wird gebaut.

*Active.*

The fire is burning.  
Das Feuer brennt.  
The sun is rising.  
Die Sonne geht auf.

EXERCISE.

*Passive with werden.*

The house was repairing.  
The mill is building.  
The table is making.  
Is my coat making?  
Many ships are building.  
The pies are making.  
The bread is baking.  
The wood is cutting.  
The trees are hewing.  
The house is cleaning.  
The houses were repairing.  
Are the bills making out?  
Were the roads mending?  
Was his knife grinding?

*Active.*

The fire is lighting.  
The candle is burning.  
The pot is boiling.  
Is the pot boiling?  
Was the fire burning?  
The sun was rising.  
The water was running away.  
The house was falling down.  
The horse was running away.  
The flowers are growing fast.  
Things are altering very much.  
The fire was raging.  
The ice is melting.

To repair, *ausbessern*. Mill, *Mühle, f.* To build, *bauen*. Coat, *Rock, m.* Many, *viele*. Ship, *Schiff, n.* Pie, *Pastete, f.* To bake, *backen*. Wood, *Holz, n.* To cut, *schneiden*. Tree, *Baum, m.* To hew, *hauen*. To clean, *reinigen*. To repair, or to mend, *ausbessern*. Bill, *Rechnung, f.* Making out, *ausmachen*. Road, *Weg, m.* To grind, *schleifen*. To light, *anzünden*. To boil, *sieden*. Pot, *Topf, m.* To boil, *kochen*. Fire, *Feuer, n.* To burn, *brennen*. Sun, *Sonne, f.* To rise, *aufgehen*. To run away, *weglaufen*. To fall down, *niederstürzen*. Flower, *Blume, f.* Grow, *wachsen*. Fast, *geschwind*. Thing, *Sache, f.* To alter, *sich ändern*. Fire, *Feuer, m.* To rage, *wüthen*. Ice, *Eis, n.* To melt, *schmelzen*.

## Neuter Verbs.

Whenever neuter verbs are employed actively, they are conjugated with *haben*, instead of *seyn*. [V. Obs. page 169.]



The following verbs take *haben* and *seyn*, according to the nature of the sentences in which they are used. *Ausbrennen*, to burn out; *aüßdampfen*, to exhale, or evaporate; *bringen*, to crowd; *eilen*, to hasten; *fortfahren*, to drive on; *flattern*, to flutter; *fließen*, to flow; *frieren*, to freeze; *folgen*, to follow; *bekommen*, to get; *plaken*, to crack; *reiten*, to ride; *schlagen*, to strike; *aüßschlagen*, to kick; *zurückschlagen*, to repulse; *segeln*, to sail; *schwimmen*, to swim.

*Examples with Seyn.*

The water is frozen,  
*Das Wasser ist gefroren.*  
 The whole city is consumed,  
*Die ganze Stadt ist abgebrannt.*  
 I rode to London,  
*Ich bin nach London geritten.*  
 I followed him (*his person*),  
*Ich bin ihm nachgefolgt.*

*Examples with Haben.*

It has frozen,  
*Es hat gefroren.*  
 The fire is (*or has*) burnt out.  
*Das Feuer hat ausgebrannt.*  
 I have tired myself with riding.  
*Ich habe mich müde geritten.*  
 I followed him (*his advice*),  
*Ich habe ihm gefolgt.*

*Exercise with Seyn.*

The moisture is exhaled.  
 The ship has sailed to America.  
 I am in haste.  
 It fluttered in the net.  
 I rode to Bremen.

*Exercise with Haben.*

The coal has evaporated.  
 The ship sailed fast.  
 I have hastened my journey.  
 The bird has fluttered a long time.  
 I have ridden three days.

Moisture, *Feuchtigkeit, f.* Ship, *Schiff, n.* Net, *Netz, n.*  
 Coal, *Kohle, f.* Journey, *Reise, f.*

## Compound Verbs.

### RULE.

The separable particles are placed at the end of the sentence, in the present and imperfect tenses, and im-

perative mood ; unless the sentence be influenced by a relative pronoun, or a conjunction, in which instance the verb is placed at the end of the sentence, with the particle prefixed to it.

*In the following Examples the Particles are separated from the Verbs.*

## PRESENT.

Ich bereite mich vor,	I prepare.
Ich stehe alle Tage um fünf Uhr des Morgens auf,	I rise every day at five o'clock in the morning.
Ich schreibe alle meine Briefe ab,	I copy all my letters.

## IMPERFECT.

Sie hielten mich zu lang auf,	They detained me too long.
Wir standen um zwei Uhr vom Tische auf,	We rose from table at two o'clock.

## IMPERATIVE.

Setzen Sie Ihre Erzählung fort,	Continue your narrative.
Nehmen Sie mir die Last ab,	Take the burden from me.

*In the following Examples the Particles are joined with the Verb..*

Sie glauben nicht, daß ich alle meine Briefe abschreibe,	They do not believe that I copy all my letters.
Wenn ich nicht wegginge,	If I did not go away.
Der Brief des Fürsten, welchen ich gestern abschrieb,	The prince's letter, which I copied yesterday.

*Exercise.*

I am beginning the book again. I copied the prince's letters with great care. Go thither, along with thy bro-

ther. He prepared for a long journey. Copy the letters this evening. We came back to London, in a coach, within three days. We communicated the information to our friends. If the sun break through the clouds. Do you not believe that I copy all his letters?

To begin, anfangen. To copy, abschreiben. Care, Sorgfalt, f. Thither, dorthin. To go along with, mitgehen. To come back, zurückkommen. To communicate, mittheilen. To break through, durchbrechen.

### Observations.

1. *zu* in the infinitive, and *ge* in the participle, are placed between the separable particle and the verb.

### Examples.

<i>Ich verlange auszugehen,</i>	<i>I desire to go out.</i>
<i>Meinen Sie ihm nachzufolgen?</i>	<i>Do you mean to follow him?</i>
<i>Er hat seine Reise aufgeschoben,</i>	<i>He has deferred his voyage.</i>

2. When verbs are compounded with inseparable particles, the *ge* and *zu* are not placed between the particle and verb.

### Examples.

<i>Ich habe seine Verzeihung erhalten,</i>	<i>I have obtained his pardon.</i>
<i>(not <i>erhaltenen</i>.)</i>	
<i>Ich habe ihm viel zu danken,</i>	<i>I have much to thank him for.</i>
<i>(not <i>verdankten</i>.)</i>	

3. When a compound verb is followed by another verb, the separable particle is put before the second verb.

### Examples.

<i>Sie fingen früh Morgens mit Sonnen Aufgang an zu schlagen,</i>	<i>They began to fight early in the morning, at the rising of the sun.</i>
<i>(not <i>zu schlagen an</i>.)</i>	
<i>Ich fing nach dreien Tagen wieder an zu genesen,</i>	<i>After three days I began to recover.</i>
<i>(not <i>zu genesen an</i>.)</i>	

4. Some verbs compounded with *miß*, admit *ge* before the particle, and others leave it out, or take it after the *miß*; as,

<i>Wir haben gemißbilliget,</i>	<i>We have disapproved.</i>
<i>Er hat sie mißhandelt,</i>	<i>He has ill-treated her.</i>

## Reflective Verbs.

1. Those verbs which are called reflective, have the pronouns *mich*, *dich*, &c. immediately after them in the simple tenses; and immediately after the auxiliary verb in the compound tenses.

### Examples.

Ich tröste mich und er wird sich trösten,	I comfort <i>myself</i> , and he will comfort <i>himself</i> .
Er tröstet sich mit leerer Hoffnung,	He comforts himself with vain hope.
Er hat sich mit leerer Hoff- nung getröstet,	He has consoled himself with vain hope.

2. "Those verbs, by which we express things that happen of themselves, or inward actions of the mind, are always reflective."

### Examples.

The wind changes ( <i>itself</i> ),	I remember ( <i>myself</i> ),
Der Wind ändert sich.	Ich erinnere mich.
The day declines ( <i>itself</i> ),	I recollect ( <i>myself</i> ),
Der Tag neiget sich,	Ich beginne mich.

For other particulars respecting these verbs, see the observations, which follow the conjugation and exercise, p. 197.

## Impersonal Verbs.

An impersonal verb is that whose agent, or nominative, is unknown, or considered as such; this unknown agent is expressed in English, by the word *it*, and in German, by *es*.

## RULE I.

The impersonal form is used to denote the affections of the body or mind ; as,

*Examples.*

Es ist mir kalt,	I am cold.
Es ist mir wohl,	I am well.
Es hungert mich, dich, ihn, sie, uns, &c.	I am, thou art, he is, she is, we are hungry.
Es dünkt mir,	} It seems, or appears to me.
Es kommt mir vor,	
Es schläfert ihn,	He is sleepy.
Es verdrießt, or es ärgert sie,	It vexes her, or them.
Es glüht, siedet, flammt mir im Busen,	It glows, boils, burns in my bosom, or my bosom glows

*Exercise.*

I am sorry (*for it.*) I am warm. You are thirsty. I am disgusted. I am ill. It pleases me, or I am glad of it. I want money. I repent. It surprises me. It grieves me.

## RULE II.

Es, *it*, is also used for *there*, before *seyn*, *geben*, and *liegen*.

*Examples.*

Es giebt Leute, welche sa- gen,	There are people who say.
Es tont, schallt, kracht in der Luft,	It sounds, resounds, cracks in the air.
Gott ist es, dem wir unser Leben schuldig sind,	It is to God we owe our life.

Es liegen Bücher auf dem Tische, There are some books upon the table.  
 Es rauscht, saust, weht, tobt, It roars, whistles, blows, rages, lightens round me.  
 leuchtet um mich her,

*Obs. 1.* Es is sometimes used for *so*, which is often omitted in English; as, Ich glaube es, I believe *so*. Sind Sie zufrieden, Are you contented? Nein, ich bin es nicht, No, I am not (*so*.)

2. In answer to questions, instead of saying, es ist mir, *it is I*; say, ich bin es, I am *it*; so, er ist es nicht, it is not he, (*he is not it*); Sie sind es nicht, it is not they (*they are not it*.)

3. Es is sometimes used before the verb, and the real nominative is placed after, by way of explanation. Ex. Es lehrt uns die Erfahrung, experience teaches us.

## RULE III.

The indefinite pronoun *man*, is Englished by *we, people, they, men, one, and it*, followed by *is, was, &c.*

*Observe.* *Man* is used as *on* in French.

*Examples.*

Man muß wissen,	We ought to know.
Man arbeitet den ganzen Tag,	People, they, &c. work the whole day.
Man sagt, daß man in diesem Lande Wein verkauft,	It is said that in this country wine is sold.
Man trinkt den besten Wein,	One drinks the best wine.
Man sagt, (on dit,)	People say, they say, men say, it is said, &c.

## Participles.

### RULE I.

The present and perfect participles, like adjectives, must agree with the nouns to which they refer, in gender, number, and case; unless used adverbially.

### Examples.

Ein liebender Vater,	A loving father.
Ein geliebter Vater,	A beloved father.
Der liebende Vater,	The loving father.
Der geliebte Vater,	The beloved father.
Ein reizendes Frauenzim- mer,	A charming lady.
Das reizende Frauenzim- mer,	The charming lady.
Eine reizende Frau,	A charming woman.
Die reizende Frau,	The charming woman.
Der blendend weiße Schnee,	The dazzling white snow.
Die Frau ist reizend,	The woman is charming.
Das Frauenzimmer ist rei- zend,	That lady is charming.

### Exercise.

The complaining man. A written book. A beloved child. He died standing. The man was dying. A playful child. A laughing woman. A beloved daughter. He spoke sitting. The man is dead.

---

### RULE II.

The present participle in English, is generally rendered by the infinitive in German, particularly when used as a substantive.

*Obs.* When ohne zu, without, is used, ohne retains its place, and zu goes immediately before the verb.

*Examples.*

Das Laufen des Wassers,	The running of the water.
Er brachte eine Stunde mit Erzählen zu,	He spent an hour in relating it.
Er ging ohne etwas zu sagen vorbei,	He passed by without saying any thing.
Das Reisen ist nützlich,	Travelling is useful.

*Observe.* When the present participle in English has no government, it is rendered by the present participle in German. Ex. Sie verließ das Zimmer singend, she left the room singing.

*Exercise.*

Boys are more fond of playing than working. He gets his living by begging. I am tired of standing. I come from writing. At the rising of the sun. It is the boiling of the pot. I am weary of talking.

---

More fond, mehr lieben. Playing, spielen. Working, arbeiten. To get, verdienen. Living, Brod. By begging, mit Betteln. Tired, müde. To rise, aufgehen. Boiling, Kochen. Pot, Topf, *m.* Weary, müde. Talking, Reden, *n.*

*Rule for placing the Participle, or Infinitive.*

In simple sentences, either past participles, or infinitives, always occupy the last place; in compound sentences it may be otherwise, i. e. when relative pronouns, conjunctions, or adverbs are used.

*Examples.*

Ich habe einen Brief geschrieben,	I have written a letter.
Ich werde einen Brief schreiben,	I shall write a letter.



Haben Sie das Buch gelesen, welches ich Ihnen schickte? Have you *read* the book, which I *sent* you?

Wer sein Leben erhalten will, der wird es verlieren. *Whoever will preserve his life, shall lose it.*

Nachdem er diese Worte gesagt hatte, ging er weg. *After he had said these words, he went away.*

Die Frauensperson, welche Sie gesehen haben, ist weggegangen. The woman *whom* you *have* seen, is gone away.

Der Ort, wo ich gewesen bin, ist schön. The place *where* I *have* been is beautiful.

Er fragt mich, wer diesen Morgen bei Ihnen war. He asks me, *who was* with you this morning?

Wenn er das Buch lesen will, *If he will* read that book.

Da der König in London ankam, *When the king arrived* in London.

Da ich den Mann, welcher so edel gedacht, ehre und liebe, *Since I honour and love* the man who has thought so nobly.

*Observe.* If a past participle and infinitive come together in a sentence, the infinitive must be last. Ex. Ich werde meine Arbeit in einer Stunde gethan haben, I shall *have done* my work in an hour.

### Exercise.

Has he *written* a letter? I will go to see, or *visit* my friend. I did *come* home very late yesterday. I will *sell* my books. He wishes *to learn* the Latin language accurately. This man can *speak* English, German, French, and several other languages of Europe. The place in which (*where*) I *saw* my friend to-day. That writer is to be esteemed, who *has* the promotion of virtue for his object. I am sorry that he *is* ill. He *has done* his duty, therefore I cannot *complain* of him. The man who is (*here*) in London. The woman who *was* (*here*) in London. I believe that he *was* my friend. When it *is* time, I will *come*.

To visit, besuchen. Late, spät. To sell, verkaufen. To wish, wünschen. Accurately, gründlich. To, zu. Several, verschiedene. To speak, reden. If, wenn. Place, Ort, *m.* In which, wo. Writer, Schriftsteller, *m.* To be esteemed, zu schätzen. Promotion, Beförderung, *f.* For his object, zu seinem Zwecke. I am sorry, es ist mir leid. Duty, Schulpfigkeit. To complain, sich beklagen.

### Observations.

1. The present participle is sometimes rendered by *als*, *da*, *und*, *nachdem*, *indem*, *weil*, &c. according to the meaning of the sentence.

### Examples.

Als ich zu Nacht gegessen hatte legte ich mich schlafen,	<i>Having</i> supped, I laid myself down to sleep, <i>or</i> when I had supped, &c.
Da seine Mutter dieses hörte, wurde sie ungehalten,	His mother <i>hearing</i> this, be- came angry.
Nachdem ich die Sache überlegt habe, oder hatte.	<i>Having</i> considered the matter.
Indem ich mich auf sein Wort verließ wurde ich betrogen,	<i>Relying</i> upon his word, I was deceived.
Wie ich aus der Straße ging sah ich meinen Freund,	As I <i>was going</i> along the street I saw my friend.
Er lächelte, und schien meinen Entschluß zu billigen,	He smiled, <i>seeming</i> to applaud my resolution.
Nach Erblickung einer Windmüh- le, die stille stand,	Upon the sight of a windmill <i>standing</i> still, ( <i>which stood</i> <i>still</i> ).
Weil er ihnen nicht anstand, so wurde er verworfen,	<i>Being</i> disliked by them, he was rejected.

2. Reflective verbs are sometimes expressed by the perfect participle; as,

Ich habe mich müde gegangen, I have wearied myself by walking.

3. There are some instances in which the Germans use the present participle; as,

Lebend oder sterbend gab er ein gutes Beispiel,	<i>Living</i> or <i>dying</i> , he set a good example.
Er fiel nieder lebend,	He dropped down <i>speaking</i> .

4. The participle *going* is rendered in the following manner.

Ich bin im Begriff zu verreisen. I am going to depart.  
 Ich bin im Begriff nach Hause zu gehen, I am going home.

---

## Adverbs, Nebensätze.

*Rules for placing of Adverbs.*

### RULE I.

Adverbs are placed immediately after the verb, unless the object intervenes; but they must precede past participles and infinitives.

### Examples.

Er kam bald,	He came soon.
Das Kind, welches in der Wiege lag, weinte bitterlich,	The child that lay in the cradle wept bitterly.
Wir haben hier keine Bekanntschaft,	We have no acquaintance here.
Er behandelt den Gegenstand vortrefflich,	He treats the subject excellently.
Ich habe meinen Bruder abermal, or wieder gewarnt,	I have warned my brother again.
Käme ich zu früh, so würde mir die Zeit lang,	Had I come too soon, the time would have appeared long to me.
Ich werde bald meine Schulden bezahlen,	I shall soon pay my debts.

### Exercise.

He goes fast. When I run fast I perspire. If he came soon. Have you spoken well? You will hardly finish to-

morrow? He has spoken wisely. Did you speak freely? Have you put the hats *separately*? I have heard your friend well spoken of.

---

RULE II.

Adverbs of time are placed before all other adverbs; and when a sentence commences with an adverb, for the sake of emphasis, then the nominative follows the verb.

*Examples.*

Sie haben heute nicht studirt,	You have not studied to-day
Wir waren gestern im Schauspiel,	We were at the play yesterday.
Gestern saß ich auf einer Bank beim Mondlichte,	Yesterday I was sitting on a bench by moonlight.
Er wird morgen hier seyn,	He will be here to-morrow.

*Exercise.*

I was with him yesterday in the evening. I have read the book to-day. I did not sleep there last night. He has not seen the king to-day. I have not yet seen him to-day.

---

**Prepositions. Vornörter.**

RULE I.

The prepositions *anstatt*, or *statt*, instead of; *halben*, or *halber*, on account of; *wegen*, on account of, because of; *ungeachtet*, notwithstanding, &c. require the genitive; [*V. Prep.* p. 212.] *Halben* or *halber*, is placed after the noun; but *wegen*, and *ungeachtet*, may be used either before or after. *An* is sometimes separated from *statt*.

*Examples.*

An* des Fürsten statt (or anstatt des Fürsten) war ein Minister da,	A minister was there instead of the prince.
An meiner statt, or anstatt meiner,	In my stead, or instead of me.
Des Königs halber,	For the sake of the king, or on account of the king.
† Vergnügens halber,	On account of (or for the sake of) pleasure.
Wegen des Nachbars, or des Nachbars wegen,	On account of the neighbour
Des langen Prozesses hal- ben ist der Mann verarmt,	The man was impoverished by, or on account of, the long trial.

*Exercise.*

Instead of the brother. In his stead, or instead of him. Notwithstanding his art, he was (*however*) overreached. I do it only for the sake of the company. He does it out of friendship. Instead of my friend. I love him, notwithstanding his ugliness. On account of his industry.

~~~~~

Art, Geschicklichkeit, *f.* Overreach, übertreffen. I do it only, Ich thue es bloß. Company, Gesellschaft, *f.* Ugliness, Hässlichkeit, *f.* Industry, Fleiß, *m.*

*Obs.* Halben and wegen may be united with mein, dein, sein, ihr, unser, euer, thus; meinet=wegen, or halben, instead of meiner=wegen, &c. Ex. Er that es meinet=halben, deinet=, seinet=, ihret=, unsert=, euret=wegen, or halben, he did it on *my, thy, his, her, our, your*, account.

---

\* When a preposition comes first, the nominative follows the verb.

† Halben is used when the article is omitted.

## RULE II.

The prepositions *aus*, *außer*, *bei*, &c. have the dative after them. [*Vide Prep.* p. 213.] *Entgegen*, *zunächst*, and *zumiber*, always follow the substantive, and *nach*, likewise may, when it signifies *according to*.

*Examples.*

*Aus*, *außer*, *out of*, &c.

|                                            |                                        |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Ich sehe aus seinem Briefe,                | I see <i>by</i> his letter.            |
| Ich schließe aus seinem Be-<br>zeigen,     | I infer <i>from</i> his conduct.       |
| Sie kamen aus der Kirche,                  | They came <i>out of</i> the<br>church. |
| Er speisete außer dem Hause<br>zu Mittage, | He dined <i>out of</i> the house.      |
| Er ist aus einer alten Fa-<br>milie,       | He is <i>of</i> an ancient family.     |

*Bei.*

|                              |                                          |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Er ist bei meinem Bruder,    | He is <i>with</i> my brother.            |
| Ich will bei ihm ansprechen, | I will call <i>upon</i> him.             |
| Es ist bei dem Schneider,    | It is <i>at</i> the tailor's.            |
| Sie stand bei mir,           | She stood <i>by</i> , or <i>near</i> me. |

*Entgegen.*

|                                             |                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| Er reitet dem Winde entge-<br>gen,          | He rides <i>against</i> the wind.                     |
| Dieses ist der Natur der<br>Dinge entgegen, | This is <i>contrary to</i> the na-<br>ture of things. |

*Nach.*

|                                                        |                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| Meiner Meinung nach ist er<br>auf einem falschen Wege, | <i>According to</i> my opinion, he<br>is in a wrong way. |
|--------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|

## Nach.

Dieser Rechnung nach,  
 Nach dieser Rechnung,  
 Ich gehe nach London,  
 Als ich nach Hause ging,

}

*According to this account.*  
*I am going to London.*  
*When I went home.*

## Mit.

Wollen Sie mit mir kommen?  
 Ich habe Mitleiden mit ihm,  
 Er schnitt es mit einem Messer-  
 entzwei,

*Will you come with me?*  
*I take compassion on him.*  
*He cut it in two with a knife.*

## Seit.

Seit dem Tode seines Vaters,

*Since the death of his father.*

## Von.

Er spricht von mir,  
 Sie ist eben von meinen  
 Bruder gekommen,  
 Vom Anfange der Welt,

*He speaks of me.*  
*She is just come from my brother.*  
*From the beginning of the world.*

## Zu, to, &amp;c.

Ich bin zu Hause gewesen,  
 Zu einer andern Zeit,

*I have been at home.*  
*At another time.*

## Zunächst.

Er saß mir zunächst,

*He sat next to me.*

## Zuwider.

Dieses ist den Gesetzen der  
 Natur zuwider,

*This is contrary to the laws of nature.*

## Exercise.

Do not drink out of this glass. I infer from his conduct. He comes out of the garden. I was with my

brother. He sat near me. I thought your friend was with you. Are there *fine walks near the house*? To work by candle-light. By night. My father opposes this design. *If we compare him with his brother.* I have received a letter by the post. Most of us were of the same opinion. *That book treats of the immortality of the soul.* I shall come to you to-night. He was unhappy till the last moment of his life.

---

RULE III.

The prepositions *durch*, *für*, *zu*. have the accusative after them. [*Vide Prep. p. 215.*] *Durch* is sometimes placed after its substantive.

*Examples.*

*Durch, through.*

|                                                                     |                                                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Ich reisete durch gefährliche<br>Wälder,                            | I travelled <i>through</i> dangerous<br>forests.                       |
| Durch ihn bin ich glücklich,                                        | <i>Through</i> him I am happy.                                         |
| Er sieht durch das Fenster,                                         | He looks <i>through</i> the win-<br>dow.                               |
| Ich lag die ganze Nacht durch<br>im Schlafrocke in meinem<br>Bette, | I lay in my bed the whole<br>night <i>through</i> in my<br>night-gown. |

*Für, for.*

|                                                  |                                                             |
|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| Für wen stimmt ihr?                              | For whom are you? or <i>for</i><br><i>whom do you vote?</i> |
| Es ist hier kein Platz für sie,                  | There is no place <i>for</i> them<br>here.                  |
| Er suchte für das allgemeine<br>Beste,           | He sought <i>for</i> the public<br>good.                    |
| Mein Haus ist für Sie und<br>Ihre Freunde offen, | My house is open <i>for</i> you<br>and your friends.        |
| Ich habe ihn für Sie gehalten,                   | I took him <i>for</i> you.                                  |



## Gegen, towards, to, &amp;c.

|                                                                       |                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| Die Franzosen marschirten<br>gegen den Rhein,                         | The French marched to-<br>wards the Rhine.        |
| Sie ist mildthätig gegen die<br>Armen,                                | She is charitable towards the<br>poor.            |
| Es ist gegen die Russen ge-<br>richtet,                               | It is done in opposition to<br>the Russians.      |
| Gottes unendliche Barmher-<br>zigkeit gegen uns hat keine<br>Gränzen, | God's infinite mercy towards<br>us has no limits. |
| Er ist nichts gegen ihn,                                              | He is nothing to him.                             |

In the following sentence *gen* is substituted for *gegen*.

|                                               |                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Er richtete seine Augen <i>gen</i><br>Himmel, | He turned his eyes towards<br>heaven. |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|

## Ohne, without, French sans.

|                                                       |                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| Daß weiß ich ohne dieß,                               | I know it without that.                           |
| Ich kann nicht ohne einen<br>Freund leben,            | I cannot live without a<br>friend.                |
| Er ist ohne Hut ausgegangen,                          | He is gone out without a<br>hat.                  |
| Ich werde ohne Sie nichts<br>thun,                    | I will do nothing without<br>you.                 |
| Es ist ohne Zweifel das Beste<br>was Sie thun können, | It is without doubt the best<br>thing you can do. |

## Um, about, round, &amp;c.

|                                                  |                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| Sie sitzen um den Tisch,                         | They sit about the table.                            |
| Das Schnupftuch war ihr um<br>den Kopf gebunden, | The handkerchief was tied<br>round (about) her head. |
| Ich ging um die Stadt herum<br>spazieren,        | I walked round about the<br>town.                    |
| Um wie viel Uhr?                                 | At what o'clock?                                     |
| Um zwei Uhr,                                     | At two o'clock.                                      |
| Einen Tag um den andern,                         | Every other day.                                     |

|                                   |                                         |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Ich bin den ganzen Tag um<br>ihn, | I am all day <i>with</i> him.           |
| Um das Leben kommen,              | To lose one's life.                     |
| Ich lobe dich um deinen Fleiß,    | I praise you <i>for</i> your diligence. |
| Ich bitte Sie um Verzei-<br>hung, | I beg your pardon.                      |

*Wider, against, contrary to.*

|                                       |                                             |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Wider seine Gewohnheit,               | <i>Contrary to</i> his custom.              |
| Verschwor er sich wider den<br>König? | Did he conspire <i>against</i> the<br>king? |
| Es ist wider Ihre Pflicht,            | It is <i>against</i> your duty.             |

Observe. *Wieder*, the adverb, signifies *again*; as,

|                                            |                                           |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| Hat er nicht wieder an Sie<br>geschrieben? | Did he not write to you<br><i>again</i> ? |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|

*Exercise.*

Athens flourished by (*through*) just laws. I am happy through him. He gained his reputation by his good conduct. All things were created by the word of God. This passage is too obscure for me. He was a learned man for those times, I board for six dollars a week. I have paid ten dollars for it. Do as you would be done by, or do unto others as you would that others should do unto you. You are very kind to me. They marched against the enemy. Four thousand men, besides women and children. There is seldom a week without some feast of this kind. I cannot do it without the consent of my father. It was much about the same time. This picture was sold for five guineas. She sold her house at a very high price. I requested nothing of him but what was just. I am very sorry for you. I shall come again directly.

---

RULE IV.

When motion *to a place* is expressed by the prepositions *an, auf, hinter, &c.* the accusative is required; but if they

express motion, or rest in a place, the dative is used. This distinction may be made intelligible, by asking the question *when? where? or in what place?* then the answer will be in the dative; but if we ask *whereto? or to what place?* the answer will be in the accusative.

*Examples.*

- A. Ich gehe in die Kirche, I am going into the church,  
(*whereto?*) answer, into the church.

In this sentence the accusative is used, because motion towards the object is implied.

- D. Ich gehe in der Kirche herum, I walk about in the church,  
(*where?*) ans. in the church

Here the dative is used, because motion in a place is implied.

- D. Ich stehe in der Kirche, I stand in the church,  
(*where?*) in the church.

Here again the dative is used, because rest in a place is implied.

- D. Er sitzt auf dem Stuhle, He sits on the chair, (*where?*)  
(*wo\*?*)

- A. Er setzt sich auf den Stuhl, (*wohin?*) He sets, (*or places*) himself  
upon the chair.

- D. Es liegt auf dem Tische, It lies upon the table.  
(*wo?*)

- A. Er legt etwas auf den Tisch, (*wohin?*) He puts something on the  
table.

- D. Er steht an der Wand, He stands against the wall.  
(*wo?*)

- A. Er stellt sich an die Wand, (*wohin?*) He places himself against  
the wall.

---

\* If we can ask *wo? woran? an wem?* in German the dative must be used, (*wo? where? woran? whereon? whereat? wherewith? an wem? to whom?*) but the accusative is used if we can ask *wohin? (whither? what way?) an wen? whom?*

**D.** Die Reihe ist an mlt, It is my turn.

(an wem?)

**A.** Die Reihe kommt an It comes to my turn.

mich, (an wen?)

In the following instances the dative is used, because a state of rest is implied :

|                                        |                                              |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Hinter der Kirche wohnt der Prediger,  | The preacher lives <i>behind</i> the church. |
| Neben der Thür hängt sein Bildniß,     | His likeness hangs <i>near</i> the door.     |
| Unter mir ist ein Keller,              | <i>Under</i> me is a cellar.                 |
| Vor dem Hause steht ein Baum,          | A tree stands <i>before</i> the house.       |
| Zwischen den Bergen liegt mein Garten, | My garden lies <i>between</i> the mountains. |

## EXERCISE.

*Accusative.*

He goes to every place.  
 I sat down at the table.  
 Put every thing in its right place.  
 Lay it upon the table.  
 He mounted the hill in great haste.  
 He writes on fine paper.  
 All our hopes are founded on God's bounty.  
 He went behind the door.  
 He put the book into his pocket.  
 We go to school.  
 When it comes to your turn.  
 He leaped over a brook.  
 He writes on history.  
 It was divided among them.  
 To throw something before the door.

*Dative.*

He lies on the ground.  
 He sat between the brother and the sister.  
 He is writing at the desk.  
 The book lies upon the table.  
 There sits a bird upon a tree.  
 It lies behind the door.  
 He is in the school.  
 On his arrival in London.  
 They live in peace together.  
 He stood near me.  
 A friend is known in time of need.  
 His room is above mine.  
 I fell asleep over the book.  
 He was occupied with a work.  
 It was the custom among the Greeks.  
 To fly before one's enemy.

## RULE V.

The following prepositions are generally separated, so that the word which they govern, is put between the two parts.

An . . statt, instead.

auf . . zu, } towards, upon,  
auf . . los, } at.

nach . . zu, }  
gegen . . über, opposite.

hinter . . her, } after, be-

hinter . . drein, } hind.

um . . her, round, about.

um . . willen, for the sake of.

unter . . weg, } under, by.

unter . . durch, }

Ueber . . weg, } over,  
über . . hin or her, } above,  
by.

von . . an, } from the, from,  
von . . auf, } since.

von . . aus, }  
von . . her, since, from, for.

vor . . auf, }  
vor . . her, } before, by, for-  
ward, towards,  
vor . . weg, }  
vor . . hin, }

*Examples.*

An meines Vaters Statt,

Ich ging auf den Garten zu,

Er stieß gerade auf mich los,

Ich lief augenblicklich nach dem  
Orte zu,

Er wohnet meinem Hause gegen  
über,

Er lief hinter seinen Bruder her,

Laufet hinter ihn drein,

Ich will diese Hecke um den  
ganzen Garten her ziehen  
lassen,

Man kann unter dem Wall weg-  
gehen,

Ich ging unter der Brücke durch,  
or weg,

Er sprang über den Zaun weg,

Ich sah ihn über das Feld her zu  
mir kommen,

Ich habe dies von Anfang an ge-  
sagt,

Ich bin von Jugend auf daran  
gewohnt,

Er hat sein Haus von Grund  
aus neu erbauet,

Dies Buch kommt von meinen  
seligen Bruder her,

Instead of my father.

I went towards the garden.

He struck straight at me.

I ran instantly towards the  
place.

He lives opposite to my house.

He ran after his brother.

Run after him.

I will let this hedge be made  
round the whole garden.

We, people, &c. can go under  
the rampart.

I passed underneath the bridge

He jumped over the paling.

I saw him coming to me over  
the field.

I have said that from the com-  
mencement.

I have been accustomed to it  
from my youth.

He has rebuilt his house from  
the foundation.

This book comes from my  
late brother.

|                                               |                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Ich ging nur ein paar Schritt<br>vor ihm her, | I only went a few steps before<br>him.     |
| Die Sonne geht vor fünf Uhr<br>auf,           | The sun rises before five<br>o'clock.      |
| Er war wohl hundert Schritt vor<br>uns weg,   | He was about a hundred paces<br>before us. |
| Ich trat ruhig vor den Schurken<br>hin,       | I stepped quietly before that<br>rascal.   |

*Exercise.*

I went instead of my brother. He ran towards the field. She went after her sister. He walked after the carriage. Do you come from the west? He threw that book before me. A minister was there instead of the prince. I walked after the man, or I followed the man. For God's sake do not go there.

---

Carriage, Wagen. West, Westen. To throw, werfen.  
Prince, Fürst, m.

---

**Conjunctions, Bindewörter.**

## RULE I.

The conjunctions *und*, *aber*, *sondern*, *weder*, &c. connect similar cases, moods, and tenses, when they stand in the same relation.

*Examples.*

|                                                        |                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| Zeit und Stunde sind noch<br>nicht da,                 | The time and hour are not<br>yet come.             |
| Der Glanz der Sonne, des<br>Mondes, und der Sterne,    | The brightness of the sun,<br>moon, and stars.     |
| Gieb es dem Vater und dem<br>Sohne,                    | Give it to the father and<br>son.                  |
| Ich kenne die Frau, aber den<br>Mann kenne ich nicht,  | I know the wife, but I do<br>not know the husband. |
| Ich trinke weder Kaffee, noch<br>Thee, noch Chocolate. | I drink neither coffee, tea,<br>nor chocolate.     |
| Was wir wünschten und<br>hofften, (not hoffen,)        | What we wished and hoped.                          |

*Exercise.*

Heaven and earth shall pass away, but my word shall not pass away. I know neither his father nor brother Time and chance are things on which much depends. He does nothing but eat, drink, and sleep. I dined with him yesterday, and the day before yesterday, and I shall dine there again to-day. I will neither eat nor drink. Fear God and honour the king. To do good, and to shun evil, is the duty of all men.

~~~~~

Shall pass away, werden vergehen. On which, von denen. Much depends, vieles abhängt. He does nothing but, er thut weiter nichts als. Fear, fürchten. Honour, ehren. To shun, meiden.

—

RULE II.

Some conjunctions take *so* after them [*V. p. 222.*], when we do not use the corresponding English; but most good authors leave out the *so*. In either case the nominative is put after the verb in the subsequent sentence.

*Examples.*

Obgleich ich wenig habe, so	Though I have little, yet I
bin ich doch zufrieden,	am contented.
Wann ihr wieder kommet,	When you come again, I
so will ich es euch geben,	will give it you.
Wenn Sie es thun, so sind	If you do it, you are to
Sie zu tadeln,	blame.
Wann es Zeit ist, werde ich	When it is time I will come.
kommen,	
Als wir zu Abend gegessen	Having supped, we took a
hatten, gingen wir spazie-	walk.
ren,	

*Exercise.*

If I were rich, I should have friends. Since, or because it is so fine, we will take a walk. However handsome she may be, yet, or nevertheless she is not amiable. Having this opportunity, I could not omit writing to you. If you will come to me, I will give it you. When I see him, I will tell it to him. If we say yes, he also says yes.

Since, weil solches. Fine, schönes. We will, so wollen wir.  
Amiable, liebenswürdig. Omit, unterlassen.

## RULE III.

From the conjunctions *obschon*, *obgleich*, *obwohl*, *ob* is seldom separated, unless a personal pronoun is the nominative; when the nominative is not a personal pronoun, *ob* is never separated.

*Examples.*

<i>Obschon</i> er reich ist, (or <i>ob</i> er schon reich ist,) so ist er doch unglücklich,	Though he is rich, yet he is unhappy.
<i>Ob</i> ich wohl gern helfen wollte, nichts desto weniger ist es mir wegen meiner Armuth unmöglich,	Although I would very willingly help, it is nevertheless impossible, on account of my poverty.
<i>Obgleich</i> dieses Pferd kein Engländer ist,	Although this is no English horse.

*Exercise.*

Though I do not know. Although we are rich, yet we cannot assist every body. Though he knew she hated him, yet he insisted on marrying her. Although you are learned, yet there is still much that you do not know. Though you are older than he, yet I doubt whether you be so learned. Though his proposition met with some opposition.

Every body, allen Leuten. Hated, haßte. Insisted, bestand darauf. Proposition, Vorschlag.

## RULE IV.

The conjunction *daß*, expressed or understood, requires the indicative, when a certainty is spoken of; but the sub-



junctive when desire, doubt or uncertainty is implied, and when the verb which goes before is conditional, either simple or compound.

*Indicative.*

Wir wissen, daß Crösus	We know that Croesus was
reich war,	rich.
Ich versichere dir, daß ich	I assure thee that I am thy
dein Freund bin,	friend.
Ich weiß er wird heute an-	I know he will arrive to-
kommen,	day.
Ich glaube es ist Zeit,	I believe it is time.

*Subjunctive.*

Ich wünsche, daß er es nicht	I wish that he had not done
gethan hätte, (or,)	it, (or,)
Ich wünsche er hätte es nicht	I wish he had not done it.
gethan,	
Er will nicht glauben, daß	He will not believe that I
ich sein Freund sey,	am his friend.
Er fürchtete, er möchte ihn	He was afraid, that he might
schlagen, or daß er ihn	beat him.
schlagen möchte,	
Würde man glauben, daß es	Would one think it were
möglich wäre,	possible.

EXERCISES.

*Indicative.*

I believe he is at home. We know *that* he is a rich man. He is of that humour, *that* no one can agree with him. I am sorry I have not *seen* your sister. Dost thou believe *that* thou art a sinner? I know *that* it is wrong.

*Subjunctive.*

I was afraid (*that*) you would not come. I hope your sister will (*may*) marry my brother. We believe that he might have had it. They tell me that there has been thunder. Our friend maintains that this will be a fruitful year.

*Observe.* *Daß* is sometimes omitted after an expression which implies a *wish*, a *hope*, a *prayer*, or an *assurance*; as in the following, and in some of the preceding examples.

Ich wünsche, Gott wolle Sie in seinen Schutz nehmen,	I wish God may take you un- der his protection.
Ich hoffe Sie werden es nicht übel nehmen,	I hope you will not take it amiss.
Ich bitte Sie, geben Sie sich keine Mühe,	I beg you would give yourself no trouble.
Er versicherte mich, es wäre wahr,	He assured me it was true.
Ich bitte, Sie wollen es anneh- men,	I beg you will accept of it.

*N. B.* The word *but* is differently expressed.

1. At the beginning of a sentence by *aber*, *allein*; as,

Sie sagen *Sie*, *aber* (or *allein*) ich glaube es nicht, they say so,  
*but* I do not believe it.

2. *But* is expressed by *sondern*, when the contrary of a ne-  
gation is used, as,

Sie sind nicht meine Freunde, sondern meine Feinde, they are not  
my friends, *but* my enemies.

3. *But* signifying *only*, is expressed by *nur*; as,

Er hatte nur einen einzigen Freund, he had *but* (or *only*) one  
friend.

4. *But* with words expressive of time, or age is *erst*; as,

Sie ist erst sechzehn Jahr alt, she is *but* sixteen years old.  
Es ist erst zwei Uhr, it is *but* two o'clock.

5. *But*, after nouns or pronouns of negation, is expressed  
by *als*; as, nichts als, or nichts anders als, nothing *but*; niemand  
als, nobody *but*.

6. *But* used in the sense of *except*, is *außer*, *ausgenommen*; as,

Es ist das letzte Haus außer einem, it is the last house *but* one.  
Sie sind alle fleißig, ausgenommen ihr, they are all diligent *but*  
you.

7. *But*, after *I do not doubt*, signifies *that*, *daß*; as,

Ich zweifle nicht, daß Sie mein Freund sind, I do not doubt, *but*  
you are my friend.



## Endings of Nouns.

IN this table it is necessary to observe, that the mark (&c.) is used to point out that most nouns belong to that gender and declension under which it is placed : the exceptions under each gender being distinguished by the omission of this mark and by the English being printed in *Italics*.

The numbers 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, 5th, point out the declension, and the letters *es*, &c. before the brackets, denote the endings of the genitive singular, and *e*, &c. after, the nominative plural.

*Obs.* Feminines have only the termination of the nominative plural, on account of their having no change in the singular.

The following example will serve to illustrate the above rules and show the utility of the table. For instance, if a noun end in *b*, by referring to the table it will be seen that the &c. is under the masculines, consequently most nouns ending in *b*, will be of the masculine gender, second declension, having the genitive singular in *es*, and nominative plural in *e*, the exceptions are neuters, having the English printed in *Italics* with no &c. under them.

	MASCULINES.	FEMININES.	NEUTERS.
<i>Nouns in b.</i>	- <i>es</i> . [2nd dec.] - <i>e</i> . <i>der Dieb</i> , the thief § <i>Stieb</i> , stroke * <i>Korb</i> , basket &c.		- <i>es</i> . [2nd dec.] - <i>e</i> . † <i>Laub</i> °, leaves ( <i>foliage</i> ) ° <i>lob</i> °, praise <i>Sieb</i> , sieve

*Obs.* Some German dictionaries contain the terminations of the genitive singular, and nominative plural, to which the student can refer for those words, the endings of which are not given in this list.

§ It has been thought unnecessary to continue the repetition of the articles, either in the German, or the English.

|| The words marked with an asterisk (\*) change the vowels *a*, *o*, or *u*, in the plural, into the diphthongs *ä*, *ö*, or *ü*.

† Those words that have a small round cipher (°) on the right hand, as *Laub*°, have no plural.

	MASCULINES.	FEMININES.	NEUTERS.
<i>Nouns in b.</i>	-ens.[3rd dec.]-en. <i>Buchstab, letter</i> -es.[5th dec.]-er. <i>Leib, body</i>		-es.[5th dec.]-er. <i>*Grab, grave</i> <i>*Kalb, calf</i> <i>Lied, song</i> <i>Weib, woman</i>
<i>Nouns in b.</i>	†-es.[2nd dec.]-e. <i>*Band, volume or binding</i> <i>Freund, friend</i> <i>Pfad, path</i> <i>Hund, dog</i> <i>Mond, moon</i> <i>Mord°, murder</i> <i>Mund, mouth</i> <i>Sand°, sand</i> <i>Schild, shield</i> <i>Verstand°, under- standing</i> <i>Tod°, death</i> <i>Wind, wind</i> &c. -en.[3rd dec.]-en. <i>Feld, hero</i> † For further particulars, see the observations on the second declension, p. 13.	[2nd dec.]-e. <i>*Hand, hand</i> <i>*Knecht, servant</i> <i>*Mau, wall,</i> <i>and some few others</i> [3rd dec.]-en. <i>Geduld°, patience</i> <i>Gut°, kindness</i> <i>Jagd, chase</i> <i>Schuld, guilt, debt</i>	-es.[2nd dec.]-e. <i>Band, fetter</i> <i>Brod, bread</i> <i>*Bund, bundle</i> <i>Pferd, horse</i> <i>Pfund, pounds</i> <i>All other nouns,</i> <i>in und, are masculine.</i> -es.[5th dec.]-er. <i>*Bad, bath</i> <i>*Band, ribbon</i> <i>Bild, image</i> <i>Feld, field</i> <i>Geld, money</i> <i>Glied, limb</i> <i>Hemd, shirt</i> <i>Kind, child</i> <i>Kleid, robe</i> <i>*Land, land</i> <i>Lied, song</i> <i>*Pfand, pledge</i> <i>*Rad, wheel</i> <i>*Rand, border</i> <i>Rind, ox</i> <i>Schild, signboard</i> &c.
<i>Nouns in lb. end.</i>	s-[2nd dec.]-e. <i>Abend, evening</i>	-[3rd dec.]-en. <i>Gegend, region</i> <i>Jugend°, youth</i> <i>Tugend, virtue</i> &c.	

	MASCULINES.	FEMININES.	NEUTERS.
Nouns in e.	<p>-n.[3rd dec.]-n.</p> <p>Affe, <i>ape</i>  Drache, <i>dragon</i>  Falke, <i>falcon</i>  Friede,† <i>peace</i>  Hase, <i>hare</i>  Heide, <i>heathen</i>  Knabe, <i>boy</i>  Löwe, <i>lion</i>  Name, <i>name</i>  Rabe, <i>raven</i>  See, <i>lake</i>, is of the 4th dec., and takes s.  † Obs. Friede and Name take ens, in the gen.</p> <p>-s.[1st dec.]-</p> <p>Käse, <i>cheese</i>  Kaffee°, <i>coffee</i>  Schnee°, <i>snow</i>  (And some others, principally collectives, V. Obs. 5th, p. 11.)</p>	<p>-[3rd dec.]-n.</p> <p>Ameise, <i>ant</i>  Birne, <i>pear</i>  Heide, <i>heath</i>  Henne, <i>hen</i>  Historie, <i>history</i>  Hyacinthe, <i>hyacinth</i>  (a flower)  Liebe°, <i>love</i>  Neunauge, <i>lamprey</i>  See, <i>sea</i>  Sonne, <i>sun</i>  &amp;c.</p>	<p>-s.[4th dec.]-n.</p> <p>Auge, <i>eye</i>  Ende, <i>end</i>  Erbe, <i>inheritance</i>  Knie, <i>knee</i></p>
Nouns in f. pf.	<p>es-[2nd dec.]-e.</p> <p>Brief, <i>letter</i>  *Knopf, <i>button</i>  &amp;c.</p> <p>en-[3rd dec.]-en.</p> <p>Graf, <i>Count</i>,  And a few others</p>		<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e.</p> <p>Schaf, <i>sheep</i>  Schiff, <i>ship</i></p> <p>-es.[5th dec.]-er.</p> <p>*Dorf, <i>village</i></p>
Nouns in g. ig. ang. ing. ug.	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e.</p> <p>Rönig, <i>king</i>  Tag, <i>day</i>  Zwang°, <i>compulsion</i>  &amp;c.</p>	<p>-[2nd dec.]-e.</p> <p>*Burg, <i>citadel</i></p> <p>Some modern writer makes the pl. Burgen.</p>	<p>-es.[5th dec.]-er.</p> <p>Ding, <i>thing</i>  (This also belongs to the 2nd dec.)  Honig°, <i>honey</i>  Messing°, <i>brass</i></p>

	MASCULINES.	FEMININES.	NEUTERS.
<i>Nouns in ung.</i>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e.  <i>Dung°, dung</i>  <i>*Schwung, swing</i>  <i>*Sprung, leap</i>  <i>*Ursprung, origin</i>  <i>Obs. Most monosyllables in ung, are masculine</i></p>	<p>[3rd dec.]-en.  <i>Heffnung, hope</i>  <i>Lesung, reading</i>  <i>Bohnung, dwelling</i>  <i>Zeitung, news &amp;c.</i></p>	
<i>Nouns in h.</i>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e.  <i>*Floh, flea &amp;c.</i></p>	<p>[2nd dec.]-e.  <i>*Kuh, cow</i></p>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e.  <i>Stroh°, straw</i>  <i>Reh, doe</i>  <i>Wich, beast</i>  <i>(Wich is also, in upper German, of the 5th dec.)</i></p>
<i>Nouns in ch. och. uch.</i>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e.  <i>*Bauch, belly</i>  <i>*Bruch, fractured</i>  <i>Hauch, breath</i>  <i>*Koch, cook &amp;c.</i>  <i>Obs. Nouns in och, are mostly neuter, but in uch, they are generally masculine.</i></p>	<p>[2nd dec.]  <i>Milch°, milk</i>  <i>Schmach°, ignominy, reproach</i></p>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e.  <i>Gemach°, tranquillity</i>  <i>Gesuch, request</i>  <i>*Joch, yoke</i>  <i>Reich, empire</i>  <i>Pech, pitch &amp;c.</i></p> <p>-es.[5th dec.]-e.  <i>*Buch, book</i>  <i>*Bruch, fen, or marsh</i>  <i>*Dach, roof</i>  <i>*Fach, partition</i>  <i>*Gemach, room</i>  <i>*Loch, hole</i>  <i>Luch, cloth</i></p>
<i>Nouns in arch.</i>	<p>-en.[3rd dec.]-en.  <i>Monarch, monarch &amp;c.</i></p>		

	MASCULINES.	FEMININES.	NEUTERS.
<i>Nouns in fch.</i>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Fifch, fish Tifch, table *Wunfch, wish &amp;c.</p> <p>-en.[3rd dec.]-en. Menfch, man</p>		<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Fleifch°, meat</p> <p>-es.[5th dec.]-er. Wenfch, wench</p>
<i>Nouns in ph.</i>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Triumph, triumph</p> <p>-en.[3rd dec.]-en. Philosoph, philo- sopher &amp;c.</p>		
<i>Nouns in ath.</i>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e. *Rath, counsel</p> <p>-es.[4th dec.]-en. Bierath, ornament</p>	<p>[3rd dec.]-en. Heimath, home Heirath, marriage &amp;c.</p>	
<i>Nouns in nth. oth. rth. uth.</i>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Hyacinth, hyacinth (a precious stone.) Roth°, mud Werth°, value &amp;c.</p>	<p>[3rd dec.]-en. Fluth, flood, high tide Gluth, glowing heat *Roth, want</p> <p>Most nouns in uth are feminine, and have no plu- ral; as, Anmuth°, sweet- ness, pleasant- ness</p>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Loth, plummet And most nouns in oth.</p> <p>-es[5th dec.]-er. Gemuth°, mind</p>



	MASCULINES.	FEMININES.	NEUTERS.
<i>Nouns in ntñ. otñ. rtñ. utñ.</i>		<i>Armutñ, poverty, want</i> <i>Demutñ, humility</i> <i>Großmutñ, greatness of mind</i> <i>Langmutñ, endurance</i> <i>Sanftmutñ, meekness</i>	
<i>Nouns in ei.</i>	<i>-es.[2nd dec.]-e.</i> <i>Brei, pap</i> <i>Klei, clay</i> <i>Schrei, cry</i>  <i>-en.[3rd dec.]-en.</i> <i>Lackei, lackey</i>	<i>-[3rd dec.]-en.</i> <i>Bettelei, begging</i> <i>Schmeichelei, flattery</i> <i>&amp;c.</i> <i>Obs. Some writers use ey instead of ei, at the end of words.</i>	<i>-es.[5th dec.]-er.</i> <i>Blei, lead</i> <i>Ei (or Ey), egg</i>
<i>Nouns in ad. ed. id. od. ud. üd.</i>	<i>-es.[2nd dec.]-e.</i> <i>Blid, look</i> <i>Druck, pressure</i> <i>Fleck, spot, or 3d.</i> <i>*Roc, coat</i> <i>*Sack, sack</i> <i>Schreck, fear, or 3d</i> <i>*Stoc, stick, &amp;c.</i>		<i>-es.[2nd dec.]-e.</i> <i>Lack, lac (a Gum)</i> <i>Glück, luck</i> <i>Schoc, three score</i> <i>Stück, part, or piece</i> <i>Unglück, misfortune</i>
<i>Nouns in it.</i>	<i>-en.[3rd dec.]-en.</i> <i>Katholik, catholic</i>	<i>-[3rd dec.]-en.</i> <i>Fabrik, fabric</i> <i>&amp;c.</i>	
<i>Nouns in it.</i>	<i>-es.[2nd dec.]-e.</i> <i>*Schalk, knave</i> <i>-en.[3rd dec.]-en.</i> <i>Falk, falcon</i> <i>(V. also Falke, the falcon.)</i> <i>&amp;c.</i>		<i>-es.[5th dec.]-er.</i> <i>*Volk, people</i>

	MASCULINES.	FEMININES.	NEUTERS.
<i>Nouns in nt.</i>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Dant<sup>o</sup>, thanks *Bant<sup>o</sup>, quarrel &amp;c.</p> <p>-en [3rd dec.]-en. Fint<sup>o</sup>, finch &amp;c.</p>	<p>[2nd dec.]-e. *Bant<sup>o</sup>, bench, bank, shoal</p> <p>[3rd dec.]-en. Bant<sup>o</sup>, bank (an office for money transactions)</p>	
<i>Nouns in rt.</i>		<p>[3rd dec.]-en. Mart<sup>o</sup>, mark, or boundary</p>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Mart<sup>o</sup>, marrow Wert<sup>o</sup>, work &amp;c.</p>
<i>Nouns in al. adl.</i>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e. *Xal, eel *Canal, canal &amp;c.</p>	<p>[3rd dec.]-en. Qual, torment</p>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Arsenal, arsenal Drangsal,† afflic- tion, vexation Capital, capital of a column; when it means <i>the</i> <i>principal</i>, its pl. is Capitalien. Gutteral, case, box Lineal, ruler</p> <p>† And most words in sal. &amp;c.</p> <p>-es.[5th dec.]-er. *Hospital, } Hos- or *Spital, } pital *Xhal, valley Mineral, mineral, makes in the pl. Mineralien, or Minerale</p>

	MASCULINES.	FEMININES.	NEUTERS.
<i>Nouns in el.</i>	<p>-s. [1st dec.] †            *Apfel, apple            *Hammel, wether &amp;c.            †Obs. In the 1st dec. the nom. pl. is the same as the nom. sing.            -s. [4th dec.] -n.            Muskel, muscle            Pantoffel, slipper            Spargel, asparagus            Stiefel, boot            The pl. may be like the nom. viz. Stiefel.</p>	<p>[3rd dec.] -n.            Kapsel, shoulder            Kamsel, blackbird            Angel, hook            Bibel, bible            Dattel, date (a fruit)            Distel, thistle            Droffel, thrush            Eichel, acorn            Fabel, fable            Gabel, fork            Geißel, whip            Gurgel, throat            Insel, island            Kanzel, pulpit            Kugel, ball            Kuppel, dome            Mandel, almond            Nadel, needle            Zwiebel, onion            And all feminines in el, are of the 3rd dec.</p>	<p>-s. [1st dec.] †            Axtel, eighth            Bündel, bundle            Capitel, capital of a column            Dunkel, darkness            Exempel, example            Ferkel, young pig            Geflügel°, poultry            Gemurmel°, murmur            Getümmel, tumult            Mittel, middle            Orakel, oracle            Segel, sail            Siegel, seal            Spektakel, show            Uebel, illness            Wiesel, weasel            Also, fractional numbers in tel, diminutives in el, and collectives beginning with ge.</p>
<i>Nouns in iel.</i>	<p>-es. [2nd dec.] -e.            Riel, or Federkiel, quill &amp;c.</p>		<p>-es. [2nd dec.] -e.            Ziel, end, aim, term, boundary, bounds</p>
<i>Nouns in hl.</i>	<p>-es. [2nd dec.] -e.            *Pfahl, pile, or post            *Stahl, steel &amp;c.            -es. [4th dec.] -en.            Strahl, ray, or beam of light</p>	<p>[3rd dec.] -en.            Wahl, choice            Zahl, number</p>	<p>-es. [2nd dec.] -e.            Denkmahl, monument            Gemahl, spouse            Mahl, meal, or repast</p>

	MASCULINES.	FEMININES.	NEUTERS.
Nouns in <i>eil.</i>	-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Reil, wedge Pfeil, arrow Theil, part, portion, division, share &c.		-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Beil, axe Seil, rope
Nouns in <i>all.</i>	-es.[2nd dec.]-e. *Ball, ball *Fall, fall Quall°, fountain, bubbling up &c. Quall is seldom used.	[3rd dec.]-en. Nachtigall, nightingale	-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Metall, metal
Nouns in <i>ell.</i>			-es.(2nd dec.)-e. Castell, castle Duell, duel Fell, skin &c.
Nouns in <i>ol. oll.</i>	-es[2nd dec.]-e. Beil, inch *Zell, toll, makes Zölle, in the pl. &c.		-es.(5th dec.)-er. Ramsol, waist-coat
Nouns in <i>u. elm. eum. um.</i>	-es.[2nd dec.]-e. *Baum, tree Stalm, straw (distributive) Salz, salmon Schelm, rogue *Strom, stream &c.	[3rd dec.]-en. Barn, slope	-es.(5th dec.)-er. *Lamm, lamb

	MASCULINES.	FEMININES.	NEUTERS.
<i>Nouns in m. elm. aum. mm.</i>	<p>-es.[4th dec.]-en.  <i>ſalm, straw</i>  <i>(a single piece of</i>  <i>straw, a collective)</i>  <i>ſſalm, psalm</i>  <i>&amp;c.</i></p> <p>-es.[5th dec.]-er,e  <i>*Burm, worm</i></p>		
<i>Nouns in em.</i>	<p>-s.[1st dec.]-  <i>*Athem°, breath</i></p> <p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e.  <i>ſfriem, bodkin</i>  <i>&amp;c.</i></p>		<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e.  <i>Problem, problem</i>  <i>System, system</i></p>
<i>Nouns in um. thum.</i>	<p>-es.[5th dec.]-er.  <i>*Irrthum, error</i>  <i>*Reichthum°, riches</i>  <i>Wachsthum°,</i>  <i>growth</i></p>		<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-er.  <i>*Alterthum, anti-</i>  <i>quity</i>  <i>Chriſtenthum°,</i>  <i>Christianity</i>  <i>Eigenthum°, pro-</i>  <i>perty</i>  <i>*Herzogthum,</i>  <i>duchy, or duke-</i>  <i>dom</i>  <i>&amp;c.</i></p>
<i>Nouns in n.</i>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e.  <i>*ſahn, cock</i>  <i>Lohn°, reward</i>  <i>*Sohn, son</i>  <i>ſtern, star</i>  <i>*Zahn, tooth</i>  <i>&amp;c.</i></p> <p>-es.[4th dec.]-en.  <i>ſporn, spur</i></p>	<p>-[3rd dec.]-en.  <i>Bahn, foot-path</i>  <i>ſtirn, front, fore-</i>  <i>head</i></p>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e.  <i>ſeſtern, star</i>  <i>ſehirn, or ſirn,</i>  <i>brain</i>  <i>ſirn also makes</i>  <i>ſirner, in the pl.</i></p>

	MASCULINES.	FEMININES.	NEUTERS.
<i>Nouns in n.</i>	<p>-es.[5th dec.]-er.  <i>*Dorn, thorn</i>  <i>(In a collective sense the plural is Dornen)</i></p>		<p>-es.[5th dec.]-er.  <i>*Horn, horn</i>  <i>*Huhn, fowl</i>  <i>*Korn, corn</i></p>
<i>Nouns in n. nn.</i>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e.  <i>Altan, balcony</i>  <i>Castellan, keeper of a fort, or a castle</i>  <i>Gasan, pheasant</i>  <i>Gespan, companion</i>  <i>&amp;c.</i></p> <p>-en.[3rd dec.]-en.  <i>Trann, tyrant</i></p> <p>-s.[4th dec.]-en.  <i>Unterthan, subject</i></p> <p>-es.[5th dec.]-er.  <i>*Mann, man</i></p>		
<i>Nouns in en. ben. lein.</i>	<p>-s.[1st dec.]-  <i>*Boben, loft</i>  <i>*Bogen, bow</i>  <i>Brunnen, well</i>  <i>Klumpen, lump</i>  <i>&amp;c.</i></p>		<p>-s.[1st dec.]-  <i>Almosen, alms</i>  <i>Becken, bason</i>  <i>Leben, life</i>  <i>Lesen, reading</i>  <i>And all infinitives used as nouns</i>  <i>Fraulein, a noble spinster</i>  <i>Mädchen, girl, maid</i>  <i>And all diminutives in chen, and lein</i></p>

	MASCULINES.	FEMININES.	NEUTERS.
Nouns in in. inn.	-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Beginn <sup>n</sup> , <i>beginning</i> Gewinn, <i>gain</i> Rubin, <i>ruby</i>	-[3rd dec.]-en. Doctorin, <i>doctress</i> Dichterin, <i>poetess</i> And all <i>feminines</i> in -in or -inn. &c.	-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Bein, <i>leg</i> Schwein, <i>swine</i> &c. s-[1st dec.] Fräulein, the title of a young lady, nearly corre- sponding to the English <i>Miss</i> ; and all <i>deriva-</i> <i>tives</i> in -lein.
Nouns in on. ion	-es.[2d dec.]-e. Patron, <i>patron</i> Espion, <i>spy</i> *Ton, <i>tune</i> . s,(or)es-[4th dec.] -en. Scorpion, <i>scorpion</i>	-[3rd dec.]-en. Nation, <i>nation</i> Person, <i>person</i> Religion, <i>religion</i> &c.	s, or es.[2nd dec.] -e, or s. Batallion, <i>battalion</i>
Nouns in p. pp.	en-[3d dec.]-en. *Klump, <i>clod</i> Trupp, <i>troop</i> Polyp, <i>Polypus</i> &c.		
Nouns in ar. qar.	-es.[2nd dec.]-e. *Altar, <i>altar</i> Bär, <i>moat</i> Staat, ( <i>insurgery</i> ) cataract of the eye &c. -en[3d dec.]-en. Bär, <i>bear, rammer</i> Husar, <i>hussar</i> Scholar, <i>scholar</i>		-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Exemplar, <i>example</i> Formular, <i>formula</i> Haar, <i>hair</i> Paar, <i>pair</i>

	MASCULINES.	FEMININES.	NEUTERS.
<i>Nouns in ar. aar,</i>	<p>2.[4th dec.]-n.  <i>Rachbar, neighbour</i>  <i>Tartar, Tartar</i>  <i>Ungar, Hungarian</i>  <i>And most words ending in ar, derived from the names of countries.</i></p>		
<i>Nouns in er.</i>	<p>-s.[1st dec.]-  <i>Abler, eagle</i>  <i>Bauer, builder</i>  <i>Zammer°, affliction</i>  <i>Rummer°, sorrow</i>  <i>*Water, father</i>  <i>&amp;c.</i></p> <p>-s[4th dec.]-n.  <i>Bauer, peasant</i>  <i>Gevatter, godfather</i>  <i>Haber°, quarrel</i>  <i>Better, cousin,</i></p> <p>and some names of persons.</p>	<p>[1st dec.]  <i>*Mutter, mother</i>  <i>Tochter, daughter</i></p> <p>[3rd dec.]-n, or en  <i>Uber, vein</i>  <i>Kuster, oyster</i>  <i>Butter°, butter</i>  <i>Ceder, cedar-tree</i>  <i>Dauer°, strength</i>  <i>Feder, pen</i>  <i>Glitter, spangle</i>  <i>Folter, rack</i>  <i>Halfter, halter</i>  <i>Leber, liver</i>  <i>Leier, lyre, harp</i>  <i>Leiter, ladder</i>  <i>Marter, torments</i>  <i>Mauer, wall</i>  <i>Natter, adder</i>  <i>Rummer, number</i>  <i>Schulter, shoulder</i>  <i>Steuer, tax</i>  <i>Trauer, grief</i>  <i>Schwester, sister</i>  <i>Vesper, vesper, evening</i>  <i>Wimper, eye-lash</i>  <i>Zither, guitar</i></p>	<p>-s.[1st dec.]-  <i>Alter, age</i>  <i>Bauer, cage</i>  <i>Fenster, window</i>  <i>Feuer, fire</i>  <i>Fieber, fever</i>  <i>Futter, fodder</i>  <i>Gelächter, laughter</i>  <i>Gewitter, storm</i>  <i>*Kloster, convent</i>  <i>Lager, camp</i>  <i>Laster, vice</i>  <i>Leber, leather</i>  <i>Messer, knife</i>  <i>Muster, pattern</i>  <i>Opfer, sacrifice</i>  <i>Ruder, oar</i>  <i>Ufer, shore</i>  <i>Wetter, weather</i>  <i>Wasser, water</i>  <i>Wunder, miracle</i>  <i>Zimmer, room</i></p> <p>Collectives beginning with ge, and some names of metals.</p>



	MASCULINES.	FEMININES.	NEUTERS.
<i>Nouns in iet.</i>	-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Stier, <i>steer</i> , or bull Bezier, <i>vizier</i>	[3rd dec.]-en. Begier, <i>desire</i> Zier, <i>ornament</i>	-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Bier, <i>beer</i> Brevier, <i>breviary</i> , or <i>abridgement</i> Papier, <i>paper</i> Thier, <i>animal</i> &c.
<i>Nouns in iet.</i>	-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Stahr, <i>starling</i> -en.[3d dec.]-en. Moor, <i>moor</i> Vorfahr, <i>predecessor</i> &c.	-[3rd dec.]-en. Gefahr, <i>danger</i> Uhr, <i>watch</i> &c.	-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Rohr, <i>reed</i>
<i>Nouns in ot.</i>	-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Castor, <i>beaver</i> *Flor, <i>gauze</i> , <i>lawn</i> -en.[3rd dec.]-en. Thor, <i>fool</i> -s.[4th dec.]-en, or es. Professor, <i>professor</i>		-es.[2nd dec.]-e. *Thor, <i>choir</i> Thor, <i>gate</i> &c.
<i>Nouns in ur.</i>	-en.[3rd dec.]-en. Herr, <i>master</i> Narr, <i>fool</i> &c.		
<i>Nouns in ur.</i>	-s.[1st dec.]- Gouverneur, <i>go- vernor</i> Purpur, <i>purple</i> -es.[2d dec.]-e. *Schwur, <i>swearing</i>	-[3rd dec.]-en. Spur, <i>spur</i> *Schwur, <i>daughter</i> in <i>law</i> &c.	

	MASCULINES.	FEMININES.	NEUTERS.
<i>Nouns in s.</i>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e. *Hals, neck Krebs, crab     &amp;c.</p> <p>-en.[3rd dec.]-en. Fels, rock.</p>	<p>-[2nd dec.]-e. *Gans, goose</p>	<p>-es.[5th dec.]-er. *Glas, glass *Gras, grass Reis, twig     &amp;c.</p>
<i>Nouns in ds.</i>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Dachs, badger Luchs, lynx     &amp;c.</p>		<p>*-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Wachs, wax     &amp;c.</p>
<i>Nouns in us.</i>		<p>-[2nd dec.]-e. *Lous, louse *Maus, mouse     &amp;c.</p>	<p>-es.[5th dec.]-er. *Haus, house</p>
<i>Nouns in t.</i>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e. *Markt, market Punct, point     &amp;c.</p>	<p>-[2nd dec.]-e. *Stadt, city</p>	<p>-es.[5th dec.]-er. *Amt, office *Haupt, head Zelt, tent</p>
<i>Nouns in at. att.</i>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Legat, legate</p> <p>-en.[3rd dec.]-en. Advocat, advocate. Potentat, potentate and other names of rank.</p>	<p>-[3rd dec.]-en. That, deed</p>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Mandat, mandate     &amp;c.</p> <p>-es.[5th dec.]-er. *Blatt, leaf</p>

	MASCULINES.	FEMININES.	NEUTERS.
Nouns in ct.	-es.[4th dec.]-en. <i>Effect, passion</i> &c.		-es.[2nd dec.]-e. <i>Edict, edict</i> -es.[4th dec.]-en. <i>Insect, insect</i>
Nouns in et.	-es.[2nd dec.]-e. <i>Magnet, magnet</i> -en.[3rd dec.]-en. <i>Comet, comet</i> <i>Planet, planet</i>		-es.[2nd dec.]-e. <i>Gebet, or Gebeth,</i> <i>prayer</i> &c. -es.[5th dec.]-e. <i>Ret, board</i>
Nouns in ft.	-es.[2nd dec.]-e. * <i>Duft, vapour</i> * <i>Saft, sap</i> * <i>Schaft, shaft</i> <i>Stift, peg, or tag</i>	-[2nd dec.]-e. <i>Gift, gift</i> * <i>Kraft, strength</i> * <i>Luft, air</i> * <i>Wust, corpora-</i> <i>tion</i> &c. -[3rd dec.]-en. <i>Ursunft, origin</i> <i>Ankunft, arrival</i> <i>Freundschaft,</i> <i>friendship</i> <i>Uebereinkunft, a-</i> <i>greement</i> <i>Bernunft, sense</i> <i>Rückkunft, re-</i> <i>turn</i> &c.	-es.[2nd dec.]-e <i>Gift, poison</i> <i>Stift, institution,</i> <i>foundation, or</i> <i>stipend</i>
Nouns in gt.		-[3rd dec.]-en. <i>Prebigt, sermon</i> &c.	

	MASCULINES.	FEMININES.	NEUTERS.
<i>Nouns in 3d. dt.</i>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Bericht, account Docht, wick Knecht, servant *Pacht, contract *Schacht, tract of land Unterricht, instruction Verdacht, distrust Wicht, a wight &amp;c.</p> <p>-es.[5th dec.]-er. Bösewicht, villain</p>	<p>[2nd dec.]-e. *Frucht, fruit *Macht, might *Nacht, night *Raht, seam &amp;c.</p> <p>-[3rd dec.]-en. Absicht, design Andacht, devotion Flucht, flight Furcht, fear Gicht, gout Pflicht, duty Schlacht, battle Sacht, sickness Sicht, sight, and its compounds, except Gesicht</p>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Dickt, thicket Geschicht, fiction, device, fable Gericht, dish of any thing (as meat) Gewicht, weight Recht, right</p> <p>-es.[5th dec.]-er. Angesicht, face Geschlecht, gender, or genus Gesicht, sight, or face Licht, light &amp;c.</p>
<i>Nouns in eit.</i>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Scheit, dispute</p>	<p>-[3rd dec.]-en. Zeit, time Grobheit, coarseness Obrigkeit, magistrate &amp;c.</p>	<p>-es.[2nd or 5th dec]-e, or -er. Scheit, splinter</p>
<i>Nouns in it.</i>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Anwalt, attorney Spalt, slit &amp;c.</p>	<p>-[3rd dec.]-en. Anstalt, regulation Welt, world &amp;c.</p>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Zelt, tent</p>
<i>Nouns in ant. ent.</i>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Orient, east Decident, west</p>		<p>-es.[2nd or 5th dec.]-e, or -er. Parlament, parliament</p>

	MASCULINES.	FEMININES.	NEUTERS.
<i>Nouns in ant. ent.</i>	<p>(1.) -en.[3rd dec.] -en. Adjutant, adjutant &amp;c.</p> <p>(2.) -es.[4th dec.] -en. Diamant, <i>diamond</i></p>		<p>Regiment, regi- ment &amp;c.</p>
<i>Nouns in vt. ort.</i>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e. *Bart, beard Ort, place &amp;c.</p>	<p>-[3rd dec.]-en. Art, <i>species</i> Antwort, <i>answer</i> Fahrt, <i>passage</i></p>	<p>-es.[5th dec.]-er. Schwert, <i>sword</i> *Wort, <i>word</i>  Wort, speech, takes e in the pl. and does not change the vowel.</p>
<i>Nouns in ft. oft.</i>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Ballast°, ballast *Dunst, vapour *Gast, guest *Papst, Pope Rest, remainder Verdienst, profit &amp;c.</p> <p>-en.[3rd dec.]-en. Atheist, atheist Enthusiast, enthu- siast &amp;c.</p> <p>-es.[4th dec.]-en Mast, <i>mast</i> Quast, <i>knot, tassel</i> Quast, is also of the 2nd dec.</p>	<p>-[2nd dec.]-e *Angst, <i>anguish</i> *Brust, <i>breast</i> *Faust, <i>fist</i> Gunst°, <i>favour</i> *Kunst, <i>art</i> *Lust, <i>mirth</i> *Wurst, <i>sausage</i></p> <p>-[3rd dec.]-en. Roß°, <i>food</i> Last, <i>load</i> List, <i>craft</i> Mast°, <i>mast (food)</i> <i>such as acorns,</i> <i>&amp;c.)</i> Pest, <i>plague</i> Post, <i>post-office</i> Rast, <i>rest, repose</i></p>	<p>-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Fest, feast Verdienst, gain, de- sert, merit</p> <p>-es.[5th dec.]-er. Gespenst, <i>ghost</i> Nest, <i>nest</i> Obst°, <i>fruit</i></p>

	MASCULINES.	FEMININES.	NEUTERS.
<i>Nouns in ut.</i>	-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Hut, <i>hat</i> Tribut, <i>tribute</i> .	-[2nd dec.]-e. *Braut, <i>bride</i> *Haut, <i>thin skin</i> ( <i>a filament which rises on the surface of liquors</i> ) &c.	-es.[4th dec.]-en. Statut, <i>statute</i> -es.[3th dec.]-er. *Gut, <i>good</i> *Kraut, <i>herb</i>
<i>Nouns in au.</i>	-es.[2nd dec.]-e Bau, <i>building</i> Thau, <i>dew</i> -es.[4th dec.] e, or -en. Pfau, <i>peacock</i>	-[2nd dec.]-e. *Sau, <i>sow</i> &c. -[3rd dec.]-en. Frau, <i>wife</i> Schau°, <i>show</i> &c.	-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Tau, <i>rope</i>
<i>Nouns in eu.</i>		-[3rd dec.]-en. Epreu°, <i>chaff</i> &c.	-es.[2nd dec.]-e. ° Heu°, <i>hay</i>
<i>Nouns in ay. ey.</i>	-en.[3rd dec.]-en. Hay, <i>shark</i> &c. -es.[2nd dec.]-e. Papagen, <i>parrot</i> See also, -ei.		
<i>Nouns in i. eng.</i>	-es.[2nd dec.]-e. *Kranz, <i>garland</i> Lenz, <i>lent, a season</i> Reverenz, <i>reverence</i>	-[3rd dec.]-en. Miliz°, <i>militia</i> &c.	-es.[2nd dec.]-e. Harz, <i>rosin</i> Kreuz, <i>cross</i> Malz°, <i>malt</i> Salz°, <i>salt</i> Obs. N. Herz, <i>heart,</i> makes Gen. Herzens Dat. Herzen

	MASCULINES.	FEMININES.	NEUTERS.
<i>Nouns in a. en3.</i>			Acc. Herz N. pl. Herzen  -es. [5th dec.] -er. *Holz, wood
<i>Nouns in f. nif3. of3.</i>	-es. [2nd dec.] -e. *Entschluß, resolution *Fuß, foot *Kloß, clod Reiß, rice Schöß, sprig, or shoot Stoß, thrust, push Groß, baggage Bielfraß, glutton &c.  -en. [3rd dec.] -en. Genöß, consort	-[2nd dec.] -e. Befugniß, right Betrübniß, sadness Faulniß, corruption *Nuß, nut &c.	-es. [2nd dec.] -e. Begrübniß, interring Bekenntniß, acknowledgment avowal Bündniß, alliance Ereigniß, accident Erzeugniß, produce Gedächtniß, memory Gefängniß, captivity Geheimniß, secret Roß, horse And many others in nif3, and most nouns in of3.  -es. [5th dec.] -er. *Faß, cask *Schloß, palace, or lock &c.
<i>Nouns in t3. it3. of3. ut3.</i>	-es. [2nd dec.] -e. *Klotz, block &c.		-es. [2nd dec.] -e. Antlitz, face Geschütz, artillery Netz, net

## Familiar Dialogues.

---

### Erstes Gespräch.

### *First Dialogue.*

Guten Morgen mein Herr,  
Madame, Mamsell, oder  
Mademoiselle.

Good morning, Sir, Madam,  
Miss.

Guten Tag, mein Herr, &c.  
Guten Abend.

Good day, sir, &c.  
Good evening.

Gute Nacht.

Good night.

Wie befinden Sie sich, mein  
Herr?

How do you do, sir?

Sehr wohl, ich danke Ihnen.

Very well, I thank you.

Es ist mir lieb Sie zu sehen.

I am glad to see you.

Ich hoffe Sie sind wohl.

I hope you are well.

Nicht sehr wohl.

Not very well.

Ich habe Sie lange nicht  
gesehen.

I have not seen you for a  
long time.

Wo sind Sie gewesen?

Where have you been?

Ich bin in Paris gewesen.

I have been in Paris.

Wie befindet sich Ihr Herr  
Bruder?

How does your brother do?

Er befindet sich ziemlich  
wohl?

He is tolerably well.

Ich glaube er befindet sich  
wohl.

I believe he is well.

Er besand sich gestern Abends  
wohl.

He was well last night.

Wie befinden sich Ihr Herr  
Vater und Ihre Frau  
Mutter?

How are your father and  
mother?

Meine Mutter befindet sich  
nicht wohl.

My mother is not well.

Sie besand sich gestern früh  
nicht wohl.

She was ill yesterday morn-  
ing.

Es thut mir leid.

I am sorry for it.



## Zweites Gespräch.

## Second Dialogue.

Wie viel Uhr ist es? }

Wie viel ist die Uhr? }

Was ist die Uhr? }

Es ist ein Uhr.

Es ist zwei Uhr.

Es ist zwölf Uhr.

Es ist ein Viertel nach zwölf }

Es ist ein Viertel auf eins }

Es ist halb ein Uhr. }

Es ist halb eins. }

Es ist drei Viertel auf eins.

Es ist ein Viertel auf drei.

Es ist zwanzig Minuten nach  
zwei.Es ist zwanzig Minuten vor  
acht.

Wie viel fehlt es zu zehn. }

Wie viel ist es auf zehn. }

Es fehlt zehn Minuten zu  
zehn? }Es ist fünfzig Minuten  
auf zehn. }Es ist zehn Minuten vor  
zehn. }

Wann sind Sie gekommen?

Ich kam ungefähr um vier  
Uhr.

Es schlug eben sieben Uhr.

Hat es schon geschlagen?

Es wird bald acht schlagen.

Wie viel schlägt es jetzt?

Es kann auf den Schlag neun  
seyn.Das ist Ihre Zeit zu früh-  
stücken, nicht wahr?

Sprechen Sie mit ihm, (ihr),

What o'clock is it?

It is one o'clock.

It is two o'clock.

It is twelve o'clock.

It is a quarter past twelve.

It is half-past twelve.

It wants a quarter to one,

It is a quarter past two.

It is twenty minutes past two

It is twenty minutes to eight

How much does it want of  
ten?

It is ten minutes to ten, or

It wants ten minutes to ten.

When did you come?

I came about four o'clock.

It just struck seven o'clock.

Has it already struck?

It will soon strike eight.

What does it strike now?

It may be on the stroke of  
nine.That is your time for break-  
fasting, is it not?

Speak with him (her.)

Drittes Gespräch.

Third Dialogue.

Sprechen Sie Deutsch, mein Herr?

Do you speak German, sir?

Ich spreche es ein wenig.

I speak it a little.

Ich verstehe es besser als ich es sprechen kann.

I understand it better than I can speak it.

Sprechen Sie mit mir.

Speak with me.

Verstehen Sie mich?

Do you understand me?

Habe ich richtig ausgesprochen?

Did I pronounce correctly?

Sie sprechen sehr gut Deutsch

You speak German very well

Sie schmeicheln mir.

You flatter me.

Sind Sie in Deutschland gewesen?

Have you been in Germany?

Nein, niemals, aber ich lerne die deutsche Sprache.

No, never, but I learn the German language.

Wie lange haben Sie gelernt?

How long have you learnt?

Fünf Monathe.

Five months.

Das ist nur eine kurze Zeit, ich wundere mich, daß Sie schon so gut sprechen.

That is but a short time, I wonder you speak so well already.

Was denken Sie von der deutschen Sprache?

What do you think of the German language?

Ich denke sie (es) ist eine sehr nützliche Sprache.

I think it is a very useful language.

Sie ist sehr wortreich.

It is very copious.

Verstehen Sie was Sie lesen?

Do you understand what you read?

Wie nennen Sie das auf Deutsch?

What do you call that in German?

Lassen Sie uns Deutsch sprechen.

Let us speak German.

Das ist ein gutes Mittel, es zu lernen.

That is a good way to learn it.

Mit wem sprechen Sie?

With whom do you speak

Was sagen Sie?

What do you say?

Sprechen Sie zu mir?

Do you speak to me?

Sprechen Sie ein wenig lauter.

Speak a little louder.

Viertes Gespräch.

Fourth Dialogue.

Was ist es für Wetter?  
 Es ist schön (schönes) Wetter.  
 Scheint die Sonne?  
 Ja, mein Herr, und es ist  
 sehr warm.  
 Das Wetter ist den ganzen  
 Tag schön gewesen.  
 Es ist nicht zu warm und  
 nicht zu kalt.  
 Das Wetter hat sich geändert.  
 Es ist sehr windig.  
 Ich fürchte, wir werden Re-  
 gen bekommen.  
 Es rieselt, es wird regnen.  
 Es fängt an zu regnen,  
 schneien.  
 Es ist schlechtes Wetter.  
 Es ist schmutzig, trocken, naß,  
 regnet, stürmisch, windig,  
 veränderliches Wetter.  
 Das Wetter klärt sich auf.  
 Wir werden Donner haben.  
 Der Donner brüllt.

What kind of weather is it?  
 It is fine weather.  
 Does the sun shine?  
 Yes, sir, and it is very warm.  
 The weather has been fine  
 the whole day.  
 It is neither too warm nor  
 too cold.  
 The weather has changed.  
 It is very windy.  
 I fear we shall have rain.  
 It drizzles, it will rain.  
 It begins to rain, to snow  
 It is bad weather.  
 It is dirty, dry, wet, rainy,  
 stormy, windy, changeable  
 weather.  
 The weather clears up.  
 We shall have some thunder  
 The thunder roars.

Fünftes Gespräch.

Fifth Dialogue.

Wo gehen Sie hin?  
 Ich gehe nach London.  
 Wo wohnt er jetzt?  
 Er wohnt in der Stadt Han-  
 nover.  
 Er ist in (zu) London, Pa-  
 ris, Neapel, Rom, Wien,  
 Petersburg gewesen.  
 Mein Bruder war in Am-  
 sterдам gewesen.  
 Ich gehe ins (aufs) Land }  
 Ich gehe in das (auf das) }  
 Land.

Where are you going?  
 I am going to London.  
 Where does he live now?  
 He lives in the town of Ha-  
 nover.  
 He has been in (at) London,  
 Paris, Naples, Rome, Vi-  
 enna, Petersburg.  
 My brother has been in Am-  
 sterдам.  
 I am going into the country

Wo kommen Sie her?

Ich komme von (aus) dem Lande .... der Stadt.

Ich komme aus (von) der Straße.

Wir kommen von der Börse.

Ich gehe nach Hause.

Ich komme aus (von) der Kirche.

Sie geht in die Kirche.

Er geht nach Hause.

Ich komme aus dem Zimmer.

Sie kommt aus der Stube.

Ich gehe in die Kammer, in die Küche, in den Keller, in den Hof, in das Zimmer, &c.

Sie sind in der Kammer, in der Küche, in dem Keller, in dem Hofe, in dem Zimmer, &c.

Where do you come from?

I come from (out of) the country .... the city.

I come out of (from) the street

We come from change.

I am going home.

I come from church.

She is going to the church.

He is going home

I come out of the room.

She comes out of the parlour

I am going into the chamber, into the kitchen, into the cellar, into the yard, into the room, &c.

They are in the chamber, in the kitchen, in the cellar, in the yard, in the room, &c.

Sechstes Gespräch.

Sixth Dialogue.

Wie alt sind Sie?

Ich bin zwanzig Jahr alt.

Sie sind älter als ich.

Was ist Ihr Alter?

Ich bin noch nicht so alt.

Ist Ihre Frau Mutter sehr alt?

Sie ist fast neunzig Jahre alt.

Ich fange an alt zu werden.

Ich bin älter als Sie glauben

Sie sind jedoch nicht sechzig Jahr.

Nicht völlig; allein ich bin doch fünf und dreißig.

Sie sind noch sehr jung; Sie sind in der Blüthe Ihres Alters.

How old are you?

I am twenty years old.

You are older than I.

What is your age?

I am not yet so old.

Is your mother very old?

She is almost ninety.

I begin to grow old.

I am older than you think.

Yet you are not sixty.

Not quite; I am only thirty five.

You are very young still; you are in the bloom of your age.

## Proverbs, Idiomatic Expressions, &c.

Ein rechtschaffner Mann ist das edelste Werk Gottes.	An honest man is the noblest work of God.
Mit der Zeit pflückt man Rosen.	Be patient, and in time you will succeed.
Wissenschaft herrscht immer über Unwissenheit.	Knowledge will always pre- dominate over ignorance.
Müßiggang ist aller Laster Anfang.	Idleness is the beginning of all vice.
Nach gethaner Arbeit ist gut ruhen.	After labour rest is sweet.
Gesundheit ist der edelste Schatz.	Health is preferable to wealth.
Wer viel schläft, lebt wenig.	Whoever sleeps much, lives little.
Glücklich ist der, den Unglück Weisheit gelehrt hat.	Happy is he, to whom dis- tress has taught wisdom.
Armuth schändet nicht, aber Thorheit und Laster.	Folly and vice disgrace, but poverty does not.
Was deines Amtes nicht ist, da laß deinen Vorwitz.	Do not trouble yourself about what is not your business.
Gewohnheit ist die andere Natur.	Custom is a second nature.
Ungerechtes Gut gedehet nicht.	Ill got goods seldom prosper.
Ein gutes Gewissen ist ein sanftes Ruhelissen.	A good conscience is a soft pillow to rest on.
Böse Beispiele verderben gute Sitten.	Bad examples corrupt good manners.
Was man gern thut, wird einem leicht.	What we do willingly, be- comes easy.
Ueberfluß macht Ueberdruß, Auch die Sonne ist nicht ohne Flecken.	Excess causes surfeit. Even the sun is not without spots.
	The best man has his faults.

Unglück ist die Schule der Weisheit.

Besser spät als gar nicht,  
Wer viel anfängt, endet wenig.

Der Geiz ist eine Wurzel alles Uebels.

Aus Pfennigen werden Groschen, und aus Groschen Thaler.

Thue recht; scheue niemand,  
Man ist damit man lebt,  
man lebt nicht um zu essen.

Mache nicht die Rechnung ohne den Wirth.

Undank ist der Welt Lohn.

Gute Bäume tragen zeitig.

Das Kleid macht nicht den Mann.

Fröhlich in Ehren kann niemand wehren.

Ein Arbeiter ist seines Lohnes werth.

Wer leicht glaubt, wird leicht betrogen.

Der Fehler ist so gut wie der Stehler.

Wer andern eine Grube gräbt, fällt endlich selbst darein.

Was Häschen nicht lernt, lernt Hans nimmer mehr.

Ende gut alles gut.

Wer wenig hat, kann wenig missen.

Es ist besser allein, als in schlechter Gesellschaft seyn.

Misfortune is the school of wisdom.

Better late than never.

Whoever begins many things finishes few.

Avarice is the root of all evil.

Pence become shillings, and shillings become pounds.

Do right, fear nobody.

We ought to eat to live, and not live to eat.

Do not reckon without the host.

Ingratitude is the world's reward.

Good trees bear in due season.

Dress does not complete the man.

None can prevent us being happy, if we act honourably.

The labourer is worthy of his hire.

Whoever easily believes, is easily deceived.

The receiver is as bad as the thief.

Whoever digs a pit for another, ultimately falls into it himself.

If we do not learn when young, we shall never learn when old.

All is well that ends well.

He who has but little, can lose but little.

It is better to be alone, than in bad company.

- Sage mir mit wem du um-  
gehst, so will ich dir sagen  
wer du bist.
- Es ist kein Unglück so groß,  
es ist wieder ein Glück  
dabei.
- Lust und Liebe zum Dinge,  
macht Händchen alle Ar-  
beit geringe.
- Schuster, bleib bei deinem  
Leisten.
- Besser arm mit Ehren, als  
reich mit Schande.
- Durch wiederholte Streiche,  
fällt die größte Eiche.
- Wie das Leben, so der Nach-  
ruhm.
- Ein Prophet gilt nirgend  
weniger als in seinem  
Vaterlande.
- Der Krug geht so lange zu  
Wasser, bis er bricht.
- Eine Schwalbe macht keinen  
Sommer.
- Es ist nicht alles Gold was  
glänzt.
- Niemand weiß wo der Schuh  
ihn drückt, als wer ihn  
hat.
- Ein Vogel in der Hand, ist  
besser als zwanzig auf dem  
Dache.
- Nichts wissen ist keine  
Schande, aber nichts lern-  
en wollen.
- Mancher Apfel hat eine  
schöne Schale und inwen-  
dig steckt ein Wurm.
- Nach dem Regen scheint die  
Sonne.
- Tell me with whom you as-  
sociate, and I will tell you  
who you are.
- There is no misfortune so  
great, but there is some  
advantage attending it.
- A desire and love for a  
thing makes work easy.
- Shoemaker, keep to your  
last.
- Better to be poor with honour,  
than rich with disgrace.
- Repeated strokes, fell the  
largest oaks.
- As our life is, so will be our  
celebrity after death.
- A prophet has no honour in  
his own country.
- A pitcher may go often to  
the well, and be broken  
at last.
- One swallow does not make  
a summer.
- It is not all gold that glit-  
ters.
- No one knows where the  
shoe pinches, but he who  
wears it.
- A bird in the hand is worth  
two in the bush.
- Ignorance is no disgrace;  
but having no inclination  
to learn is a disgrace.
- Many apples have a fine  
outward appearance, but  
are rotten within.
- After a storm comes a calm.

do so

40 4

Wer mit Gold und Silber  
sicht, ist des Sieges gewiß.

Schuld überwindet alles.

Stille Wasser sind am tief-  
sten.

Rom ist in einem Tage nicht  
gebauet worden.

Zeit, Ebbe und Fluth warten  
auf niemand.

Gott wird geben einem jeden  
nach seinem Werken.

Im Wohlstande hat man  
Freunde die Menge; aber  
in Zeit der Noth gehen  
fünf und zwanzig auf ein  
Loth.

Nicht Reichthum, sondern  
Zufriedenheit macht die  
Menschen glücklich.

Bei Gott ist kein Ding un-  
möglich.

Wenns Glück anknüpft, so  
mache ja bald auf.

Das Angesicht verräth die  
That.

Er macht aus der Mücke ei-  
nen Elephanten.

Der Schriftsteller ist zu schät-  
zen, welcher die Beförder-  
ung der Tugend zum  
Zwecke hat.

Strebe zu haben ein unver-  
leht Gewissen allenthalben,  
sowohl gegen Gott als ge-  
gen Menschen.

He who fights with gold and  
silver is sure to conquer.

Patience overcomes all things.  
Still waters are commonly  
deepest.

Rome was not built in a  
day.

Time and tide wait for no  
man.

God will give to every man  
according to his deeds.

In time of prosperity friends  
will be plenty; in time  
of adversity not one  
amongst twenty.

Not riches, but contentment  
makes man happy.

With God nothing is impos-  
sible.

When fortune knocks, be  
sure to open the door.

The countenance betrays the  
deed. A guilty consci-  
ence needs no accuser.

He makes a mountain of a  
mole hill.

That writer is to be esteem-  
ed, who has the promotion  
of virtue for his object.

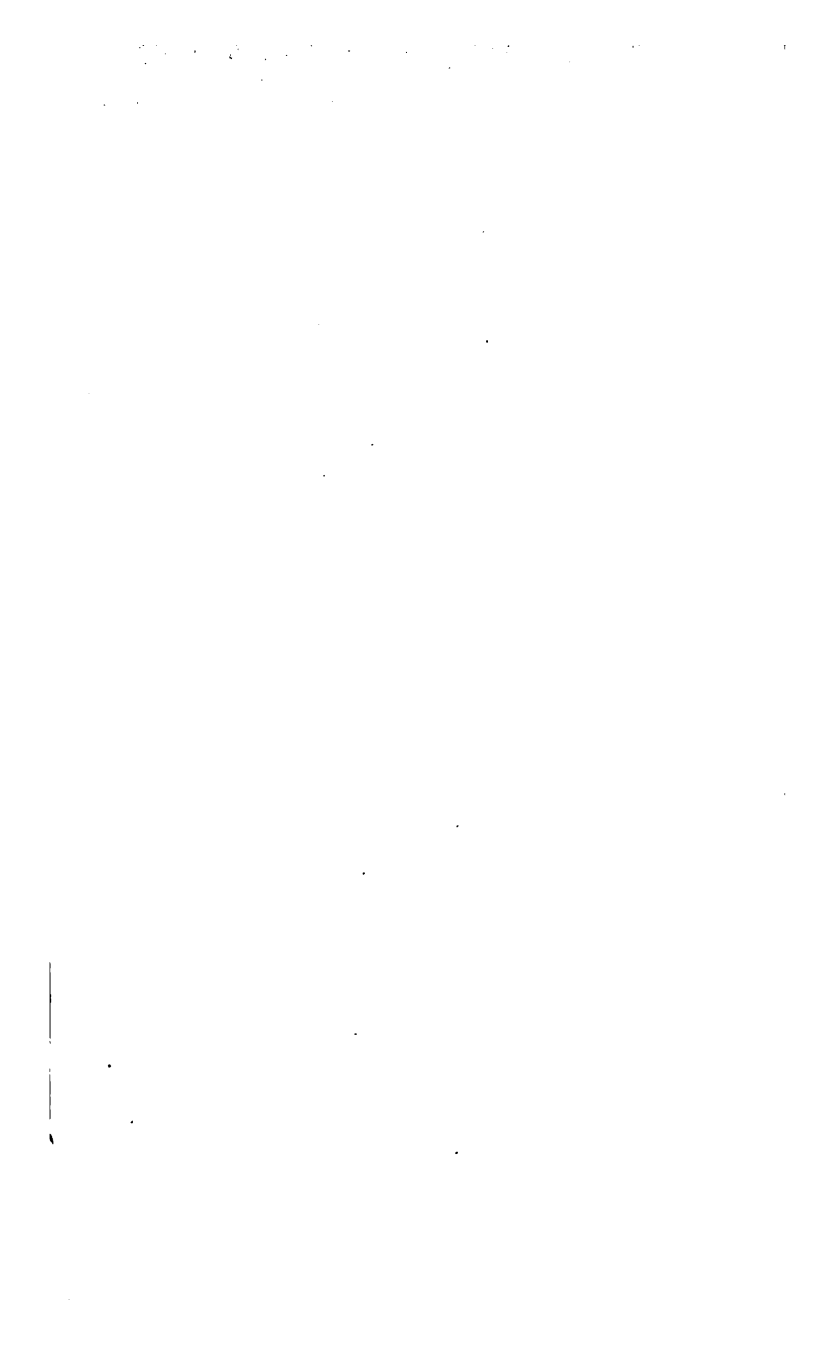
Strive to have always a con-  
science void of offence,  
both towards God and  
man.

FINIS.



particul

219







THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY  
REFERENCE DEPARTMENT

**This book is under no circumstances to be taken from the Building**

[illegible]

FEB 23 1927

X

